

O'REILLY®

Third  
Edition

# Learning SQL

Generate, Manipulate, and Retrieve Data



Alan Beaulieu

# Learning SQL

As data floods into your company, you need to put it to work right away—and SQL is the best tool for the job. With the latest edition of this introductory guide, author Alan Beaulieu helps developers get up to speed with SQL fundamentals for writing database applications, performing administrative tasks, and generating reports. You'll find new chapters on analytic functions, strategies for working with large databases, and SQL and big data.

Each chapter presents a self-contained lesson on a key SQL concept or technique using numerous illustrations and annotated examples. Exercises let you practice the skills you learn. Knowledge of SQL is a must for interacting with data. With *Learning SQL*, you'll quickly discover how to put the power and flexibility of this language to work.

- Move quickly through SQL basics and several advanced features
- Use SQL data statements to generate, manipulate, and retrieve data
- Create database objects such as tables, indexes, and constraints with SQL schema statements
- Learn how data sets interact with queries; understand the importance of subqueries
- Convert and manipulate data with SQL's built-in functions and use conditional logic in data statements

"From the basics of SQL to advanced topics such as analytical functions and working with large databases, this third edition of *Learning SQL* provides everything you need to know about SQL in today's modern database world."

—Mark Richards

Author of *Fundamentals of Software Architecture* (O'Reilly)

Alan Beaulieu has been designing, building, and implementing custom database applications for over 25 years. He's the coauthor of *Mastering Oracle SQL* (O'Reilly) and has written an online course on SQL for the University of California. Alan runs his own consulting company that specializes in database design and development for financial services and telecommunications.

---

## DATABASES

US \$59.99      CAN \$79.99

ISBN: 978-1-492-05761-1



Twitter: @oreillymedia  
facebook.com/oreilly

THIRD EDITION

---

# Learning SQL

*Generate, Manipulate, and Retrieve Data*

*Alan Beaulieu*

Beijing • Boston • Farnham • Sebastopol • Tokyo

O'REILLY®

## Learning SQL

by Alan Beaulieu

Copyright © 2020 Alan Beaulieu. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America.

Published by O'Reilly Media, Inc., 1005 Gravenstein Highway North, Sebastopol, CA 95472.

O'Reilly books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. Online editions are also available for most titles (<http://oreilly.com>). For more information, contact our corporate/institutional sales department: 800-998-9938 or [corporate@oreilly.com](mailto:corporate@oreilly.com).

**Acquisitions Editor:** Jessica Haberman

**Indexer:** Angela Howard

**Development Editor:** Jeff Bleiel

**Interior Designer:** David Futato

**Production Editor:** Deborah Baker

**Cover Designer:** Karen Montgomery

**Copyeditor:** Charles Roumeliots

**Illustrator:** Rebecca Demarest

**Proofreader:** Chris Morris

August 2005: First Edition

April 2009: Second Edition

April 2020: Third Edition

### Revision History for the Third Edition

2020-03-04: First Release

2020-09-04: Second Release

See <http://oreilly.com/catalog/errata.csp?isbn=9781492057611> for release details.

The O'Reilly logo is a registered trademark of O'Reilly Media, Inc. *Learning SQL*, the cover image, and related trade dress are trademarks of O'Reilly Media, Inc.

The views expressed in this work are those of the author, and do not represent the publisher's views. While the publisher and the author have used good faith efforts to ensure that the information and instructions contained in this work are accurate, the publisher and the author disclaim all responsibility for errors or omissions, including without limitation responsibility for damages resulting from the use of or reliance on this work. Use of the information and instructions contained in this work is at your own risk. If any code samples or other technology this work contains or describes is subject to open source licenses or the intellectual property rights of others, it is your responsibility to ensure that your use thereof complies with such licenses and/or rights.

978-1-492-05761-1

[MBP]

---

# Table of Contents

Preface.....	xi
<b>1. A Little Background.....</b>	<b>1</b>
Introduction to Databases	1
Nonrelational Database Systems	2
The Relational Model	5
Some Terminology	7
What Is SQL?	8
SQL Statement Classes	9
SQL: A Nonprocedural Language	10
SQL Examples	11
What Is MySQL?	13
SQL Unplugged	14
What's in Store	15
<b>2. Creating and Populating a Database.....</b>	<b>17</b>
Creating a MySQL Database	17
Using the mysql Command-Line Tool	18
MySQL Data Types	20
Character Data	20
Numeric Data	23
Temporal Data	25
Table Creation	27
Step 1: Design	27
Step 2: Refinement	28
Step 3: Building SQL Schema Statements	30
Populating and Modifying Tables	33
Inserting Data	33

Updating Data	38
Deleting Data	39
When Good Statements Go Bad	39
Nonunique Primary Key	39
Nonexistent Foreign Key	40
Column Value Violations	40
Invalid Date Conversions	40
The Sakila Database	41
<b>3. Query Primer.....</b>	<b>45</b>
Query Mechanics	45
Query Clauses	47
The select Clause	48
Column Aliases	50
Removing Duplicates	51
The from Clause	53
Tables	53
Table Links	56
Defining Table Aliases	57
The where Clause	58
The group by and having Clauses	60
The order by Clause	61
Ascending Versus Descending Sort Order	63
Sorting via Numeric Placeholders	64
Test Your Knowledge	65
Exercise 3-1	65
Exercise 3-2	65
Exercise 3-3	65
Exercise 3-4	65
<b>4. Filtering.....</b>	<b>67</b>
Condition Evaluation	67
Using Parentheses	68
Using the not Operator	69
Building a Condition	70
Condition Types	71
Equality Conditions	71
Range Conditions	73
Membership Conditions	77
Matching Conditions	79
Null: That Four-Letter Word	82
Test Your Knowledge	85

Exercise 4-1	86
Exercise 4-2	86
Exercise 4-3	86
Exercise 4-4	86
<b>5. Querying Multiple Tables.....</b>	<b>87</b>
What Is a Join?	87
Cartesian Product	88
Inner Joins	89
The ANSI Join Syntax	91
Joining Three or More Tables	93
Using Subqueries as Tables	95
Using the Same Table Twice	96
Self-Joins	98
Test Your Knowledge	99
Exercise 5-1	99
Exercise 5-2	99
Exercise 5-3	100
<b>6. Working with Sets.....</b>	<b>101</b>
Set Theory Primer	101
Set Theory in Practice	104
Set Operators	105
The union Operator	106
The intersect Operator	108
The except Operator	109
Set Operation Rules	111
Sorting Compound Query Results	111
Set Operation Precedence	112
Test Your Knowledge	114
Exercise 6-1	114
Exercise 6-2	114
Exercise 6-3	114
<b>7. Data Generation, Manipulation, and Conversion.....</b>	<b>115</b>
Working with String Data	115
String Generation	116
String Manipulation	121
Working with Numeric Data	129
Performing Arithmetic Functions	129
Controlling Number Precision	131
Handling Signed Data	133

Working with Temporal Data	134
Dealing with Time Zones	134
Generating Temporal Data	136
Manipulating Temporal Data	140
Conversion Functions	144
Test Your Knowledge	145
Exercise 7-1	145
Exercise 7-2	145
Exercise 7-3	145
<b>8. Grouping and Aggregates.....</b>	<b>147</b>
Grouping Concepts	147
Aggregate Functions	150
Implicit Versus Explicit Groups	151
Counting Distinct Values	152
Using Expressions	153
How Nulls Are Handled	153
Generating Groups	155
Single-Column Grouping	155
Multicolumn Grouping	156
Grouping via Expressions	157
Generating Rollups	157
Group Filter Conditions	159
Test Your Knowledge	160
Exercise 8-1	160
Exercise 8-2	160
Exercise 8-3	160
<b>9. Subqueries.....</b>	<b>161</b>
What Is a Subquery?	161
Subquery Types	163
Noncorrelated Subqueries	163
Multiple-Row, Single-Column Subqueries	164
Multicolumn Subqueries	169
Correlated Subqueries	171
The exists Operator	173
Data Manipulation Using Correlated Subqueries	174
When to Use Subqueries	175
Subqueries as Data Sources	176
Subqueries as Expression Generators	182
Subquery Wrap-Up	184
Test Your Knowledge	185

Exercise 9-1	185
Exercise 9-2	185
Exercise 9-3	185
<b>10. Joins Revisited.....</b>	<b>187</b>
Outer Joins	187
Left Versus Right Outer Joins	190
Three-Way Outer Joins	191
Cross Joins	192
Natural Joins	198
Test Your Knowledge	199
Exercise 10-1	200
Exercise 10-2	200
Exercise 10-3 (Extra Credit)	200
<b>11. Conditional Logic.....</b>	<b>201</b>
What Is Conditional Logic?	201
The case Expression	202
Searched case Expressions	202
Simple case Expressions	204
Examples of case Expressions	205
Result Set Transformations	205
Checking for Existence	206
Division-by-Zero Errors	208
Conditional Updates	209
Handling Null Values	210
Test Your Knowledge	211
Exercise 11-1	211
Exercise 11-2	211
<b>12. Transactions.....</b>	<b>213</b>
Multiuser Databases	213
Locking	214
Lock Granularities	214
What Is a Transaction?	215
Starting a Transaction	217
Ending a Transaction	218
Transaction Savepoints	219
Test Your Knowledge	222
Exercise 12-1	222

<b>13. Indexes and Constraints.....</b>	<b>223</b>
Indexes	223
Index Creation	224
Types of Indexes	229
How Indexes Are Used	231
The Downside of Indexes	232
Constraints	233
Constraint Creation	234
Test Your Knowledge	237
Exercise 13-1	237
Exercise 13-2	237
<b>14. Views.....</b>	<b>239</b>
What Are Views?	239
Why Use Views?	242
Data Security	242
Data Aggregation	243
Hiding Complexity	244
Joining Partitioned Data	244
Updatable Views	245
Updating Simple Views	246
Updating Complex Views	247
Test Your Knowledge	249
Exercise 14-1	249
Exercise 14-2	250
<b>15. Metadata.....</b>	<b>251</b>
Data About Data	251
information_schema	252
Working with Metadata	257
Schema Generation Scripts	257
Deployment Verification	260
Dynamic SQL Generation	261
Test Your Knowledge	265
Exercise 15-1	265
Exercise 15-2	265
<b>16. Analytic Functions.....</b>	<b>267</b>
Analytic Function Concepts	267
Data Windows	268
Localized Sorting	269
Ranking	270

Ranking Functions	271
Generating Multiple Rankings	274
Reporting Functions	277
Window Frames	279
Lag and Lead	281
Column Value Concatenation	283
Test Your Knowledge	284
Exercise 16-1	284
Exercise 16-2	285
Exercise 16-3	285
<b>17. Working with Large Databases.....</b>	<b>287</b>
Partitioning	287
Partitioning Concepts	288
Table Partitioning	288
Index Partitioning	289
Partitioning Methods	289
Partitioning Benefits	297
Clustering	297
Sharding	298
Big Data	299
Hadoop	299
NoSQL and Document Databases	300
Cloud Computing	300
Conclusion	301
<b>18. SQL and Big Data.....</b>	<b>303</b>
Introduction to Apache Drill	303
Querying Files Using Drill	304
Querying MySQL Using Drill	306
Querying MongoDB Using Drill	309
Drill with Multiple Data Sources	315
Future of SQL	317
<b>A. ER Diagram for Example Database.....</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>B. Solutions to Exercises.....</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>349</b>



---

# Preface

Programming languages come and go constantly, and very few languages in use today have roots going back more than a decade or so. Some examples are COBOL, which is still used quite heavily in mainframe environments; Java, which was born in the mid-1990s and has become one of the most popular programming languages; and C, which is still quite popular for operating systems and server development and for embedded systems. In the database arena, we have SQL, whose roots go all the way back to the 1970s.

SQL was initially created to be the language for generating, manipulating, and retrieving data from relational databases, which have been around for more than 40 years. Over the past decade or so, however, other data platforms such as Hadoop, Spark, and NoSQL have gained a great deal of traction, eating away at the relational database market. As will be discussed in the last few chapters of this book, however, the SQL language has been evolving to facilitate the retrieval of data from various platforms, regardless of whether the data is stored in tables, documents, or flat files.

## Why Learn SQL?

Whether you will be using a relational database or not, if you are working in data science, business intelligence, or some other facet of data analysis, you will likely need to know SQL, along with other languages/platforms such as Python and R. Data is everywhere, in huge quantities, and arriving at a rapid pace, and people who can extract meaningful information from all this data are in big demand.

## Why Use This Book to Do It?

There are plenty of books out there that treat you like a dummy, idiot, or some other flavor of simpleton, but these books tend to just skim the surface. At the other end of the spectrum are reference guides that detail every permutation of every statement in a language, which can be useful if you already have a good idea of what you want to

do but just need the syntax. This book strives to find the middle ground, starting with some background of the SQL language, moving through the basics, and then progressing into some of the more advanced features that will allow you to really shine. Additionally, this book ends with a chapter showing how to query data in nonrelational databases, which is a topic rarely covered in introductory books.

## Structure of This Book

This book is divided into 18 chapters and 2 appendixes:

### *Chapter 1, A Little Background*

Explores the history of computerized databases, including the rise of the relational model and the SQL language.

### *Chapter 2, Creating and Populating a Database*

Demonstrates how to create a MySQL database, create the tables used for the examples in this book, and populate the tables with data.

### *Chapter 3, Query Primer*

Introduces the `select` statement and further demonstrates the most common clauses (`select`, `from`, `where`).

### *Chapter 4, Filtering*

Demonstrates the different types of conditions that can be used in the `where` clause of a `select`, `update`, or `delete` statement.

### *Chapter 5, Querying Multiple Tables*

Shows how queries can utilize multiple tables via table joins.

### *Chapter 6, Working with Sets*

This chapter is all about data sets and how they can interact within queries.

### *Chapter 7, Data Generation, Manipulation, and Conversion*

Demonstrates several built-in functions used for manipulating or converting data.

### *Chapter 8, Grouping and Aggregates*

Shows how data can be aggregated.

### *Chapter 9, Subqueries*

Introduces subqueries (a personal favorite) and shows how and where they can be utilized.

### *Chapter 10, Joins Revisited*

Further explores the various types of table joins.

### *Chapter 11, Conditional Logic*

Explores how conditional logic (i.e., if-then-else) can be utilized in `select`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements.

### *Chapter 12, Transactions*

Introduces transactions and shows how to use them.

### *Chapter 13, Indexes and Constraints*

Explores indexes and constraints.

### *Chapter 14, Views*

Shows how to build an interface to shield users from data complexities.

### *Chapter 15, Metadata*

Demonstrates the utility of the data dictionary.

### *Chapter 16, Analytic Functions*

Covers functionality used to generate rankings, subtotals, and other values used heavily in reporting and analysis.

### *Chapter 17, Working with Large Databases*

Demonstrates techniques for making very large databases easier to manage and traverse.

### *Chapter 18, SQL and Big Data*

Explores the transformation of the SQL language to allow retrieval of data from nonrelational data platforms.

### *Appendix A, ER Diagram for Example Database*

Shows the database schema used for all examples in the book.

### *Appendix B, Solutions to Exercises*

Shows solutions to the chapter exercises.

## Conventions Used in This Book

The following typographical conventions are used in this book:

### *Italic*

Indicates new terms, URLs, email addresses, filenames, and file extensions.

### *Constant width*

Used for program listings, as well as within paragraphs to refer to program elements such as variable or function names, databases, data types, environment variables, statements, and keywords.

*Constant width italic*

Shows text that should be replaced with user-supplied values or by values determined by context.

**Constant width bold**

Shows commands or other text that should be typed literally by the user.



Indicates a tip, suggestion, or general note. For example, I use notes to point you to useful new features in Oracle9*i*.



Indicates a warning or caution. For example, I'll tell you if a certain SQL clause might have unintended consequences if not used carefully.

## Using the Examples in This Book

To experiment with the data used for the examples in this book, you have two options:

- Download and install the MySQL server version 8.0 (or later) and load the Sakila example database from <https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html>.
- Go to <https://www.katacoda.com/mysql-db-sandbox/scenarios/mysql-sandbox> to access the MySQL Sandbox, which has the Sakila sample database loaded in a MySQL instance. You'll have to set up a (free) Katacoda account. Then, click the Start Scenario button.

If you choose the second option, once you start the scenario, a MySQL server is installed and started, and then the Sakila schema and data are loaded. When it's ready, a standard `mysql>` prompt appears, and you can then start querying the sample database. This is certainly the easiest option, and I anticipate that most readers will choose this option; if this sounds good to you, feel free to skip ahead to the next section.

If you prefer to have your own copy of the data and want any changes you have made to be permanent, or if you are just interested in installing the MySQL server on your own machine, you may prefer the first option. You may also opt to use a MySQL server hosted in an environment such as Amazon Web Services or Google Cloud. In either case, you will need to perform the installation/configuration yourself, as it is beyond the scope of this book. Once your database is available, you will need to follow a few steps to load the Sakila sample database.

First, you will need to launch the `mysql` command-line client and provide a password, and then perform the following steps:

1. Go to <https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html> and download the files for “sakila database” under the Example Databases section.
2. Put the files in a local directory such as `C:\temp\sakila-db` (used for the next two steps, but overwrite with your directory path).
3. Type `source c:\temp\sakila-db\sakila-schema.sql`; and press Enter.
4. Type `source c:\temp\sakila-db\sakila-data.sql`; and press Enter.

You should now have a working database populated with all the data needed for the examples in this book.

## O'Reilly Online Learning



For more than 40 years, *O'Reilly Media* has provided technology and business training, knowledge, and insight to help companies succeed.

Our unique network of experts and innovators share their knowledge and expertise through books, articles, and our online learning platform. O'Reilly's online learning platform gives you on-demand access to live training courses, in-depth learning paths, interactive coding environments, and a vast collection of text and video from O'Reilly and 200+ other publishers. For more information, please visit <http://oreilly.com>.

## How to Contact Us

Please address comments and questions concerning this book to the publisher:

O'Reilly Media, Inc.  
1005 Gravenstein Highway North  
Sebastopol, CA 95472  
800-998-9938 (in the United States or Canada)  
707-829-0515 (international or local)  
707-829-0104 (fax)

We have a web page for this book, where we list errata and any additional information. You can access this page at [https://oreil.ly/Learning\\_SQL3](https://oreil.ly/Learning_SQL3).

Email [bookquestions@oreilly.com](mailto:bookquestions@oreilly.com) to comment or ask technical questions about this book.

For news and more information about our books and courses, see our website at <http://www.oreilly.com>.

Find us on Facebook: <http://facebook.com/oreilly>

Follow us on Twitter: <http://twitter.com/oreillymedia>

Watch us on YouTube: <http://www.youtube.com/oreillymedia>

## Acknowledgments

I would like to thank my editor, Jeff Bleiel, for helping to make this third edition a reality, along with Thomas Nield, Ann White-Watkins, and Charles Givre, who were kind enough to review the book for me. Thanks also go to Deb Baker, Jess Haberman, and all the other folks at O'Reilly Media who were involved. Lastly, I thank my wife, Nancy, and my daughters, Michelle and Nicole, for their encouragement and inspiration.

# A Little Background

Before we roll up our sleeves and get to work, it would be helpful to survey the history of database technology in order to better understand how relational databases and the SQL language evolved. Therefore, I'd like to start by introducing some basic database concepts and looking at the history of computerized data storage and retrieval.



For those readers anxious to start writing queries, feel free to skip ahead to [Chapter 3](#), but I recommend returning later to the first two chapters in order to better understand the history and utility of the SQL language.

## Introduction to Databases

A *database* is nothing more than a set of related information. A telephone book, for example, is a database of the names, phone numbers, and addresses of all people living in a particular region. While a telephone book is certainly a ubiquitous and frequently used database, it suffers from the following:

- Finding a person's telephone number can be time consuming, especially if the telephone book contains a large number of entries.
- A telephone book is indexed only by last/first names, so finding the names of the people living at a particular address, while possible in theory, is not a practical use for this database.
- From the moment the telephone book is printed, the information becomes less and less accurate as people move into or out of a region, change their telephone numbers, or move to another location within the same region.

The same drawbacks attributed to telephone books can also apply to any manual data storage system, such as patient records stored in a filing cabinet. Because of the cumbersome nature of paper databases, some of the first computer applications developed were *database systems*, which are computerized data storage and retrieval mechanisms. Because a database system stores data electronically rather than on paper, a database system is able to retrieve data more quickly, index data in multiple ways, and deliver up-to-the-minute information to its user community.

Early database systems managed data stored on magnetic tapes. Because there were generally far more tapes than tape readers, technicians were tasked with loading and unloading tapes as specific data was requested. Because the computers of that era had very little memory, multiple requests for the same data generally required the data to be read from the tape multiple times. While these database systems were a significant improvement over paper databases, they are a far cry from what is possible with today's technology. (Modern database systems can manage petabytes of data, accessed by clusters of servers each caching tens of gigabytes of that data in high-speed memory, but I'm getting a bit ahead of myself.)

## Nonrelational Database Systems



This section contains some background information about pre-relational database systems. For those readers eager to dive into SQL, feel free to skip ahead a couple of pages to the next section.

Over the first several decades of computerized database systems, data was stored and represented to users in various ways. In a *hierarchical database system*, for example, data is represented as one or more tree structures. [Figure 1-1](#) shows how data relating to George Blake's and Sue Smith's bank accounts might be represented via tree structures.

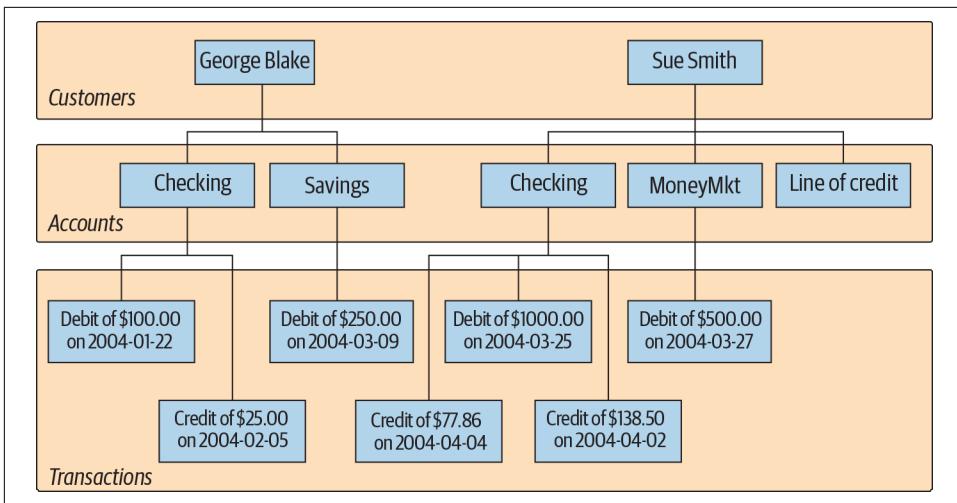


Figure 1-1. Hierarchical view of account data

George and Sue each have their own tree containing their accounts and the transactions on those accounts. The hierarchical database system provides tools for locating a particular customer's tree and then traversing the tree to find the desired accounts and/or transactions. Each node in the tree may have either zero or one parent and zero, one, or many children. This configuration is known as a *single-parent hierarchy*.

Another common approach, called the *network database system*, exposes sets of records and sets of links that define relationships between different records. **Figure 1-2** shows how George's and Sue's same accounts might look in such a system.

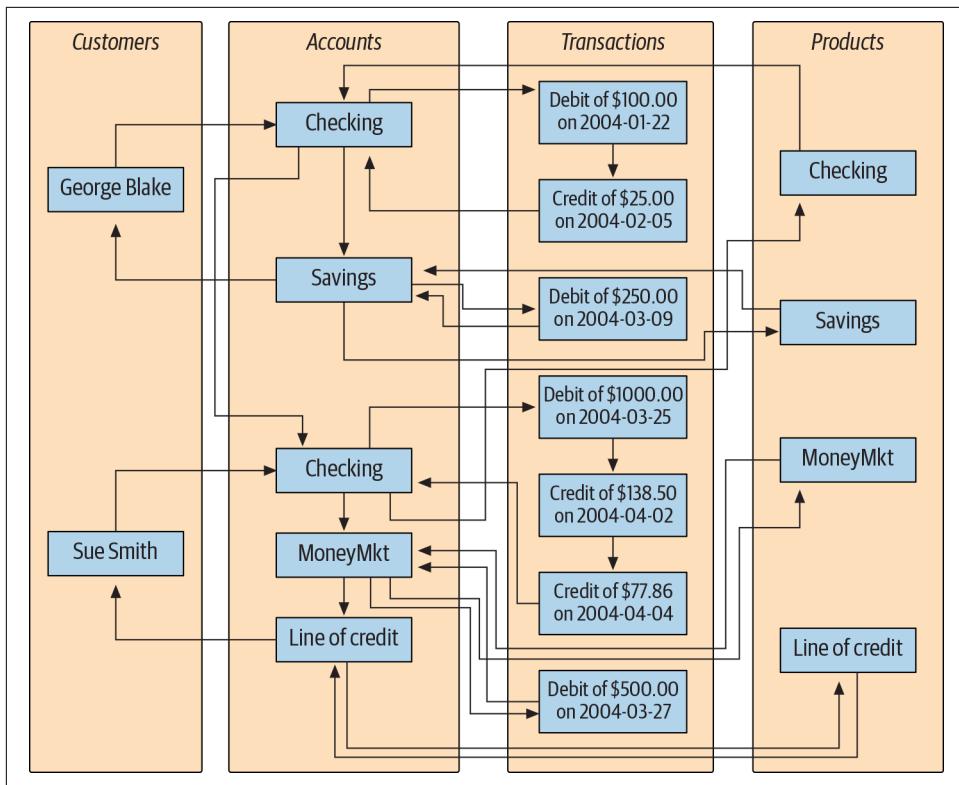


Figure 1-2. Network view of account data

In order to find the transactions posted to Sue's money market account, you would need to perform the following steps:

1. Find the customer record for Sue Smith.
2. Follow the link from Sue Smith's customer record to her list of accounts.
3. Traverse the chain of accounts until you find the money market account.
4. Follow the link from the money market record to its list of transactions.

One interesting feature of network database systems is demonstrated by the set of product records on the far right of [Figure 1-2](#). Notice that each product record (Checking, Savings, etc.) points to a list of account records that are of that product type. Account records, therefore, can be accessed from multiple places (both customer records and product records), allowing a network database to act as a *multi-parent hierarchy*.

Both hierarchical and network database systems are alive and well today, although generally in the mainframe world. Additionally, hierarchical database systems have

enjoyed a rebirth in the directory services realm, such as Microsoft's Active Directory and the open source Apache Directory Server. Beginning in the 1970s, however, a new way of representing data began to take root, one that was more rigorous yet easy to understand and implement.

## The Relational Model

In 1970, Dr. E. F. Codd of IBM's research laboratory published a paper titled "A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks" that proposed that data be represented as sets of *tables*. Rather than using pointers to navigate between related entities, redundant data is used to link records in different tables. [Figure 1-3](#) shows how George's and Sue's account information would appear in this context.

Customer			Account			
cust_id	fname	lname	account_id	product_cd	cust_id	balance
1	George	Blake	103	CHK	1	\$75.00
2	Sue	Smith	104	SAV	1	\$250.00
			105	CHK	2	\$783.64
			106	MM	2	\$500.00
			107	LOC	2	0

Product		Transaction			
product_cd	name	txn_id	txn_type_cd	account_id	amount
CHK	Checking	978	DBT	103	\$100.00
SAV	Savings	979	CDT	103	\$25.00
MM	Money market	980	DBT	104	\$250.00
LOC	Line of credit	981	DBT	105	\$1000.00
		982	CDT	105	\$138.50
		983	CDT	105	\$77.86
		984	DBT	106	\$500.00

Figure 1-3. Relational view of account data

The four tables in [Figure 1-3](#) represent the four entities discussed so far: `customer`, `product`, `account`, and `transaction`. Looking across the top of the `customer` table in [Figure 1-3](#), you can see three *columns*: `cust_id` (which contains the customer's ID number), `fname` (which contains the customer's first name), and `lname` (which contains the customer's last name). Looking down the side of the `customer` table, you can see two *rows*, one containing George Blake's data and the other containing Sue Smith's data. The number of columns that a table may contain differs from server to server, but it is generally large enough not to be an issue (Microsoft SQL Server, for example, allows up to 1,024 columns per table). The number of rows that a table may contain is more a matter of physical limits (i.e., how much disk drive space is available) and maintainability (i.e., how large a table can get before it becomes difficult to work with) than of database server limitations.

Each table in a relational database includes information that uniquely identifies a row in that table (known as the *primary key*), along with additional information needed to describe the entity completely. Looking again at the `customer` table, the `cust_id` column holds a different number for each customer; George Blake, for example, can be uniquely identified by customer ID 1. No other customer will ever be assigned that identifier, and no other information is needed to locate George Blake's data in the `customer` table.



Every database server provides a mechanism for generating unique sets of numbers to use as primary key values, so you won't need to worry about keeping track of what numbers have been assigned.

While I might have chosen to use the combination of the `fname` and `lname` columns as the primary key (a primary key consisting of two or more columns is known as a *compound key*), there could easily be two or more people with the same first and last names who have accounts at the bank. Therefore, I chose to include the `cust_id` column in the `customer` table specifically for use as a primary key column.



In this example, choosing `fname/lname` as the primary key would be referred to as a *natural key*, whereas the choice of `cust_id` would be referred to as a *surrogate key*. The decision whether to employ natural or surrogate keys is up to the database designer, but in this particular case the choice is clear, since a person's last name may change (such as when a person adopts a spouse's last name), and primary key columns should never be allowed to change once a value has been assigned.

Some of the tables also include information used to navigate to another table; this is where the “redundant data” mentioned earlier comes in. For example, the `account` table includes a column called `cust_id`, which contains the unique identifier of the customer who opened the account, along with a column called `product_cd`, which contains the unique identifier of the product to which the account will conform. These columns are known as *foreign keys*, and they serve the same purpose as the lines that connect the entities in the hierarchical and network versions of the account information. If you are looking at a particular account record and want to know more information about the customer who opened the account, you would take the value of the `cust_id` column and use it to find the appropriate row in the `customer` table (this process is known, in relational database lingo, as a *join*; joins are introduced in [Chapter 3](#) and probed deeply in Chapters [5](#) and [10](#)).

It might seem wasteful to store the same data many times, but the relational model is quite clear on what redundant data may be stored. For example, it is proper for the `account` table to include a column for the unique identifier of the customer who opened the account, but it is not proper to include the customer’s first and last names in the `account` table as well. If a customer were to change her name, for example, you want to make sure that there is only one place in the database that holds the customer’s name; otherwise, the data might be changed in one place but not another, causing the data in the database to be unreliable. The proper place for this data is the `customer` table, and only the `cust_id` values should be included in other tables. It is also not proper for a single column to contain multiple pieces of information, such as a `name` column that contains both a person’s first and last names, or an `address` column that contains street, city, state, and zip code information. The process of refining a database design to ensure that each independent piece of information is in only one place (except for foreign keys) is known as *normalization*.

Getting back to the four tables in [Figure 1-3](#), you may wonder how you would use these tables to find George Blake’s transactions against his checking account. First, you would find George Blake’s unique identifier in the `customer` table. Then, you would find the row in the `account` table whose `cust_id` column contains George’s unique identifier and whose `product_cd` column matches the row in the `product` table whose `name` column equals “Checking.” Finally, you would locate the rows in the `transaction` table whose `account_id` column matches the unique identifier from the `account` table. This might sound complicated, but you can do it in a single command, using the SQL language, as you will see shortly.

## Some Terminology

I introduced some new terminology in the previous sections, so maybe it’s time for some formal definitions. [Table 1-1](#) shows the terms we use for the remainder of the book along with their definitions.

Table 1-1. Terms and definitions

Term	Definition
Entity	Something of interest to the database user community. Examples include customers, parts, geographic locations, etc.
Column	An individual piece of data stored in a table.
Row	A set of columns that together completely describe an entity or some action on an entity. Also called a record.
Table	A set of rows, held either in memory (nonpersistent) or on permanent storage (persistent).
Result set	Another name for a nonpersistent table, generally the result of an SQL query.
Primary key	One or more columns that can be used as a unique identifier for each row in a table.
Foreign key	One or more columns that can be used together to identify a single row in another table.

## What Is SQL?

Along with Codd’s definition of the relational model, he proposed a language called DSL/Alpha for manipulating the data in relational tables. Shortly after Codd’s paper was released, IBM commissioned a group to build a prototype based on Codd’s ideas. This group created a simplified version of DSL/Alpha that they called SQUARE. Refinements to SQUARE led to a language called SEQUEL, which was, finally, shortened to SQL. While SQL began as a language used to manipulate data in relational databases, it has evolved (as you will see toward the end of this book) to be a language for manipulating data across various database technologies.

SQL is now more than 40 years old, and it has undergone a great deal of change along the way. In the mid-1980s, the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) began working on the first standard for the SQL language, which was published in 1986. Subsequent refinements led to new releases of the SQL standard in 1989, 1992, 1999, 2003, 2006, 2008, 2011, and 2016. Along with refinements to the core language, new features have been added to the SQL language to incorporate object-oriented functionality, among other things. The later standards focus on the integration of related technologies, such as extensible markup language (XML) and JavaScript object notation (JSON).

SQL goes hand in hand with the relational model because the result of an SQL query is a table (also called, in this context, a *result set*). Thus, a new permanent table can be created in a relational database simply by storing the result set of a query. Similarly, a query can use both permanent tables and the result sets from other queries as inputs (we explore this in detail in [Chapter 9](#)).

One final note: SQL is not an acronym for anything (although many people will insist it stands for “Structured Query Language”). When referring to the language, it is equally acceptable to say the letters individually (i.e., S. Q. L.) or to use the word *sequel*.

## SQL Statement Classes

The SQL language is divided into several distinct parts: the parts that we explore in this book include *SQL schema statements*, which are used to define the data structures stored in the database; *SQL data statements*, which are used to manipulate the data structures previously defined using SQL schema statements; and *SQL transaction statements*, which are used to begin, end, and roll back transactions (concepts covered in [Chapter 12](#)). For example, to create a new table in your database, you would use the SQL schema statement `create table`, whereas the process of populating your new table with data would require the SQL data statement `insert`.

To give you a taste of what these statements look like, here's an SQL schema statement that creates a table called `corporation`:

```
CREATE TABLE corporation
  (corp_id SMALLINT,
   name VARCHAR(30),
   CONSTRAINT pk_corporation PRIMARY KEY (corp_id)
);
```

This statement creates a table with two columns, `corp_id` and `name`, with the `corp_id` column identified as the primary key for the table. We probe the finer details of this statement, such as the different data types available with MySQL, in [Chapter 2](#). Next, here's an SQL data statement that inserts a row into the `corporation` table for Acme Paper Corporation:

```
INSERT INTO corporation (corp_id, name)
VALUES (27, 'Acme Paper Corporation');
```

This statement adds a row to the `corporation` table with a value of 27 for the `corp_id` column and a value of `Acme Paper Corporation` for the `name` column.

Finally, here's a simple `select` statement to retrieve the data that was just created:

```
mysql> SELECT name
    -> FROM corporation
    -> WHERE corp_id = 27;
+-----+
| name           |
+-----+
| Acme Paper Corporation |
+-----+
```

All database elements created via SQL schema statements are stored in a special set of tables called the *data dictionary*. This “data about the database” is known collectively as *metadata* and is explored in [Chapter 15](#). Just like tables that you create yourself, data dictionary tables can be queried via a `select` statement, thereby allowing you to discover the current data structures deployed in the database at runtime. For example, if you are asked to write a report showing the new accounts created last month,

you could either hardcode the names of the columns in the account table that were known to you when you wrote the report, or query the data dictionary to determine the current set of columns and dynamically generate the report each time it is executed.

Most of this book is concerned with the data portion of the SQL language, which consists of the `select`, `update`, `insert`, and `delete` commands. SQL schema statements are demonstrated in [Chapter 2](#), which will lead you through the design and creation of some simple tables. In general, SQL schema statements do not require much discussion apart from their syntax, whereas SQL data statements, while few in number, offer numerous opportunities for detailed study. Therefore, while I try to introduce you to many of the SQL schema statements, most chapters in this book concentrate on the SQL data statements.

## SQL: A Nonprocedural Language

If you have worked with programming languages in the past, you are used to defining variables and data structures, using conditional logic (i.e., if-then-else) and looping constructs (i.e., do while ... end), and breaking your code into small, reusable pieces (i.e., objects, functions, procedures). Your code is handed to a compiler, and the executable that results does exactly (well, not always *exactly*) what you programmed it to do. Whether you work with Java, Python, Scala, or some other *procedural* language, you are in complete control of what the program does.



A procedural language defines both the desired results and the mechanism, or process, by which the results are generated. Non-procedural languages also define the desired results, but the process by which the results are generated is left to an external agent.

With SQL, however, you will need to give up some of the control you are used to, because SQL statements define the necessary inputs and outputs, but the manner in which a statement is executed is left to a component of your database engine known as the *optimizer*. The optimizer's job is to look at your SQL statements and, taking into account how your tables are configured and what indexes are available, decide the most efficient execution path (well, not always the *most* efficient). Most database engines will allow you to influence the optimizer's decisions by specifying *optimizer hints*, such as suggesting that a particular index be used; most SQL users, however, will never get to this level of sophistication and will leave such tweaking to their database administrator or performance expert.

Therefore, with SQL, you will not be able to write complete applications. Unless you are writing a simple script to manipulate certain data, you will need to integrate SQL with your favorite programming language. Some database vendors have done this for

you, such as Oracle's PL/SQL language, MySQL's stored procedure language, and Microsoft's Transact-SQL language. With these languages, the SQL data statements are part of the language's grammar, allowing you to seamlessly integrate database queries with procedural commands. If you are using a non-database-specific language such as Java or Python, however, you will need to use a toolkit/API to execute SQL statements from your code. Some of these toolkits are provided by your database vendor, whereas others have been created by third-party vendors or by open source providers. [Table 1-2](#) shows some of the available options for integrating SQL into a specific language.

*Table 1-2. SQL integration toolkits*

Language	Toolkit
Java	JDBC (Java Database Connectivity)
C#	ADO.NET (Microsoft)
Ruby	Ruby DBI
Python	Python DB
Go	Package database/sql

If you only need to execute SQL commands interactively, every database vendor provides at least a simple command-line tool for submitting SQL commands to the database engine and inspecting the results. Most vendors provide a graphical tool as well that includes one window showing your SQL commands and another window showing the results from your SQL commands. Additionally, there are third-party tools such as SQuirrel, which will connect via a JDBC connection to many different database servers. Since the examples in this book are executed against a MySQL database, I use the `mysql` command-line tool that is included as part of the MySQL installation to run the examples and format the results.

## SQL Examples

Earlier in this chapter, I promised to show you an SQL statement that would return all the transactions against George Blake's checking account. Without further ado, here it is:

```
SELECT t.txn_id, t.txn_type_cd, t.txn_date, t.amount
FROM individual i
    INNER JOIN account a ON i.cust_id = a.cust_id
    INNER JOIN product p ON p.product_cd = a.product_cd
    INNER JOIN transaction t ON t.account_id = a.account_id
WHERE i.fname = 'George' AND i.lname = 'Blake'
    AND p.name = 'checking account';

+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| txn_id | txn_type_cd | txn_date           | amount |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 11 | DBT      | 2008-01-05 00:00:00 | 100.00 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Without going into too much detail at this point, this query identifies the row in the `individual` table for George Blake and the row in the `product` table for the “checking” product, finds the row in the `account` table for this individual/product combination, and returns four columns from the `transaction` table for all transactions posted to this account. If you happen to know that George Blake’s customer ID is 8 and that checking accounts are designated by the code ‘CHK’, then you can simply find George Blake’s checking account in the `account` table based on the customer ID and use the account ID to find the appropriate transactions:

```
SELECT t.txn_id, t.txn_type_cd, t.txn_date, t.amount
FROM account a
INNER JOIN transaction t ON t.account_id = a.account_id
WHERE a.cust_id = 8 AND a.product_cd = 'CHK';
```

I cover all of the concepts in these queries (plus a lot more) in the following chapters, but I wanted to at least show what they would look like.

The previous queries contain three different *clauses*: `select`, `from`, and `where`. Almost every query that you encounter will include at least these three clauses, although there are several more that can be used for more specialized purposes. The role of each of these three clauses is demonstrated by the following:

```
SELECT /* one or more things */ ...
FROM /* one or more places */ ...
WHERE /* one or more conditions apply */ ...
```



Most SQL implementations treat any text between the `/*` and `*/` tags as comments.

When constructing your query, your first task is generally to determine which table or tables will be needed and then add them to your `from` clause. Next, you will need to add conditions to your `where` clause to filter out the data from these tables that you aren’t interested in. Finally, you will decide which columns from the different tables need to be retrieved and add them to your `select` clause. Here’s a simple example that shows how you would find all customers with the last name “Smith”:

```
SELECT cust_id, fname
FROM individual
WHERE lname = 'Smith';
```

This query searches the `individual` table for all rows whose `lname` column matches the string '`Smith`' and returns the `cust_id` and `fname` columns from those rows.

Along with querying your database, you will most likely be involved with populating and modifying the data in your database. Here's a simple example of how you would insert a new row into the `product` table:

```
INSERT INTO product (product_cd, name)
VALUES ('CD', 'Certificate of Depysit')
```

Whoops, looks like you misspelled "Deposit." No problem. You can clean that up with an `update` statement:

```
UPDATE product
SET name = 'Certificate of Deposit'
WHERE product_cd = 'CD';
```

Notice that the `update` statement also contains a `where` clause, just like the `select` statement. This is because an `update` statement must identify the rows to be modified; in this case, you are specifying that only those rows whose `product_cd` column matches the string '`CD`' should be modified. Since the `product_cd` column is the primary key for the `product` table, you should expect your `update` statement to modify exactly one row (or zero, if the value doesn't exist in the table). Whenever you execute an SQL data statement, you will receive feedback from the database engine as to how many rows were affected by your statement. If you are using an interactive tool such as the `mysql` command-line tool mentioned earlier, then you will receive feedback concerning how many rows were either:

- Returned by your `select` statement
- Created by your `insert` statement
- Modified by your `update` statement
- Removed by your `delete` statement

If you are using a procedural language with one of the toolkits mentioned earlier, the toolkit will include a call to ask for this information after your SQL data statement has executed. In general, it's a good idea to check this info to make sure your statement didn't do something unexpected (like when you forgot to put a `where` clause on your `delete` statement and delete every row in the table!).

## What Is MySQL?

Relational databases have been available commercially for more than three decades. Some of the most mature and popular commercial products include:

- Oracle Database from Oracle Corporation
- SQL Server from Microsoft
- DB2 Universal Database from IBM

All these database servers do approximately the same thing, although some are better equipped to run very large or very high throughput databases. Others are better at handling objects or very large files or XML documents, and so on. Additionally, all these servers do a pretty good job of complying with the latest ANSI SQL standard. This is a good thing, and I make it a point to show you how to write SQL statements that will run on any of these platforms with little or no modification.

Along with the commercial database servers, there has been quite a bit of activity in the open source community in the past two decades with the goal of creating a viable alternative. Two of the most commonly used open source database servers are PostgreSQL and MySQL. The MySQL server is available for free, and I have found it to be extremely simple to download and install. For these reasons, I have decided that all examples for this book be run against a MySQL (version 8.0) database, and that the `mysql` command-line tool be used to format query results. Even if you are already using another server and never plan to use MySQL, I urge you to install the latest MySQL server, load the sample schema and data, and experiment with the data and examples in this book.

However, keep in mind the following caveat:

This is not a book about MySQL's SQL implementation.

Rather, this book is designed to teach you how to craft SQL statements that will run on MySQL with no modifications, and will run on recent releases of Oracle Database, DB2, and SQL Server with few or no modifications.

## SQL Unplugged

A great deal has happened in the database world during the decade between the second and third editions of this book. While relational databases are still heavily used and will continue to be for some time, new database technologies have emerged to meet the needs of companies like Amazon and Google. These technologies include Hadoop, Spark, NoSQL, and NewSQL, which are distributed, scalable systems typically deployed on clusters of commodity servers. While it is beyond the scope of this book to explore these technologies in detail, they do all share something in common with relational databases: SQL.

Since organizations frequently store data using multiple technologies, there is a need to unplug SQL from a particular database server and provide a service that can span multiple databases. For example, a report may need to bring together data stored in

Oracle, Hadoop, JSON files, CSV files, and Unix log files. A new generation of tools have been built to meet this type of challenge, and one of the most promising is Apache Drill, which is an open source query engine that allows users to write queries that can access data stored in most any database or filesystem. We will explore Apache Drill in [Chapter 18](#).

## What's in Store

The overall goal of the next four chapters is to introduce the SQL data statements, with a special emphasis on the three main clauses of the `select` statement. Additionally, you will see many examples that use the Sakila schema (introduced in the next chapter), which will be used for all examples in the book. It is my hope that familiarity with a single database will allow you to get to the crux of an example without having to stop and examine the tables being used each time. If it becomes a bit tedious working with the same set of tables, feel free to augment the sample database with additional tables or to invent your own database with which to experiment.

After you have a solid grasp on the basics, the remaining chapters will drill deep into additional concepts, most of which are independent of each other. Thus, if you find yourself getting confused, you can always move ahead and come back later to revisit a chapter. When you have finished the book and worked through all of the examples, you will be well on your way to becoming a seasoned SQL practitioner.

For readers interested in learning more about relational databases, the history of computerized database systems, or the SQL language than was covered in this short introduction, here are a few resources worth checking out:

- *Database in Depth: Relational Theory for Practitioners* by C. J. Date (O'Reilly)
- *An Introduction to Database Systems*, Eighth Edition, by C. J. Date (Addison-Wesley)
- *The Database Relational Model: A Retrospective Review and Analysis*, by C. J. Date (Addison-Wesley)
- [Wikipedia subarticle on definition of “Database Management System”](#)



# Creating and Populating a Database

This chapter provides you with the information you need to create your first database and to create the tables and associated data used for the examples in this book. You will also learn about various data types and see how to create tables using them. Because the examples in this book are executed against a MySQL database, this chapter is somewhat skewed toward MySQL's features and syntax, but most concepts are applicable to any server.

## Creating a MySQL Database

If you want the ability to experiment with the data used for the examples in this book, you have two options:

- Download and install the MySQL server version 8.0 (or later) and load the Sakila example database from [`https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html`](https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html).
- Go to [`https://www.katacoda.com/mysql-db-sandbox/scenarios/mysql-sandbox`](https://www.katacoda.com/mysql-db-sandbox/scenarios/mysql-sandbox) to access the MySQL Sandbox, which has the Sakila sample database loaded in a MySQL instance. You'll have to set up a (free) Katacoda account. Then, click the Start Scenario button.

If you choose the second option, once you start the scenario, a MySQL server is installed and started, and then the Sakila schema and data are loaded. When it's ready, a standard `mysql>` prompt appears, and you can then start querying the sample database. This is certainly the easiest option, and I anticipate that most readers will choose this option; if this sounds good to you, feel free to skip ahead to the next section.

If you prefer to have your own copy of the data and want any changes you have made to be permanent, or if you are just interested in installing the MySQL server on your

own machine, you may prefer the first option. You may also opt to use a MySQL server hosted in an environment such as Amazon Web Services or Google Cloud. In either case, you will need to perform the installation/configuration yourself, as it is beyond the scope of this book. Once your database is available, you will need to follow a few steps to load the Sakila sample database.

First, you will need to launch the `mysql` command-line client and provide a password, and then perform the following steps:

1. Go to <https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html> and download the files for “sakila database” under the Example Databases section.
2. Put the files in a local directory such as `C:\temp\sakila-db` (used for the next two steps, but overwrite with your directory path).
3. Type `source c:\temp\sakila-db\sakila-schema.sql`; and press Enter.
4. Type `source c:\temp\sakila-db\sakila-data.sql`; and press Enter.

You should now have a working database populated with all the data needed for the examples in this book.



The Sakila sample database is made available by MySQL and is licensed via the New BSD license. Sakila contains data for a fictitious movie rental company, and includes tables such as `store`, `inventory`, `film`, `customer`, and `payment`. While actual movie rental stores are largely a thing of the past, with a little imagination we could rebrand it as a movie-streaming company by ignoring the `staff` and `address` tables and renaming `store` to `streaming_service`. However, the examples in this book will stick to the original script (pun intended).

## Using the `mysql` Command-Line Tool

Unless you are using a temporary database session (the second option in the previous section), you will need to start the `mysql` command-line tool in order to interact with the database. To do so, you will need to open a Windows or Unix shell and execute the `mysql` utility. For example, if you are logging in using the root account, you would do the following:

```
mysql -u root -p;
```

You will then be asked for your password, after which you will see the `mysql>` prompt. To see all of the available databases, you can use the following command:

```
mysql> show databases;
+-----+
| Database      |
+-----+
| information_schema |
| mysql          |
| performance_schema |
| sakila         |
| sys            |
+-----+
5 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

Since you will be using the Sakila database, you will need to specify the database you want to work with via the `use` command:

```
mysql> use sakila;
Database changed
```

Whenever you invoke the `mysql` command-line tool, you can specify both the user-name and database to use, as in the following:

```
mysql -u root -p sakila;
```

This will save you from having to type `use sakila;` every time you start up the tool. Now that you have established a session and specified the database, you will be able to issue SQL statements and view the results. For example, if you want to know the current date and time, you could issue the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT now();
+-----+
| now()      |
+-----+
| 2019-04-04 20:44:26 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

The `now()` function is a built-in MySQL function that returns the current date and time. As you can see, the `mysql` command-line tool formats the results of your queries within a rectangle bounded by +, -, and | characters. After the results have been exhausted (in this case, there is only a single row of results), the `mysql` command-line tool shows how many rows were returned, along with how long the SQL statement took to execute.

## About Missing from Clauses

With some database servers, you won't be able to issue a query without a `from` clause that names at least one table. Oracle Database is a commonly used server for which this is true. For cases when you only need to call a function, Oracle provides a table called `dual`, which consists of a single column called `dummy` that contains a single row of data. In order to be compatible with Oracle Database, MySQL also provides a `dual`

table. The previous query to determine the current date and time could therefore be written as:

```
mysql> SELECT now()
      FROM dual;
+-----+
| now()          |
+-----+
| 2019-04-04 20:44:26 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

If you are not using Oracle and have no need to be compatible with Oracle, you can ignore the `dual` table altogether and use just a `select` clause without a `from` clause.

When you are done with the `mysql` command-line tool, simply type `quit;` or `exit;` to return to the Unix or Windows command shell.

## MySQL Data Types

In general, all the popular database servers have the capacity to store the same types of data, such as strings, dates, and numbers. Where they typically differ is in the specialty data types, such as XML and JSON documents or spatial data. Since this is an introductory book on SQL and since 98% of the columns you encounter will be simple data types, this chapter covers only the character, date (a.k.a. temporal), and numeric data types. The use of SQL to query JSON documents will be explored in [Chapter 18](#).

### Character Data

Character data can be stored as either fixed-length or variable-length strings; the difference is that fixed-length strings are right-padded with spaces and always consume the same number of bytes, and variable-length strings are not right-padded with spaces and don't always consume the same number of bytes. When defining a character column, you must specify the maximum size of any string to be stored in the column. For example, if you want to store strings up to 20 characters in length, you could use either of the following definitions:

```
char(20) /* fixed-length */
varchar(20) /* variable-length */
```

The maximum length for `char` columns is currently 255 bytes, whereas `varchar` columns can be up to 65,535 bytes. If you need to store longer strings (such as emails, XML documents, etc.), then you will want to use one of the text types (`mediumtext` and `longtext`), which I cover later in this section. In general, you should use the `char` type when all strings to be stored in the column are of the same length, such as state

abbreviations, and the `varchar` type when strings to be stored in the column are of varying lengths. Both `char` and `varchar` are used in a similar fashion in all the major database servers.



An exception is made in the use of `varchar` for Oracle Database. Oracle users should use the `varchar2` type when defining variable-length character columns.

## Character sets

For languages that use the Latin alphabet, such as English, there is a sufficiently small number of characters such that only a single byte is needed to store each character. Other languages, such as Japanese and Korean, contain large numbers of characters, thus requiring multiple bytes of storage for each character. Such character sets are therefore called *multibyte character sets*.

MySQL can store data using various character sets, both single- and multibyte. To view the supported character sets in your server, you can use the `SHOW` command, as shown in the following example:

```
mysql> SHOW CHARACTER SET;
```

Charset	Description	Default collation	Maxlen
armSCII8	ARMSCII-8 Armenian	armSCII8_general_ci	1
ascii	US ASCII	ascii_general_ci	1
big5	Big5 Traditional Chinese	big5_chinese_ci	2
binary	Binary pseudo charset	binary	1
cp1250	Windows Central European	cp1250_general_ci	1
cp1251	Windows Cyrillic	cp1251_general_ci	1
cp1256	Windows Arabic	cp1256_general_ci	1
cp1257	Windows Baltic	cp1257_general_ci	1
cp850	DOS West European	cp850_general_ci	1
cp852	DOS Central European	cp852_general_ci	1
cp866	DOS Russian	cp866_general_ci	1
cp932	SJIS for Windows Japanese	cp932_japanese_ci	2
dec8	DEC West European	dec8_swedish_ci	1
eucjpm	UJIS for Windows Japanese	eucjpm_s_japanese_ci	3
euckr	EUC-KR Korean	euckr_korean_ci	2
gb18030	China National Standard GB18030	gb18030_chinese_ci	4
gb2312	GB2312 Simplified Chinese	gb2312_chinese_ci	2
gbk	GBK Simplified Chinese	gbk_chinese_ci	2
geostd8	GEOSTD8 Georgian	geostd8_general_ci	1
greek	ISO 8859-7 Greek	greek_general_ci	1
hebrew	ISO 8859-8 Hebrew	hebrew_general_ci	1
hp8	HP West European	hp8_english_ci	1
keybcs2	DOS Kamenicky Czech-Slovak	keybcs2_general_ci	1
koi8r	KOI8-R Relcom Russian	koi8r_general_ci	1

koi8u	KOI8-U Ukrainian	koi8u_general_ci	1
latin1	cp1252 West European	latin1_swedish_ci	1
latin2	ISO 8859-2 Central European	latin2_general_ci	1
latin5	ISO 8859-9 Turkish	latin5_turkish_ci	1
latin7	ISO 8859-13 Baltic	latin7_general_ci	1
macce	Mac Central European	macce_general_ci	1
macroman	Mac West European	macroman_general_ci	1
sjis	Shift-JIS Japanese	sjis_japanese_ci	2
swe7	7bit Swedish	swe7_swedish_ci	1
tis620	TIS620 Thai	tis620_thai_ci	1
ucs2	UCS-2 Unicode	ucs2_general_ci	2
ujis	EUC-JP Japanese	ujis_japanese_ci	3
utf16	UTF-16 Unicode	utf16_general_ci	4
utf16le	UTF-16LE Unicode	utf16le_general_ci	4
utf32	UTF-32 Unicode	utf32_general_ci	4
utf8	UTF-8 Unicode	utf8_general_ci	3
utf8mb4	UTF-8 Unicode	utf8mb4_0900_ai_ci	4

41 rows in set (0.04 sec)

If the value in the fourth column, `maxlen`, is greater than 1, then the character set is a multibyte character set.

In prior versions of the MySQL server, the `latin1` character set was automatically chosen as the default character set, but version 8 defaults to `utf8mb4`. However, you may choose to use a different character set for each character column in your database, and you can even store different character sets within the same table. To choose a character set other than the default when defining a column, simply name one of the supported character sets after the type definition, as in:

```
varchar(20) character set latin1
```

With MySQL, you may also set the default character set for your entire database:

```
create database european_sales character set latin1;
```

While this is as much information regarding character sets as is appropriate for an introductory book, there is a great deal more to the topic of internationalization than what is shown here. If you plan to deal with multiple or unfamiliar character sets, you may want to pick up a book such as Jukka Korpela's *Unicode Explained: Internationalize Documents, Programs, and Web Sites* (O'Reilly).

## Text data

If you need to store data that might exceed the 64 KB limit for `varchar` columns, you will need to use one of the text types.

**Table 2-1** shows the available text types and their maximum sizes.

Table 2-1. MySQL text types

Text type	Maximum number of bytes
tinytext	255
text	65,535
mediumtext	16,777,215
longtext	4,294,967,295

When choosing to use one of the text types, you should be aware of the following:

- If the data being loaded into a text column exceeds the maximum size for that type, the data will be truncated.
- Trailing spaces will not be removed when data is loaded into the column.
- When using `text` columns for sorting or grouping, only the first 1,024 bytes are used, although this limit may be increased if necessary.
- The different text types are unique to MySQL. SQL Server has a single `text` type for large character data, whereas DB2 and Oracle use a data type called `clob`, for Character Large Object.
- Now that MySQL allows up to 65,535 bytes for `varchar` columns (it was limited to 255 bytes in version 4), there isn't any particular need to use the `tinytext` or `text` type.

If you are creating a column for free-form data entry, such as a `notes` column to hold data about customer interactions with your company's customer service department, then `varchar` will probably be adequate. If you are storing documents, however, you should choose either the `mediumtext` or `longtext` type.



Oracle Database allows up to 2,000 bytes for `char` columns and 4,000 bytes for `varchar2` columns. For larger documents you may use the `clob` type. SQL Server can handle up to 8,000 bytes for both `char` and `varchar` data, but you can store up to 2 GB of data in a column defined as `varchar(max)`.

## Numeric Data

Although it might seem reasonable to have a single numeric data type called "numeric," there are actually several different numeric data types that reflect the various ways in which numbers are used, as illustrated here:

*A column indicating whether a customer order has been shipped*

This type of column, referred to as a *Boolean*, would contain a `0` to indicate `false` and a `1` to indicate `true`.

*A system-generated primary key for a transaction table*

This data would generally start at 1 and increase in increments of one up to a potentially very large number.

*An item number for a customer's electronic shopping basket*

The values for this type of column would be positive whole numbers between 1 and, perhaps, 200 (for shopaholics).

*Positional data for a circuit board drill machine*

High-precision scientific or manufacturing data often requires accuracy to eight decimal points.

To handle these types of data (and more), MySQL has several different numeric data types. The most commonly used numeric types are those used to store whole numbers, or *integers*. When specifying one of these types, you may also specify that the data is *unsigned*, which tells the server that all data stored in the column will be greater than or equal to zero. **Table 2-2** shows the five different data types used to store whole-number integers.

*Table 2-2. MySQL integer types*

Type	Signed range	Unsigned range
tinyint	-128 to 127	0 to 255
smallint	-32,768 to 32,767	0 to 65,535
mediumint	-8,388,608 to 8,388,607	0 to 16,777,215
int	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647	0 to 4,294,967,295
bigint	-2 <sup>63</sup> to 2 <sup>63</sup> - 1	0 to 2 <sup>64</sup> - 1

When you create a column using one of the integer types, MySQL will allocate an appropriate amount of space to store the data, which ranges from one byte for a *tinyint* to eight bytes for a *bigint*. Therefore, you should try to choose a type that will be large enough to hold the biggest number you can envision being stored in the column without needlessly wasting storage space.

For floating-point numbers (such as 3.1415927), you may choose from the numeric types shown in **Table 2-3**.

*Table 2-3. MySQL floating-point types*

Type	Numeric range
float( p , s )	-3.402823466E+38 to -1.175494351E-38 and 1.175494351E-38 to 3.402823466E+38
double( p , s )	-1.7976931348623157E+308 to -2.2250738585072014E-308 and 2.2250738585072014E-308 to 1.7976931348623157E+308

When using a floating-point type, you can specify a *precision* (the total number of allowable digits both to the left and to the right of the decimal point) and a *scale* (the number of allowable digits to the right of the decimal point), but they are not required. These values are represented in [Table 2-3](#) as *p* and *s*. If you specify a precision and scale for your floating-point column, remember that the data stored in the column will be rounded if the number of digits exceeds the scale and/or precision of the column. For example, a column defined as `float(4,2)` will store a total of four digits, two to the left of the decimal and two to the right of the decimal. Therefore, such a column would handle the numbers 27.44 and 8.19 just fine, but the number 17.8675 would be rounded to 17.87, and attempting to store the number 178.375 in your `float(4,2)` column would generate an error.

Like the integer types, floating-point columns can be defined as `unsigned`, but this designation only prevents negative numbers from being stored in the column rather than altering the range of data that may be stored in the column.

## Temporal Data

Along with strings and numbers, you will almost certainly be working with information about dates and/or times. This type of data is referred to as *temporal*, and some examples of temporal data in a database include:

- The future date that a particular event is expected to happen, such as shipping a customer's order
- The date that a customer's order was shipped
- The date and time that a user modified a particular row in a table
- An employee's birth date
- The year corresponding to a row in a `yearly_sales` fact table in a data warehouse
- The elapsed time needed to complete a wiring harness on an automobile assembly line

MySQL includes data types to handle all of these situations. [Table 2-4](#) shows the temporal data types supported by MySQL.

*Table 2-4. MySQL temporal types*

Type	Default format	Allowable values
<code>date</code>	<code>YYYY-MM-DD</code>	<code>1000-01-01</code> to <code>9999-12-31</code>
<code>datetime</code>	<code>YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS</code>	<code>1000-01-01 00:00:00.000000</code> to <code>9999-12-31 23:59:59.999999</code>

Type	Default format	Allowable values
timestamp	YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS	1970-01-01 00:00:00.000000 to 2038-01-18 22:14:07.999999
year	YYYY	1901 to 2155
time	HHH:MI:SS	-838:59:59.000000 to 838:59:59.000000

While database servers store temporal data in various ways, the purpose of a format string (second column of [Table 2-4](#)) is to show how the data will be represented when retrieved, along with how a date string should be constructed when inserting or updating a temporal column. Thus, if you wanted to insert the date March 23, 2020, into a `date` column using the default format `YYYY-MM-DD`, you would use the string '`2020-03-23`'. [Chapter 7](#) fully explores how temporal data is constructed and displayed.

The `datetime`, `timestamp`, and `time` types also allow fractional seconds of up to 6 decimal places (microseconds). When defining columns using one of these data types, you may supply a value from 0 to 6; for example, specifying `datetime(2)` would allow your time values to include hundredths of a second.



Each database server allows a different range of dates for temporal columns. Oracle Database accepts dates ranging from 4712 BC to 9999 AD, while SQL Server only handles dates ranging from 1753 AD to 9999 AD (unless you are using SQL Server 2008's `datetime2` data type, which allows for dates ranging from 1 AD to 9999 AD). MySQL falls in between Oracle and SQL Server and can store dates from 1000 AD to 9999 AD. Although this might not make any difference for most systems that track current and future events, it is important to keep in mind if you are storing historical dates.

[Table 2-5](#) describes the various components of the date formats shown in [Table 2-4](#).

*Table 2-5. Date format components*

Component	Definition	Range
YYYY	Year, including century	1000 to 9999
MM	Month	01 (January) to 12 (December)
DD	Day	01 to 31
HH	Hour	00 to 23
HHH	Hours (elapsed)	-838 to 838
MI	Minute	00 to 59
SS	Second	00 to 59

Here's how the various temporal types would be used to implement the examples shown earlier:

- Columns to hold the expected future shipping date of a customer order and an employee's birth date would use the `date` type, since it is unrealistic to schedule a future shipment down to the second and unnecessary to know at what time a person was born.
- A column to hold information about when a customer order was actually shipped would use the `datetime` type, since it is important to track not only the date that the shipment occurred but the time as well.
- A column that tracks when a user last modified a particular row in a table would use the `timestamp` type. The `timestamp` type holds the same information as the `datetime` type (year, month, day, hour, minute, second), but a `timestamp` column will automatically be populated with the current date/time by the MySQL server when a row is added to a table or when a row is later modified.
- A column holding just year data would use the `year` type.
- Columns that hold data regarding the length of time needed to complete a task would use the `time` type. For this type of data, it would be unnecessary and confusing to store a date component, since you are interested only in the number of hours/minutes/seconds needed to complete the task. This information could be derived using two `datetime` columns (one for the task start date/time and the other for the task completion date/time) and subtracting one from the other, but it is simpler to use a single `time` column.

[Chapter 7](#) explores how to work with each of these temporal data types.

## Table Creation

Now that you have a firm grasp on what data types may be stored in a MySQL database, it's time to see how to use these types in table definitions. Let's start by defining a table to hold information about a person.

### Step 1: Design

A good way to start designing a table is to do a bit of brainstorming to see what kind of information would be helpful to include. Here's what I came up with after thinking for a short time about the types of information that describe a person:

- Name
- Eye color
- Birth date

- Address
- Favorite foods

This is certainly not an exhaustive list, but it's good enough for now. The next step is to assign column names and data types. [Table 2-6](#) shows my initial attempt.

*Table 2-6. Person table, first pass*

Column	Type	Allowable values
name	varchar(40)	
eye_color	char(2)	BL, BR, GR
birth_date	date	
address	varchar(100)	
favorite_foods	varchar(200)	

The `name`, `address`, and `favorite_foods` columns are of type `varchar` and allow for free-form data entry. The `eye_color` column allows two characters that should equal only `BR`, `BL`, or `GR`. The `birth_date` column is of type `date`, since a time component is not needed.

## Step 2: Refinement

In [Chapter 1](#), you were introduced to the concept of *normalization*, which is the process of ensuring that there are no duplicate (other than foreign keys) or compound columns in your database design. In looking at the columns in the `person` table a second time, the following issues arise:

- The `name` column is actually a compound object consisting of a first name and a last name.
- Since multiple people can have the same name, eye color, birth date, and so forth, there are no columns in the `person` table that guarantee uniqueness.
- The `address` column is also a compound object consisting of street, city, state/province, country, and postal code.
- The `favorite_foods` column is a list containing zero, one, or more independent items. It would be best to create a separate table for this data that includes a foreign key to the `person` table so that you know to which person a particular food may be attributed.

After taking these issues into consideration, [Table 2-7](#) gives a normalized version of the `person` table.

*Table 2-7. Person table, second pass*

Column	Type	Allowable values
person_id	smallint (unsigned)	
first_name	varchar(20)	
last_name	varchar(20)	
eye_color	char(2)	BR, BL, GR
birth_date	date	
street	varchar(30)	
city	varchar(20)	
state	varchar(20)	
country	varchar(20)	
postal_code	varchar(20)	

Now that the `person` table has a primary key (`person_id`) to guarantee uniqueness, the next step is to build a `favorite_food` table that includes a foreign key to the `person` table. [Table 2-8](#) shows the result.

*Table 2-8. favorite\_food table*

Column	Type
person_id	smallint (unsigned)
food	varchar(20)

The `person_id` and `food` columns comprise the primary key of the `favorite_food` table, and the `person_id` column is also a foreign key to the `person` table.

## How Much Is Enough?

Moving the `favorite_foods` column out of the `person` table was definitely a good idea, but are we done yet? What happens, for example, if one person lists “pasta” as a favorite food while another person lists “spaghetti”? Are they the same thing? In order to prevent this problem, you might decide that you want people to choose their favorite foods from a list of options, in which case you should create a `food` table with `food_id` and `food_name` columns and then change the `favorite_food` table to contain a foreign key to the `food` table. While this design would be fully normalized, you might decide that you simply want to store the values that the user has entered, in which case you may leave the table as is.

## Step 3: Building SQL Schema Statements

Now that the design is complete for the two tables holding information about people and their favorite foods, the next step is to generate SQL statements to create the tables in the database. Here is the statement to create the `person` table:

```
CREATE TABLE person
  (person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED,
   fname VARCHAR(20),
   lname VARCHAR(20),
   eye_color CHAR(2),
   birth_date DATE,
   street VARCHAR(30),
   city VARCHAR(20),
   state VARCHAR(20),
   country VARCHAR(20),
   postal_code VARCHAR(20),
   CONSTRAINT pk_person PRIMARY KEY (person_id)
);
```

Everything in this statement should be fairly self-explanatory except for the last item; when you define your table, you need to tell the database server what column or columns will serve as the primary key for the table. You do this by creating a *constraint* on the table. You can add several types of constraints to a table definition. This constraint is a *primary key constraint*. It is created on the `person_id` column and given the name `pk_person`.

While on the topic of constraints, there is another type of constraint that would be useful for the `person` table. In [Table 2-6](#), I added a third column to show the allowable values for certain columns (such as 'BR' and 'BL' for the `eye_color` column). Another type of constraint called a *check constraint* constrains the allowable values for a particular column. MySQL allows a check constraint to be attached to a column definition, as in the following:

```
eye_color CHAR(2) CHECK (eye_color IN ('BR','BL','GR')),
```

While check constraints operate as expected on most database servers, the MySQL server allows check constraints to be defined but does not enforce them. However, MySQL does provide another character data type called `enum` that merges the check constraint into the data type definition. Here's what it would look like for the `eye_color` column definition:

```
eye_color ENUM('BR','BL','GR'),
```

Here's how the `person` table definition looks with an `enum` data type for the `eye_color` column:

```

CREATE TABLE person
  (person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED,
   fname VARCHAR(20),
   lname VARCHAR(20),
   eye_color ENUM('BR','BL','GR'),
   birth_date DATE,
   street VARCHAR(30),
   city VARCHAR(20),
   state VARCHAR(20),
   country VARCHAR(20),
   postal_code VARCHAR(20),
   CONSTRAINT pk_person PRIMARY KEY (person_id)
 );

```

Later in this chapter, you will see what happens if you try to add data to a column that violates its check constraint (or, in the case of MySQL, its enumeration values).

You are now ready to run the `create table` statement using the `mysql` command-line tool. Here's what it looks like:

```

mysql> CREATE TABLE person
    -> (person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED,
    ->   fname VARCHAR(20),
    ->   lname VARCHAR(20),
    ->   eye_color ENUM('BR','BL','GR'),
    ->   birth_date DATE,
    ->   street VARCHAR(30),
    ->   city VARCHAR(20),
    ->   state VARCHAR(20),
    ->   country VARCHAR(20),
    ->   postal_code VARCHAR(20),
    ->   CONSTRAINT pk_person PRIMARY KEY (person_id)
    -> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.37 sec)

```

After processing the `create table` statement, the MySQL server returns the message “Query OK, 0 rows affected,” which tells me that the statement had no syntax errors.

If you want to make sure that the `person` table does, in fact, exist, you can use the `describe` command (or `desc` for short) to look at the table definition:

```

mysql> desc person;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field      | Type           | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id  | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI | NULL    |       |
| fname       | varchar(20)        | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| lname       | varchar(20)        | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| eye_color   | enum('BR','BL','GR') | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| birth_date  | date             | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| street      | varchar(30)        | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| city        | varchar(20)        | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| state        | varchar(20)        | YES  |     | NULL    |       |

```

```

| country      | varchar(20)          | YES   |     | NULL    |     |
| postal_code | varchar(20)          | YES   |     | NULL    |     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
10 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Columns 1 and 2 of the `describe` output are self-explanatory. Column 3 shows whether a particular column can be omitted when data is inserted into the table. I purposefully left this topic out of the discussion for now (see the following sidebar for a short discourse), but we explore it fully in [Chapter 4](#). The fourth column shows whether a column takes part in any keys (primary or foreign); in this case, the `person_id` column is marked as the primary key. Column 5 shows whether a particular column will be populated with a default value if you omit the column when inserting data into the table. The sixth column (called “Extra”) shows any other pertinent information that might apply to a column.

## What Is Null?

In some cases, it is not possible or applicable to provide a value for a particular column in your table. For example, when adding data about a new customer order, the `ship_date` column cannot yet be determined. In this case, the column is said to be *null* (note that I do not say that it *equals* null), which indicates the absence of a value. Null is used for various cases where a value cannot be supplied, such as:

- Not applicable
- Unknown
- Empty set

When designing a table, you may specify which columns are allowed to be null (the default) and which columns are not allowed to be null (designated by adding the keywords `not null` after the type definition).

Now that you have created the `person` table, your next step will be to then create the `favorite_food` table:

```

mysql> CREATE TABLE favorite_food
-> (person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED,
-> food VARCHAR(20),
-> CONSTRAINT pk_favorite_food PRIMARY KEY (person_id, food),
-> CONSTRAINT fk_fav_food_person_id FOREIGN KEY (person_id)
-> REFERENCES person (person_id)
-> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.10 sec)

```

This should look very similar to the `create table` statement for the `person` table, with the following exceptions:

- Since a person can have more than one favorite food (which is the reason this table was created in the first place), it takes more than just the `person_id` column to guarantee uniqueness in the table. This table, therefore, has a two-column primary key: `person_id` and `food`.
- The `favorite_food` table contains another type of constraint which is called a *foreign key constraint*. This constrains the values of the `person_id` column in the `favorite_food` table to include *only* values found in the `person` table. With this constraint in place, I will not be able to add a row to the `favorite_food` table indicating that `person_id` 27 likes pizza if there isn't already a row in the `person` table having a `person_id` of 27.



If you forget to create the foreign key constraint when you first create the table, you can add it later via the `alter table` statement.

`describe` shows the following after executing the `create table` statement:

```
mysql> desc favorite_food;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type            | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI | NULL    |       |
| food      | varchar(20)        | NO   | PRI | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

Now that the tables are in place, the next logical step is to add some data.

## Populating and Modifying Tables

With the `person` and `favorite_food` tables in place, you can now begin to explore the four SQL data statements: `insert`, `update`, `delete`, and `select`.

### Inserting Data

Since there is not yet any data in the `person` and `favorite_food` tables, the first of the four SQL data statements to be explored will be the `insert` statement. There are three main components to an `insert` statement:

- The name of the table into which to add the data
- The names of the columns in the table to be populated

- The values with which to populate the columns

You are not required to provide data for every column in the table (unless all the columns in the table have been defined as `not null`). In some cases, those columns that are not included in the initial `insert` statement will be given a value later via an `update` statement. In other cases, a column may never receive a value for a particular row of data (such as a customer order that is canceled before being shipped, thus rendering the `ship_date` column inapplicable).

### Generating numeric key data

Before inserting data into the `person` table, it would be useful to discuss how values are generated for numeric primary keys. Other than picking a number out of thin air, you have a couple of options:

- Look at the largest value currently in the table and add one.
- Let the database server provide the value for you.

Although the first option may seem valid, it proves problematic in a multiuser environment, since two users might look at the table at the same time and generate the same value for the primary key. Instead, all database servers on the market today provide a safe, robust method for generating numeric keys. In some servers, such as the Oracle Database, a separate schema object is used (called a *sequence*); in the case of MySQL, however, you simply need to turn on the *auto-increment* feature for your primary key column. Normally, you would do this at table creation, but doing it now provides the opportunity to learn another SQL schema statement, `alter table`, which is used to modify the definition of an existing table:

```
ALTER TABLE person MODIFY person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED AUTO_INCREMENT;
```



If you are running these statements in your database, you will first need to disable the foreign key constraint on the `favorite_food` table, and then re-enable the constraints when finished. The progression of statements would be:

```
set foreign_key_checks=0;
ALTER TABLE person
    MODIFY person_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED AUTO_INCREMENT;
set foreign_key_checks=1;
```

This statement essentially redefines the `person_id` column in the `person` table. If you describe the table, you will now see the auto-increment feature listed under the “Extra” column for `person_id`:

```
mysql> DESC person;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type            | Null | Key | Default | Extra          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI | NULL    | auto_increment |
| .          |                         |      |     |          |                |
| .          |                         |      |     |          |                |
| .          |                         |      |     |          |                |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

When you insert data into the `person` table, you simply provide a `null` value for the `person_id` column, and MySQL will populate the column with the next available number (by default, MySQL starts at 1 for auto-increment columns).

### The `insert` statement

Now that all the pieces are in place, it's time to add some data. The following statement creates a row in the `person` table for William Turner:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO person
    -> (person_id, fname, lname, eye_color, birth_date)
    -> VALUES (null, 'William', 'Turner', 'BR', '1972-05-27');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.22 sec)
```

The feedback ("Query OK, 1 row affected") tells you that your statement syntax was proper and that one row was added to the database (since it was an `insert` statement). You can look at the data just added to the table by issuing a `select` statement:

```
mysql> SELECT person_id, fname, lname, birth_date
    -> FROM person;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | fname   | lname  | birth_date |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|         1 | William | Turner | 1972-05-27 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.06 sec)
```

As you can see, the MySQL server generated a value of 1 for the primary key. Since there is only a single row in the `person` table, I neglected to specify which row I am interested in and simply retrieved all the rows in the table. If there were more than one row in the table, however, I could add a `where` clause to specify that I want to retrieve data only for the row having a value of 1 for the `person_id` column:

```
mysql> SELECT person_id, fname, lname, birth_date
    -> FROM person
    -> WHERE person_id = 1;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | fname   | lname  | birth_date |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|         1 | William | Turner | 1972-05-27 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

While this query specifies a particular primary key value, you can use any column in the table to search for rows, as shown by the following query, which finds all rows with a value of 'Turner' for the `lname` column:

```
mysql> SELECT person_id, fname, lname, birth_date
-> FROM person
-> WHERE lname = 'Turner';
+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | fname   | lname   | birth_date |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       1 | William | Turner | 1972-05-27 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Before moving on, a couple of things about the earlier `insert` statement are worth mentioning:

- Values were not provided for any of the address columns. This is fine, since `nulls` are allowed for those columns.
- The value provided for the `birth_date` column was a string. As long as you match the required format shown in [Table 2-4](#), MySQL will convert the string to a date for you.
- The column names and the values provided must correspond in number and type. If you name seven columns and provide only six values or if you provide values that cannot be converted to the appropriate data type for the corresponding column, you will receive an error.

William Turner has also provided information about his favorite three foods, so here are three `insert` statements to store his food preferences:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO favorite_food (person_id, food)
-> VALUES (1, 'pizza');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
mysql> INSERT INTO favorite_food (person_id, food)
-> VALUES (1, 'cookies');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
mysql> INSERT INTO favorite_food (person_id, food)
-> VALUES (1, 'nachos');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
```

Here's a query that retrieves William's favorite foods in alphabetical order using an `order by` clause:

```
mysql> SELECT food
-> FROM favorite_food
-> WHERE person_id = 1
-> ORDER BY food;
+-----+
| food   |
+-----+
```

```
+-----+
| cookies |
| nachos  |
| pizza   |
+-----+
3 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

The `order by` clause tells the server how to sort the data returned by the query. Without the `order by` clause, there is no guarantee that the data in the table will be retrieved in any particular order.

So that William doesn't get lonely, you can execute another `insert` statement to add Susan Smith to the `person` table:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO person
-> (person_id, fname, lname, eye_color, birth_date,
-> street, city, state, country, postal_code)
-> VALUES (null, 'Susan', 'Smith', 'BL', '1975-11-02',
-> '23 Maple St.', 'Arlington', 'VA', 'USA', '20220');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
```

Since Susan was kind enough to provide her address, we included five more columns than when William's data was inserted. If you query the table again, you will see that Susan's row has been assigned the value 2 for its primary key value:

```
mysql> SELECT person_id, fname, lname, birth_date
-> FROM person;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| person_id | fname  | lname  | birth_date |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|         1 | William | Turner | 1972-05-27 |
|         2 | Susan   | Smith  | 1975-11-02 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

## Can I Get That in XML?

If you will be working with XML data, you will be happy to know that most database servers provide a simple way to generate XML output from a query. With MySQL, for example, you can use the `--xml` option when invoking the `mysql` tool, and all your output will automatically be formatted using XML. Here's what the favorite-food data looks like as an XML document:

```
C:\database> mysql -u lrngsql -p --xml bank
Enter password: xxxxxx
Welcome to the MySQL Monitor...

Mysql> SELECT * FROM favorite_food;
<?xml version="1.0"?>

<resultset statement="select * from favorite_food"
```

```
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
<row>
    <field name="person_id">1</field>
    <field name="food">cookies</field>
</row>
<row>
    <field name="person_id">1</field>
    <field name="food">nachos</field>
</row>
<row>
    <field name="person_id">1</field>
    <field name="food">pizza</field>
</row>
</resultset>
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

With SQL Server, you don't need to configure your command-line tool; you just need to add the `for xml` clause to the end of your query, as in:

```
SELECT * FROM favorite_food
FOR XML AUTO, ELEMENTS
```

## Updating Data

When the data for William Turner was initially added to the table, data for the various address columns was not included in the `insert` statement. The next statement shows how these columns can be populated at a later time via an `update` statement:

```
mysql> UPDATE person
      -> SET street = '1225 Tremont St.',
      ->     city = 'Boston',
      ->     state = 'MA',
      ->     country = 'USA',
      ->     postal_code = '02138'
      -> WHERE person_id = 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.04 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

The server responded with a two-line message: the “Rows matched: 1” item tells you that the condition in the `where` clause matched a single row in the table, and the “Changed: 1” item tells you that a single row in the table has been modified. Since the `where` clause specifies the primary key of William’s row, this is exactly what you would expect to have happen.

Depending on the conditions in your `where` clause, it is also possible to modify more than one row using a single statement. Consider, for example, what would happen if your `where` clause looked as follows:

```
WHERE person_id < 10
```

Since both William and Susan have a `person_id` value less than 10, both of their rows would be modified. If you leave off the `where` clause altogether, your update statement will modify every row in the table.

## Deleting Data

It seems that William and Susan aren't getting along very well together, so one of them has got to go. Since William was there first, Susan will get the boot courtesy of the `delete` statement:

```
mysql> DELETE FROM person  
    -> WHERE person_id = 2;  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
```

Again, the primary key is being used to isolate the row of interest, so a single row is deleted from the table. Like the `update` statement, more than one row can be deleted depending on the conditions in your `where` clause, and all rows will be deleted if the `where` clause is omitted.

## When Good Statements Go Bad

So far, all of the SQL data statements shown in this chapter have been well formed and have played by the rules. Based on the table definitions for the `person` and `favorite_food` tables, however, there are lots of ways that you can run afoul when inserting or modifying data. This section shows you some of the common mistakes that you might come across and how the MySQL server will respond.

### Nonunique Primary Key

Because the table definitions include the creation of primary key constraints, MySQL will make sure that duplicate key values are not inserted into the tables. The next statement attempts to bypass the auto-increment feature of the `person_id` column and create another row in the `person` table with a `person_id` of 1:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO person  
    -> (person_id, fname, lname, eye_color, birth_date)  
    -> VALUES (1, 'Charles','Fulton', 'GR', '1968-01-15');  
ERROR 1062 (23000): Duplicate entry '1' for key 'PRIMARY'
```

There is nothing stopping you (with the current schema objects, at least) from creating two rows with identical names, addresses, birth dates, and so on, as long as they have different values for the `person_id` column.

## Nonexistent Foreign Key

The table definition for the `favorite_food` table includes the creation of a foreign key constraint on the `person_id` column. This constraint ensures that all values of `person_id` entered into the `favorite_food` table exist in the `person` table. Here's what would happen if you tried to create a row that violates this constraint:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO favorite_food (person_id, food)
-> VALUES (999, 'lasagna');
ERROR 1452 (23000): Cannot add or update a child row: a foreign key constraint
fails ('sakila'.'favorite_food', CONSTRAINT 'fk_fav_food_person_id' FOREIGN KEY
('person_id') REFERENCES 'person' ('person_id'))
```

In this case, the `favorite_food` table is considered the *child* and the `person` table is considered the *parent*, since the `favorite_food` table is dependent on the `person` table for some of its data. If you plan to enter data into both tables, you will need to create a row in *parent* before you can enter data into `favorite_food`.



Foreign key constraints are enforced only if your tables are created using the InnoDB storage engine. We discuss MySQL's storage engines in [Chapter 12](#).

## Column Value Violations

The `eye_color` column in the `person` table is restricted to the values 'BR' for brown, 'BL' for blue, and 'GR' for green. If you mistakenly attempt to set the value of the column to any other value, you will receive the following response:

```
mysql> UPDATE person
-> SET eye_color = 'ZZ'
-> WHERE person_id = 1;
ERROR 1265 (01000): Data truncated for column 'eye_color' at row 1
```

The error message is a bit confusing, but it gives you the general idea that the server is unhappy about the value provided for the `eye_color` column.

## Invalid Date Conversions

If you construct a string with which to populate a date column and that string does not match the expected format, you will receive another error. Here's an example that uses a date format that does not match the default date format of YYYY-MM-DD:

```
mysql> UPDATE person
-> SET birth_date = 'DEC-21-1980'
-> WHERE person_id = 1;
ERROR 1292 (22007): Incorrect date value: 'DEC-21-1980' for column 'birth_date'
at row 1
```

In general, it is always a good idea to explicitly specify the format string rather than relying on the default format. Here's another version of the statement that uses the `str_to_date` function to specify which format string to use:

```
mysql> UPDATE person  
    -> SET birth_date = str_to_date('DEC-21-1980' , '%b-%d-%Y')  
    -> WHERE person_id = 1;  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.12 sec)  
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

Not only is the database server happy, but William is happy as well (we just made him eight years younger, without the need for expensive cosmetic surgery!).



Earlier in the chapter, when I discussed the various temporal data types, I showed date-formatting strings such as `YYYY-MM-DD`. While many database servers use this style of formatting, MySQL uses `%Y` to indicate a four-character year. Here are a few more formatters that you might need when converting strings to `datetimes` in MySQL:

- `%a` The short weekday name, such as Sun, Mon, ...
- `%b` The short month name, such as Jan, Feb, ...
- `%c` The numeric month (00..12)
- `%d` The numeric day of the month (00..31)
- `%f` The number of microseconds (000000..999999)
- `%H` The hour of the day, in 24-hour format (00..23)
- `%h` The hour of the day, in 12-hour format (01..12)
- `%i` The minutes within the hour (00..59)
- `%j` The day of year (001..366)
- `%M` The full month name (January..December)
- `%m` The numeric month
- `%p` AM or PM
- `%s` The number of seconds (00..59)
- `%W` The full weekday name (Sunday..Saturday)
- `%w` The numeric day of the week (0=Sunday..6=Saturday)
- `%Y` The four-digit year

## The Sakila Database

For the remainder of the book, most examples will use a sample database called Sakila, which is made available by the nice people at MySQL. This database models a chain of DVD rental stores, which is a bit outdated, but with a bit of imagination it can be rebranded as a video-streaming company. Some of the tables include `customer`, `film`, `actor`, `payment`, `rental`, and `category`. The entire schema and example data should have been created when you followed the final steps at the beginning of the chapter for loading the MySQL server and generating the sample data. For a diagram of the tables and their columns and relationships, see [Appendix A](#).

**Table 2-9** shows some of the tables used in the Sakila schema, along with short definitions of each.

*Table 2-9. Sakila schema definitions*

Table name	Definition
film	A movie that has been released and can be rented
actor	A person who acts in films
customer	A person who watches films
category	A genre of films
payment	A rental of a film by a customer
language	A language spoken by the actors of a film
film_actor	An actor in a film
inventory	A film available for rental

Feel free to experiment with the tables as much as you want, including adding your own tables to expand the business functions. You can always drop the database and re-create it from the downloaded file if you want to make sure your sample data is intact. If you are using the temporary session, any changes you make will be lost when the session closes, so you may want to keep a script of your changes so you can re-create any changes you have made.

If you want to see the tables available in your database, you can use the `show tables` command, as in:

```
mysql> show tables;
+-----+
| Tables_in_sakila |
+-----+
| actor           |
| actor_info      |
| address         |
| category        |
| city            |
| country         |
| customer        |
| customer_list   |
| film            |
| film_actor      |
| film_category   |
| film_list       |
| film_text       |
| inventory       |
| language         |
| nicer_but_slower_film_list |
| payment          |
| rental           |
+-----+
```

```
| sales_by_film_category      |
| sales_by_store               |
| staff                         |
| staff_list                     |
| store                          |
+-----+
23 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

Along with the 23 tables in the Sakila schema, your table listing may also include the two tables created in this chapter: `person` and `favorite_food`. These tables will not be used in later chapters, so feel free to drop them by issuing the following set of commands:

```
mysql> DROP TABLE favorite_food;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.56 sec)
mysql> DROP TABLE person;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.05 sec)
```

If you want to look at the columns in a table, you can use the `describe` command. Here's an example of the `describe` output for the `customer` table:

```
mysql> desc customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field      | Type       | Null | Key | Default   | Extra          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | smallint(5) | NO   | PRI | NULL      | auto_increment |
|              | unsigned     |      |      |            |                |
| store_id    | tinyint(3)  | NO   | MUL | NULL      |                |
|              | unsigned     |      |      |            |                |
| first_name  | varchar(45) | NO   |      | NULL      |                |
| last_name   | varchar(45) | NO   | MUL | NULL      |                |
| email        | varchar(50)  | YES  |      | NULL      |                |
| address_id  | smallint(5) | NO   | MUL | NULL      |                |
|              | unsigned     |      |      |            |                |
| active       | tinyint(1)  | NO   |      | 1          |                |
| create_date  | datetime    | NO   |      | NULL      |                |
| last_update  | timestamp   | YES  |      | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP | DEFAULT_GENERATED ON
|                  |             |      |      | update CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |                |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

The more comfortable you are with the example database, the better you will understand the examples and, consequently, the concepts in the following chapters.



# CHAPTER 3

---

# Query Primer

So far, you have seen a few examples of database queries (a.k.a. `select` statements) sprinkled throughout the first two chapters. Now it's time to take a closer look at the different parts of the `select` statement and how they interact. After finishing this chapter, you should have a basic understanding of how data is retrieved, joined, filtered, grouped, and sorted; these topics will be covered in detail in Chapters 4 through 10.

## Query Mechanics

Before dissecting the `select` statement, it might be interesting to look at how queries are executed by the MySQL server (or, for that matter, any database server). If you are using the `mysql` command-line tool (which I assume you are), then you have already logged in to the MySQL server by providing your username and password (and possibly a hostname if the MySQL server is running on a different computer). Once the server has verified that your username and password are correct, a *database connection* is generated for you to use. This connection is held by the application that requested it (which, in this case, is the `mysql` tool) until the application releases the connection (i.e., as a result of typing `quit`) or the server closes the connection (i.e., when the server is shut down). Each connection to the MySQL server is assigned an identifier, which is shown to you when you first log in:

```
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.  
Your MySQL connection id is 11  
Server version: 8.0.15 MySQL Community Server - GPL
```

Copyright (c) 2000, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.  
Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its  
affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective

```
owners.  
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
```

In this case, my connection ID is 11. This information might be useful to your database administrator if something goes awry, such as a malformed query that runs for hours, so you might want to jot it down.

Once the server has verified your username and password and issued you a connection, you are ready to execute queries (along with other SQL statements). Each time a query is sent to the server, the server checks the following things prior to statement execution:

- Do you have permission to execute the statement?
- Do you have permission to access the desired data?
- Is your statement syntax correct?

If your statement passes these three tests, then your query is handed to the *query optimizer*, whose job it is to determine the most efficient way to execute your query. The optimizer looks at such things as the order in which to join the tables named in your `from` clause and what indexes are available, and then it picks an *execution plan*, which the server uses to execute your query.



Understanding and influencing how your database server chooses execution plans is a fascinating topic that many of you will want to explore. For those readers using MySQL, you might consider reading Baron Schwartz et al's *High Performance MySQL* (O'Reilly). Among other things, you will learn how to generate indexes, analyze execution plans, influence the optimizer via query hints, and tune your server's startup parameters. If you are using Oracle Database or SQL Server, dozens of tuning books are available.

Once the server has finished executing your query, the *result set* is returned to the calling application (which is, once again, the `mysql` tool). As I mentioned in [Chapter 1](#), a result set is just another table containing rows and columns. If your query fails to yield any results, the `mysql` tool will show you the message found at the end of the following example:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name  
-> FROM customer  
-> WHERE last_name = 'ZIEGLER';  
Empty set (0.02 sec)
```

If the query returns one or more rows, the `mysql` tool will format the results by adding column headers and constructing boxes around the columns using the `-`, `|`, and `+` symbols, as shown in the next example:

```

mysql> SELECT *
      -> FROM category;
+-----+-----+-----+
| category_id | name      | last_update          |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 | Action    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      2 | Animation | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      3 | Children   | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      4 | Classics  | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      5 | Comedy    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      6 | Documentary | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      7 | Drama     | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      8 | Family    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|      9 | Foreign   | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     10 | Games     | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     11 | Horror    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     12 | Music     | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     13 | New       | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     14 | Sci-Fi    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     15 | Sports    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
|     16 | Travel    | 2006-02-15 04:46:27 |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

This query returns all three columns for of all the rows in the `category` table. After the last row of data is displayed, the `mysql` tool displays a message telling you how many rows were returned, which, in this case, is 16.

## Query Clauses

Several components or *clauses* make up the `select` statement. While only one of them is mandatory when using MySQL (the `select` clause), you will usually include at least two or three of the six available clauses. [Table 3-1](#) shows the different clauses and their purposes.

*Table 3-1. Query clauses*

Clause name	Purpose
<code>select</code>	Determines which columns to include in the query's result set
<code>from</code>	Identifies the tables from which to retrieve data and how the tables should be joined
<code>where</code>	Filters out unwanted data
<code>group by</code>	Used to group rows together by common column values
<code>having</code>	Filters out unwanted groups
<code>order by</code>	Sorts the rows of the final result set by one or more columns

All of the clauses shown in [Table 3-1](#) are included in the ANSI specification. The following sections delve into the uses of the six major query clauses.

# The select Clause

Even though the `select` clause is the first clause of a `select` statement, it is one of the last clauses that the database server evaluates. The reason for this is that before you can determine what to include in the final result set, you need to know all of the possible columns that *could* be included in the final result set. In order to fully understand the role of the `select` clause, therefore, you will need to understand a bit about the `from` clause. Here's a query to get started:

```
mysql> SELECT *  
      -> FROM language;  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| language_id | name      | last_update          |  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| 1 | English   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 2 | Italian    | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 3 | Japanese   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 4 | Mandarin   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 5 | French     | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 6 | German     | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
+-----+-----+-----+  
6 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

In this query, the `from` clause lists a single table (`language`), and the `select` clause indicates that *all* columns (designated by `*`) in the `language` table should be included in the result set. This query could be described in English as follows:

*Show me all the columns and all the rows in the language table.*

In addition to specifying all the columns via the asterisk character, you can explicitly name the columns you are interested in, such as:

```
mysql> SELECT language_id, name, last_update  
      -> FROM language;  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| language_id | name      | last_update          |  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| 1 | English   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 2 | Italian    | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 3 | Japanese   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 4 | Mandarin   | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 5 | French     | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
| 6 | German     | 2006-02-15 05:02:19 |  
+-----+-----+-----+  
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The results are identical to the first query, since all the columns in the `language` table (`language_id`, `name`, and `last_update`) are named in the `select` clause. You can choose to include only a subset of the columns in the `language` table as well:

```

mysql> SELECT name
      -> FROM language;
+-----+
| name   |
+-----+
| English |
| Italian |
| Japanese |
| Mandarin |
| French   |
| German   |
+-----+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The job of the `select` clause, therefore, is as follows:

The `select` clause determines which of all possible columns should be included in the query's result set.

If you were limited to including only columns from the table or tables named in the `from` clause, things would be rather dull. However, you can spice things up in your `select` clause by including things such as:

- Literals, such as numbers or strings
- Expressions, such as `transaction.amount * -1`
- Built-in function calls, such as `ROUND(transaction.amount, 2)`
- User-defined function calls

The next query demonstrates the use of a table column, a literal, an expression, and a built-in function call in a single query against the `employee` table:

```

mysql> SELECT language_id,
      ->   'COMMON' language_usage,
      ->   language_id * 3.1415927 lang_pi_value,
      ->   upper(name) language_name
      -> FROM language;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| language_id | language_usage | lang_pi_value | language_name |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|       1 | COMMON        | 3.1415927    | ENGLISH      |
|       2 | COMMON        | 6.2831854    | ITALIAN      |
|       3 | COMMON        | 9.4247781    | JAPANESE     |
|       4 | COMMON        | 12.5663708   | MANDARIN    |
|       5 | COMMON        | 15.7079635   | FRENCH      |
|       6 | COMMON        | 18.8495562   | GERMAN      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.04 sec)

```

We cover expressions and built-in functions in detail later, but I wanted to give you a feel for what kinds of things can be included in the `select` clause. If you only need to

execute a built-in function or evaluate a simple expression, you can skip the `from` clause entirely. Here's an example:

```
mysql> SELECT version(),
->       user(),
->       database();
+-----+-----+-----+
| version() | user()      | database() |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 8.0.15   | root@localhost | sakila    |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Since this query simply calls three built-in functions and doesn't retrieve data from any tables, there is no need for a `from` clause.

## Column Aliases

Although the `mysql` tool will generate labels for the columns returned by your queries, you may want to assign your own labels. While you might want to assign a new label to a column from a table (if it is poorly or ambiguously named), you will almost certainly want to assign your own labels to those columns in your result set that are generated by expressions or built-in function calls. You can do so by adding a *column alias* after each element of your `select` clause. Here's the previous query against the `language` table, which included column aliases for three of the columns:

```
mysql> SELECT language_id,
->       'COMMON' language_usage,
->       language_id * 3.1415927 lang_pi_value,
->       upper(name) language_name
->     FROM language;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| language_id | language_usage | lang_pi_value | language_name |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          1 | COMMON        |      3.1415927 | ENGLISH      |
|          2 | COMMON        |      6.2831854 | ITALIAN      |
|          3 | COMMON        |      9.4247781 | JAPANESE    |
|          4 | COMMON        |     12.5663708 | MANDARIN    |
|          5 | COMMON        |     15.7079635 | FRENCH      |
|          6 | COMMON        |     18.8495562 | GERMAN      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.04 sec)
```

If you look at the `select` clause, you can see how the column aliases `language_usage`, `lang_pi_value`, and `language_name` are added after the second, third, and fourth columns. I think you will agree that the output is easier to understand with column aliases in place, and it would be easier to work with programmatically if you were issuing the query from within Java or Python rather than interactively via the `mysql`

tool. In order to make your column aliases stand out even more, you also have the option of using the `as` keyword before the alias name, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT language_id,
   ->      'COMMON' AS language_usage,
   ->      language_id * 3.1415927 AS lang_pi_value,
   ->      upper(name) AS language_name
   -> FROM language;
```

Many people feel that including the optional `as` keyword improves readability, although I have chosen not to use it for the examples in this book.

# Removing Duplicates

In some cases, a query might return duplicate rows of data. For example, if you were to retrieve the IDs of all actors who appeared in a film, you would see the following:

Since some actors appeared in more than one film, you will see the same actor ID multiple times. What you probably want in this case is the *distinct* set of actors, instead of seeing the actor IDs repeated for each film in which they appeared. You can achieve this by adding the keyword `distinct` directly after the `select` keyword, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT DISTINCT actor_id FROM film_actor ORDER BY actor_id;
+-----+
| actor_id |
+-----+
|      1 |
|      2 |
|      3 |
|      4 |
|      5 |
|      6 |
|      7 |
|      8 |
|      9 |
|     10 |
...
|   192 |
|   193 |
|   194 |
|   195 |
|   196 |
|   197 |
|   198 |
|   199 |
|   200 |
+-----+
200 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

The result set now contains 200 rows, one for each distinct actor, rather than 5,462 rows, one for each film appearance by an actor.



If you simply want a list of all actors, you can query the `actor` table rather than reading through all the rows in `film_actor` and removing duplicates.

If you do not want the server to remove duplicate data or you are sure there will be no duplicates in your result set, you can specify the `all` keyword instead of specifying `distinct`. However, the `all` keyword is the default and never needs to be explicitly named, so most programmers do not include `all` in their queries.



Keep in mind that generating a distinct set of results requires the data to be sorted, which can be time consuming for large result sets. Don't fall into the trap of using `distinct` just to be sure there are no duplicates; instead, take the time to understand the data you are working with so that you will know whether duplicates are possible.

# The from Clause

Thus far, you have seen queries whose `from` clauses contain a single table. Although most SQL books define the `from` clause as simply a list of one or more tables, I would like to broaden the definition as follows:

*The `from` clause defines the tables used by a query, along with the means of linking the tables together.*

This definition is composed of two separate but related concepts, which we explore in the following sections.

## Tables

When confronted with the term *table*, most people think of a set of related rows stored in a database. While this does describe one type of table, I would like to use the word in a more general way by removing any notion of how the data might be stored and concentrating on just the set of related rows. Four different types of tables meet this relaxed definition:

- Permanent tables (i.e., created using the `create table` statement)
- Derived tables (i.e., rows returned by a subquery and held in memory)
- Temporary tables (i.e., volatile data held in memory)
- Virtual tables (i.e., created using the `create view` statement)

Each of these table types may be included in a query's `from` clause. By now, you should be comfortable with including a permanent table in a `from` clause, so I will briefly describe the other types of tables that can be referenced in a `from` clause.

### Derived (subquery-generated) tables

A subquery is a query contained within another query. Subqueries are surrounded by parentheses and can be found in various parts of a `select` statement; within the `from` clause, however, a subquery serves the role of generating a derived table that is visible from all other query clauses and can interact with other tables named in the `from` clause. Here's a simple example:

```
mysql> SELECT concat(cust.last_name, ' ', cust.first_name) full_name
-> FROM
-> (SELECT first_name, last_name, email
->   FROM customer
->   WHERE first_name = 'JESSIE'
-> ) cust;
+-----+
| full_name      |
+-----+
```

```
| BANKS, JESSIE |
| MILAM, JESSIE |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

In this example, a subquery against the `customer` table returns three columns, and the *containing query* references two of the three available columns. The subquery is referenced by the containing query via its alias, which, in this case, is `cust`. The data in `cust` is held in memory for the duration of the query and is then discarded. This is a simplistic and not particularly useful example of a subquery in a `from` clause; you will find detailed coverage of subqueries in [Chapter 9](#).

## Temporary tables

Although the implementations differ, every relational database allows the ability to define volatile, or temporary, tables. These tables look just like permanent tables, but any data inserted into a temporary table will disappear at some point (generally at the end of a transaction or when your database session is closed). Here's a simple example showing how actors whose last names start with J can be stored temporarily:

```
mysql> CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE actors_j
-> (actor_id smallint(5),
->   first_name varchar(45),
->   last_name varchar(45)
-> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO actors_j
-> SELECT actor_id, first_name, last_name
-> FROM actor
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'J%';
Query OK, 7 rows affected (0.03 sec)
Records: 7  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> SELECT * FROM actors_j;
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      119 | WARREN    | JACKMAN   |
|     131 | JANE      | JACKMAN   |
|       8 | MATTHEW   | JOHANSSON  |
|      64 | RAY        | JOHANSSON |
|     146 | ALBERT    | JOHANSSON |
|      82 | WOODY     | JOLIE      |
|      43 | KIRK      | JOVOVICH  |
+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

These seven rows are held in memory temporarily and will disappear after your session is closed.



Most database servers also drop the temporary table when the session ends. The exception is Oracle Database, which keeps the definition of the temporary table available for future sessions.

## Views

A view is a query that is stored in the data dictionary. It looks and acts like a table, but there is no data associated with a view (this is why I call it a *virtual* table). When you issue a query against a view, your query is merged with the view definition to create a final query to be executed.

To demonstrate, here's a view definition that queries the `employee` table and includes four of the available columns:

```
mysql> CREATE VIEW cust_vw AS
    -> SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name, active
    -> FROM customer;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.12 sec)
```

When the view is created, no additional data is generated or stored: the server simply tucks away the `SELECT` statement for future use. Now that the view exists, you can issue queries against it, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
    -> FROM cust_vw
    -> WHERE active = 0;
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| SANDRA     | MARTIN   |
| JUDITH     | COX       |
| SHEILA     | WELLS    |
| ERICA      | MATTHEWS |
| HEIDI      | LARSON   |
| PENNY      | NEAL      |
| KENNETH    | GOODEN   |
| HARRY      | ARCE      |
| NATHAN     | RUNYON   |
| THEODORE   | CULP      |
| MAURICE    | CRAWLEY  |
| BEN        | EASTER   |
| CHRISTIAN  | JUNG      |
| JIMMIE     | EGGLESTON|
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH    |
+-----+-----+
15 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

Views are created for various reasons, including to hide columns from users and to simplify complex database designs.

## Table Links

The second deviation from the simple `from` clause definition is the mandate that if more than one table appears in the `from` clause, the conditions used to *link* the tables must be included as well. This is not a requirement of MySQL or any other database server, but it is the ANSI-approved method of joining multiple tables, and it is the most portable across the various database servers. We explore joining multiple tables in depth in Chapters 5 and 10, but here's a simple example in case I have piqued your curiosity:

```
mysql> SELECT customer.first_name, customer.last_name,
->     time(rental.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer
->     INNER JOIN rental
->       ON customer.customer_id = rental.customer_id
->      WHERE date(rental.rental_date) = '2005-06-14';
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JEFFERY    | PINSON    | 22:53:33   |
| ELMER      | NOE        | 22:55:13   |
| MINNIE     | ROMERO    | 23:00:34   |
| MIRIAM     | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08   |
| DANIEL     | CABRAL    | 23:09:38   |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH     | 23:12:46   |
| JOYCE      | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26   |
| GWENDOLYN  | MAY        | 23:16:27   |
| CATHERINE  | CAMPBELL  | 23:17:03   |
| MATTHEW    | MAHAN     | 23:25:58   |
| HERMAN     | DEVORE    | 23:35:09   |
| AMBER      | DIXON     | 23:42:56   |
| TERRENCE   | GUNDERSON | 23:47:35   |
| SONIA      | GREGORY   | 23:50:11   |
| CHARLES    | KOWALSKI  | 23:54:34   |
| JEANETTE   | GREENE    | 23:54:46   |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

The previous query displays data from both the `customer` table (`first_name`, `last_name`) and the `rental` table (`rental_date`), so both tables are included in the `from` clause. The mechanism for linking the two tables (referred to as a *join*) is the `customer_id` stored in both the `customer` and `rental` tables. Thus, the database server is instructed to use the value of the `customer_id` column in the `customer` table to find all of the customer's rentals in the `rental` table. Join conditions for the two tables are found in the `on` subclause of the `from` clause; in this case, the join condition

is ON `customer.customer_id = rental.customer_id`. The `where` clause is not part of the join and is only included to keep the result set fairly small, since there are more than 16,000 rows in the `rental` table. Again, please refer to [Chapter 5](#) for a thorough discussion of joining multiple tables.

## Defining Table Aliases

When multiple tables are joined in a single query, you need a way to identify which table you are referring to when you reference columns in the `select`, `where`, `group by`, `having`, and `order by` clauses. You have two choices when referencing a table outside the `from` clause:

- Use the entire table name, such as `employee.emp_id`.
- Assign each table an *alias* and use the alias throughout the query.

In the previous query, I chose to use the entire table name in the `select` and `on` clauses. Here's what the same query looks like using table aliases:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
       time(r.rental_date) rental_time
  FROM customer c
 INNER JOIN rental r
    ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
   WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14';
```

If you look closely at the `from` clause, you will see that the `customer` table is assigned the alias `c`, and the `rental` table is assigned the alias `r`. These aliases are then used in the `on` clause when defining the join condition as well as in the `select` clause when specifying the columns to include in the result set. I hope you will agree that using aliases makes for a more compact statement without causing confusion (as long as your choices for alias names are reasonable). Additionally, you may use the `as` keyword with your table aliases, similar to what was demonstrated earlier for column aliases:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
       time(r.rental_date) rental_time
  FROM customer AS c
 INNER JOIN rental AS r
    ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
   WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14';
```

I have found that roughly half of the database developers I have worked with use the `as` keyword with their column and table aliases, and half do not.

## The where Clause

In some cases, you may want to retrieve all rows from a table, especially for small tables such as `language`. Most of the time, however, you will not want to retrieve *every* row from a table but will want a way to filter out those rows that are not of interest. This is a job for the `where` clause.

*The where clause is the mechanism for filtering out unwanted rows from your result set.*

For example, perhaps you are interested in renting a film but you are only interested in movies rated G that can be kept for at least a week. The following query employs a `where` clause to retrieve *only* the films meeting these criteria:

```
mysql> SELECT title
    -> FROM film
    -> WHERE rating = 'G' AND rental_duration >= 7;
+-----+
| title      |
+-----+
| BLANKET BEVERLY   |
| BORROWERS BEDAZZLED |
| BRIDE INTRIGUE    |
| CATCH AMISTAD     |
| CITIZEN SHREK      |
| COLDBLOODED DARLING |
| CONTROL ANTHEM    |
| CRUELTY UNFORGIVEN |
| DARN FORRESTER    |
| DESPERATE TRAINSPOTTING |
| DIARY PANIC       |
| DRACULA CRYSTAL    |
| EMPIRE MALKOVICH   |
| FIREHOUSE VIETNAM  |
| GILBERT PELICAN    |
| GRADUATE LORD      |
| GREASE YOUTH       |
| GUN BONNIE        |
| HOOK CHARIOTS     |
| MARRIED GO        |
| MENAGERIE RUSHMORE |
| MUSCLE BRIGHT      |
| OPERATION OPERATION |
| PRIMARY GLASS      |
| REBEL AIRPORT      |
| SPIKING ELEMENT    |
| TRUMAN CRAZY      |
| WAKE JAWS          |
| WAR NOTTING        |
+-----+
29 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

In this case, the `where` clause filtered out 971 of the 1000 rows in the `film` table. This `where` clause contains two *filter conditions*, but you can include as many conditions as are required; individual conditions are separated using operators such as `and`, `or`, and `not` (see [Chapter 4](#) for a complete discussion of the `where` clause and filter conditions).

Let's see what would happen if you change the operator separating the two conditions from `and` to `or`:

```
mysql> SELECT title
-> FROM film
-> WHERE rating = 'G' OR rental_duration >= 7;
+-----+
| title           |
+-----+
| ACE GOLDFINGER          |
| ADAPTATION HOLES        |
| AFFAIR PREJUDICE        |
| AFRICAN EGG            |
| ALAMO VIDEOTAPE         |
| AMISTAD MIDSUMMER      |
| ANGELS LIFE             |
| ANNIE IDENTITY          |
| ...                   |
| WATERSHIP FRONTIER      |
| WEREWOLF LOLA           |
| WEST LION               |
| WESTWARD SEABISCUIT    |
| WOLVES DESIRE           |
| WON DARES               |
| WORKER TARZAN           |
| YOUNG LANGUAGE           |
+-----+
340 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

When you separate conditions using the `and` operator, *all* conditions must evaluate to `true` to be included in the result set; when you use `or`, however, only *one* of the conditions needs to evaluate to `true` for a row to be included, which explains why the size of the result set has jumped from 29 to 340 rows.

So, what should you do if you need to use both `and` and `or` operators in your `where` clause? Glad you asked. You should use parentheses to group conditions together. The next query specifies that only those films that are rated G and are available for 7 or more days, or are rated PG-13 and are available 3 or fewer days, be included in the result set:

```
mysql> SELECT title, rating, rental_duration
-> FROM film
-> WHERE (rating = 'G' AND rental_duration >= 7)
->   OR (rating = 'PG-13' AND rental_duration < 4);
```

```

+-----+-----+-----+
| title          | rating | rental_duration |
+-----+-----+-----+
| ALABAMA DEVIL    | PG-13   |            3 |
| BACKLASH UNDEFEATED | PG-13   |            3 |
| BILKO ANONYMOUS    | PG-13   |            3 |
| BLANKET BEVERLY    | G       |            7 |
| BORROWERS BEDAZZLED | G       |            7 |
| BRIDE INTRIGUE     | G       |            7 |
| CASPER DRAGONFLY    | PG-13   |            3 |
| CATCH AMISTAD      | G       |            7 |
| CITIZEN SHREK       | G       |            7 |
| COLDBLOODED DARLING | G       |            7 |
| ...
| TREASURE COMMAND     | PG-13   |            3 |
| TRUMAN CRAZY        | G       |            7 |
| WAIT CIDER          | PG-13   |            3 |
| WAKE JAWS           | G       |            7 |
| WAR NOTTING         | G       |            7 |
| WORLD LEATHERNECKS  | PG-13   |            3 |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

68 rows in set (0.00 sec)

You should always use parentheses to separate groups of conditions when mixing different operators so that you, the database server, and anyone who comes along later to modify your code will be on the same page.

## The group by and having Clauses

All the queries thus far have retrieved raw data without any manipulation. Sometimes, however, you will want to find trends in your data that will require the database server to cook the data a bit before you retrieve your result set. One such mechanism is the `group by` clause, which is used to group data by column values. For example, let's say you wanted to find all of the customers who have rented 40 or more films. Rather than looking through all 16,044 rows in the `rental` table, you can write a query that instructs the server to group all rentals by customer, count the number of rentals for each customer, and then return only those customers whose rental count is at least 40. When using the `group by` clause to generate groups of rows, you may also use the `having` clause, which allows you to filter grouped data in the same way the `where` clause lets you filter raw data.

Here's what the query looks like:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, count(*)
-> FROM customer c
-> INNER JOIN rental r
-> ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> GROUP BY c.first_name, c.last_name
-> HAVING count(*) >= 40;

```

```

+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | count(*) |
+-----+-----+-----+
| TAMMY     | SANDERS    |      41 |
| CLARA     | SHAW        |      42 |
| ELEANOR   | HUNT        |      46 |
| SUE        | PETERS      |      40 |
| MARCIA    | DEAN        |      42 |
| WESLEY    | BULL         |      40 |
| KARL      | SEAL         |      45 |
+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

I wanted to briefly mention these two clauses so that they don't catch you by surprise later in the book, but they are a bit more advanced than the other four `select` clauses. Therefore, I ask that you wait until [Chapter 8](#) for a full description of how and when to use `group by` and `having`.

## The order by Clause

In general, the rows in a result set returned from a query are not in any particular order. If you want your result set to be sorted, you will need to instruct the server to sort the results using the `order by` clause:

The `order by` clause is the mechanism for sorting your result set using either raw column data or expressions based on column data.

For example, here's another look at an earlier query that returns all customers who rented a film on June 14, 2005:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->    time(r.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental r
->   ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14';
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JEFFERY    | PINSON    | 22:53:33    |
| ELMER      | NOE        | 22:55:13    |
| MINNIE    | ROMERO    | 23:00:34    |
| MIRIAM    | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08    |
| DANIEL    | CABRAL    | 23:09:38    |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH     | 23:12:46    |
| JOYCE      | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26    |
| GWENDOLYN | MAY        | 23:16:27    |
| CATHERINE  | CAMPBELL  | 23:17:03    |
| MATTHEW    | MAHAN     | 23:25:58    |
| HERMAN    | DEVORE    | 23:35:09    |
| AMBER      | DIXON     | 23:42:56    |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

| TERRENCE    | GUNDERSON | 23:47:35      |
| SONIA       | GREGORY    | 23:50:11      |
| CHARLES     | KOWALSKI   | 23:54:34      |
| JEANETTE    | GREENE     | 23:54:46      |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

If you would like the results to be in alphabetical order by last name, you can add the `last_name` column to the `order by` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->    time(r.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental r
->   ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
-> ORDER BY c.last_name;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| DANIEL     | CABRAL    | 23:09:38      |
| CATHERINE  | CAMPBELL  | 23:17:03      |
| HERMAN     | DEVORE    | 23:35:09      |
| AMBER      | DIXON     | 23:42:56      |
| JOYCE      | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26      |
| JEANETTE   | GREENE    | 23:54:46      |
| SONIA      | GREGORY   | 23:50:11      |
| TERENCE    | GUNDERSON | 23:47:35      |
| CHARLES    | KOWALSKI  | 23:54:34      |
| MATTHEW    | MAHAN     | 23:25:58      |
| GWENDOLYN  | MAY       | 23:16:27      |
| MIRIAM     | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08      |
| ELMER       | NOE        | 22:55:13      |
| JEFFERY    | PINSON    | 22:53:33      |
| MINNIE     | ROMERO   | 23:00:34      |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH     | 23:12:46      |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

While it is not the case in this example, large customer lists will often contain multiple people having the same last name, so you may want to extend the sort criteria to include the person's first name as well.

You can accomplish this by adding the `first_name` column after the `last_name` column in the `order by` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->    time(r.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental r
->   ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
-> ORDER BY c.last_name, c.first_name;

```

```

+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| DANIEL     | CABRAL    | 23:09:38   |
| CATHERINE  | CAMPBELL  | 23:17:03   |
| HERMAN     | DEVORE    | 23:35:09   |
| AMBER      | DIXON     | 23:42:56   |
| JOYCE      | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26   |
| JEANETTE   | GREENE    | 23:54:46   |
| SONIA      | GREGORY   | 23:50:11   |
| TERRENCE   | GUNDERSON| 23:47:35   |
| CHARLES    | KOWALSKI  | 23:54:34   |
| MATTHEW    | MAHAN     | 23:25:58   |
| GWENDOLYN  | MAY       | 23:16:27   |
| MIRIAM     | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08   |
| ELMER      | NOE       | 22:55:13   |
| JEFFERY    | PINSON    | 22:53:33   |
| MINNIE     | ROMERO   | 23:00:34   |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH     | 23:12:46   |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

16 rows in set (0.01 sec)

The order in which columns appear in your `order by` clause does make a difference when you include more than one column. If you were to switch the order of the two columns in the `order by` clause, Amber Dixon would appear first in the result set.

## Ascending Versus Descending Sort Order

When sorting, you have the option of specifying *ascending* or *descending* order via the `asc` and `desc` keywords. The default is ascending, so you will need to add the `desc` keyword if you want to use a descending sort. For example, the following query shows all customers who rented films on June 14, 2005, in descending order of rental time:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->    time(r.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental r
->   ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
->   WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
->   ORDER BY time(r.rental_date) desc;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JEANETTE  | GREENE    | 23:54:46   |
| CHARLES   | KOWALSKI  | 23:54:34   |
| SONIA     | GREGORY   | 23:50:11   |
| TERRENCE   | GUNDERSON| 23:47:35   |
| AMBER     | DIXON     | 23:42:56   |
| HERMAN    | DEVORE    | 23:35:09   |
| MATTHEW   | MAHAN     | 23:25:58   |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

| CATHERINE | CAMPBELL | 23:17:03 |
| GWENDOLYN | MAY       | 23:16:27 |
| JOYCE     | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26 |
| TERRANCE  | ROUSH     | 23:12:46 |
| DANIEL    | CABRAL    | 23:09:38 |
| MIRIAM    | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08 |
| MINNIE    | ROMERO    | 23:00:34 |
| ELMER     | NOE       | 22:55:13 |
| JEFFERY   | PINSON    | 22:53:33 |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

Descending sorts are commonly used for ranking queries, such as “show me the top five account balances.” MySQL includes a `limit` clause that allows you to sort your data and then discard all but the first X rows.

## Sorting via Numeric Placeholders

If you are sorting using the columns in your `select` clause, you can opt to reference the columns by their *position* in the `select` clause rather than by name. This can be especially helpful if you are sorting on an expression, such as in the previous example. Here’s the previous example one last time, with an `order by` clause specifying a descending sort using the third element in the `select` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->      time(r.rental_date) rental_time
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental r
->   ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
-> ORDER BY 3 desc;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | rental_time |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JEANETTE  | GREENE    | 23:54:46 |
| CHARLES   | KOWALSKI  | 23:54:34 |
| SONIA     | GREGORY   | 23:50:11 |
| TERENCE   | GUNDERSON | 23:47:35 |
| AMBER     | DIXON     | 23:42:56 |
| HERMAN    | DEVORE    | 23:35:09 |
| MATTHEW   | MAHAN     | 23:25:58 |
| CATHERINE | CAMPBELL  | 23:17:03 |
| GWENDOLYN | MAY       | 23:16:27 |
| JOYCE     | EDWARDS   | 23:16:26 |
| TERRANCE  | ROUSH     | 23:12:46 |
| DANIEL    | CABRAL    | 23:09:38 |
| MIRIAM    | MCKINNEY  | 23:07:08 |
| MINNIE    | ROMERO    | 23:00:34 |
| ELMER     | NOE       | 22:55:13 |
| JEFFERY   | PINSON    | 22:53:33 |

```

```
+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

You might want to use this feature sparingly, since adding a column to the `select` clause without changing the numbers in the `order by` clause can lead to unexpected results. Personally, I may reference columns positionally when writing ad hoc queries, but I always reference columns by name when writing code.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises are designed to strengthen your understanding of the `select` statement and its various clauses. Please see [Appendix B](#) for solutions.

### Exercise 3-1

Retrieve the actor ID, first name, and last name for all actors. Sort by last name and then by first name.

### Exercise 3-2

Retrieve the actor ID, first name, and last name for all actors whose last name equals '`'WILLIAMS'`' or '`'DAVIS'`'.

### Exercise 3-3

Write a query against the `rental` table that returns the IDs of the customers who rented a film on July 5, 2005 (use the `rental.rental_date` column, and you can use the `date()` function to ignore the time component). Include a single row for each distinct customer ID.

### Exercise 3-4

Fill in the blanks (denoted by `<#>`) for this multitable query to achieve the following results:

```
mysql> SELECT c.email, r.return_date
-> FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN rental <1>
->     ON c.customer_id = <2>
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
-> ORDER BY <3> <4>;
+-----+-----+
| email                         | return_date      |
+-----+-----+
| DANIEL.CABRAL@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-23 22:00:38 |
| TERRANCE.ROUSH@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-23 21:53:46 |
| MIRIAM.MCKINNEY@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-21 17:12:08 |
```

GWENDOLYN.MAY@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-20 02:40:27
JEANETTE.GREENE@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-19 23:26:46
HERMAN.DEVORE@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-19 03:20:09
JEFFERY.PINSON@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-18 21:37:33
MATTHEW.MAHAN@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-18 05:18:58
MINNIE.ROMERO@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-18 01:58:34
SONIA.GREGORY@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-17 21:44:11
TERENCE.GUNDERSON@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-17 05:28:35
ELMER.NOE@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-17 02:11:13
JOYCE.EDWARDS@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-16 21:00:26
AMBER.DIXON@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-16 04:02:56
CHARLES.KOWALSKI@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-16 02:26:34
CATHERINE.CAMPBELL@sakilacustomer.org	2005-06-15 20:43:03

+-----+-----+

16 rows in set (0.03 sec)

Sometimes you will want to work with every row in a table, such as:

- Purging all data from a table used to stage new data warehouse feeds
- Modifying all rows in a table after a new column has been added
- Retrieving all rows from a message queue table

In cases like these, your SQL statements won't need to have a `where` clause, since you don't need to exclude any rows from consideration. Most of the time, however, you will want to narrow your focus to a subset of a table's rows. Therefore, all the SQL data statements (except the `insert` statement) include an optional `where` clause containing one or more *filter conditions* used to restrict the number of rows acted on by the SQL statement. Additionally, the `select` statement includes a `having` clause in which filter conditions pertaining to grouped data may be included. This chapter explores the various types of filter conditions that you can employ in the `where` clauses of `select`, `update`, and `delete` statements; I demonstrate the use of filter conditions in the `having` clause of a `select` statement in [Chapter 8](#).

## Condition Evaluation

A `where` clause may contain one or more *conditions*, separated by the operators `and` and `or`. If multiple conditions are separated only by the `and` operator, then all the conditions must evaluate to `true` for the row to be included in the result set. Consider the following `where` clause:

```
WHERE first_name = 'STEVEN' AND create_date > '2006-01-01'
```

Given these two conditions, only rows where the first name is Steven and the creation date was after January 1, 2006, will be included in the result set. Though this example

uses only two conditions, no matter how many conditions are in your `where` clause, if they are separated by the `and` operator, they must *all* evaluate to `true` for the row to be included in the result set.

If all conditions in the `where` clause are separated by the `or` operator, however, only *one* of the conditions must evaluate to `true` for the row to be included in the result set. Consider the following two conditions:

```
WHERE first_name = 'STEVEN' OR create_date > '2006-01-01'
```

There are now various ways for a given row to be included in the result set:

- The first name is Steven, and the creation date was after January 1, 2006.
- The first name is Steven, and the creation date was on or before January 1, 2006.
- The first name is anything other than Steven, but the creation date was after January 1, 2006.

**Table 4-1** shows the possible outcomes for a `where` clause containing two conditions separated by the `or` operator.

*Table 4-1. Two-condition evaluation using or*

Intermediate result	Final result
WHERE true OR true	true
WHERE true OR false	true
WHERE false OR true	true
WHERE false OR false	false

In the case of the preceding example, the only way for a row to be excluded from the result set is if the person's first name was not Steven and the creation date was on or before January 1, 2006.

## Using Parentheses

If your `where` clause includes three or more conditions using both the `and` and `or` operators, you should use parentheses to make your intent clear, both to the database server and to anyone else reading your code. Here's a `where` clause that extends the previous example by checking to make sure that the first name is Steven or the last name is Young, and the creation date is after January 1, 2006:

```
WHERE (first_name = 'STEVEN' OR last_name = 'YOUNG')
      AND create_date > '2006-01-01'
```

There are now three conditions; for a row to make it to the final result set, either the first *or* second condition (or both) must evaluate to `true`, and the third condition must evaluate to `true`. **Table 4-2** shows the possible outcomes for this `where` clause.

*Table 4-2. Three-condition evaluation using and, or*

Intermediate result	Final result
WHERE (true OR true) AND true	true
WHERE (true OR false) AND true	true
WHERE (false OR true) AND true	true
WHERE (false OR false) AND true	false
WHERE (true OR true) AND false	false
WHERE (true OR false) AND false	false
WHERE (false OR true) AND false	false
WHERE (false OR false) AND false	false

As you can see, the more conditions you have in your `where` clause, the more combinations there are for the server to evaluate. In this case, only three of the eight combinations yield a final result of `true`.

## Using the `not` Operator

Hopefully, the previous three-condition example is fairly easy to understand. Consider the following modification, however:

```
WHERE NOT (first_name = 'STEVEN' OR last_name = 'YOUNG')  
      AND create_date > '2006-01-01'
```

Did you spot the change from the previous example? I added the `not` operator before the first set of conditions. Now, instead of looking for people with the first name of Steven or the last name of Young whose record was created after January 1, 2006, I am retrieving only rows where the first name is not Steven or the last name is not Young whose record was created after January 1, 2006. **Table 4-3** shows the possible outcomes for this example.

*Table 4-3. Three-condition evaluation using and, or, and not*

Intermediate result	Final result
WHERE NOT (true OR true) AND true	false
WHERE NOT (true OR false) AND true	false
WHERE NOT (false OR true) AND true	false
WHERE NOT (false OR false) AND true	true
WHERE NOT (true OR true) AND false	false

Intermediate result	Final result
WHERE NOT (true OR false) AND false	false
WHERE NOT (false OR true) AND false	false
WHERE NOT (false OR false) AND false	false

While it is easy for the database server to handle, it is typically difficult for a person to evaluate a `where` clause that includes the `not` operator, which is why you won't encounter it very often. In this case, you can rewrite the `where` clause to avoid using the `not` operator:

```
WHERE first_name <> 'STEVEN' AND last_name <> 'YOUNG'  
      AND create_date > '2006-01-01'
```

While I'm sure that the server doesn't have a preference, you probably have an easier time understanding this version of the `where` clause.

## Building a Condition

Now that you have seen how the server evaluates multiple conditions, let's take a step back and look at what comprises a single condition. A condition is made up of one or more *expressions* combined with one or more *operators*. An expression can be any of the following:

- A number
- A column in a table or view
- A string literal, such as 'Maple Street'
- A built-in function, such as `concat('Learning', ' ', 'SQL')`
- A subquery
- A list of expressions, such as ('Boston', 'New York', 'Chicago')

The operators used within conditions include:

- Comparison operators, such as `=`, `!=`, `<`, `>`, `<>`, `like`, `in`, and `between`
- Arithmetic operators, such as `+`, `-`, `*`, and `/`

The following section demonstrates how you can combine these expressions and operators to manufacture the various types of conditions.

# Condition Types

There are many different ways to filter out unwanted data. You can look for specific values, sets of values, or ranges of values to include or exclude, or you can use various pattern-searching techniques to look for partial matches when dealing with string data. The next four subsections explore each of these condition types in detail.

## Equality Conditions

A large percentage of the filter conditions that you write or come across will be of the form '`column = expression`' as in:

```
title = 'RIVER OUTLAW'  
fed_id = '111-11-1111'  
amount = 375.25  
film_id = (SELECT film_id FROM film WHERE title = 'RIVER OUTLAW')
```

Conditions such as these are called *equality conditions* because they equate one expression to another. The first three examples equate a column to a literal (two strings and a number), and the fourth example equates a column to the value returned from a subquery. The following query uses two equality conditions, one in the `on` clause (a join condition) and the other in the `where` clause (a filter condition):

```
mysql> SELECT c.email  
      -> FROM customer c  
      -> INNER JOIN rental r  
      -> ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id  
      -> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14';  
+-----+  
| email           |  
+-----+  
| CATHERINE.CAMPBELL@sakilacustomer.org |  
| JOYCE.EDWARDS@sakilacustomer.org    |  
| AMBER.DIXON@sakilacustomer.org       |  
| JEANETTE.GREENE@sakilacustomer.org  |  
| MINNIE.ROMERO@sakilacustomer.org    |  
| GWENDOLYN.MAY@sakilacustomer.org   |  
| SONIA.GREGORY@sakilacustomer.org   |  
| MIRIAM.MCKINNEY@sakilacustomer.org |  
| CHARLES.KOWALSKI@sakilacustomer.org|  
| DANIEL.CABRAL@sakilacustomer.org   |  
| MATTHEW.MAHAN@sakilacustomer.org   |  
| JEFFERY.PINSON@sakilacustomer.org  |  
| HERMAN.DEVORE@sakilacustomer.org   |  
| ELMER.NOE@sakilacustomer.org       |  
| TERRANCE.ROUSH@sakilacustomer.org  |  
| TERRENCE.GUNDERSON@sakilacustomer.org |  
+-----+  
16 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

This query shows all email addresses of every customer who rented a film on June 14, 2005.

## Inequality conditions

Another fairly common type of condition is the *inequality condition*, which asserts that two expressions are *not* equal. Here's the previous query with the filter condition in the where clause changed to an inequality condition:

```
mysql> SELECT c.email
->   FROM customer c
->     INNER JOIN rental r
->       ON c.customer_id = r.customer_id
-> WHERE date(r.rental_date) <> '2005-06-14';

+-----+
| email
+-----+
| MARY.SMITH@sakilacustomer.org |
...
| AUSTIN.CINTRON@sakilacustomer.org |
+-----+
16028 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

This query returns all email addresses for films rented on any other date than June 14, 2005. When building inequality conditions, you may choose to use either the != or <> operator.

## Data modification using equality conditions

Equality/inequality conditions are commonly used when modifying data. For example, let's say that the movie rental company has a policy of removing old account rows

once per year. Your task is to remove rows from the `rental` table where the rental date was in 2004. Here's one way to tackle it:

```
DELETE FROM rental
WHERE year(rental_date) = 2004;
```

This statement includes a single equality condition; here's an example that uses two inequality conditions to remove any rows where the rental date was not in 2005 or 2006:

```
DELETE FROM rental
WHERE year(rental_date) <> 2005 AND year(rental_date) <> 2006;
```



When crafting examples of delete and update statements, I try to write each statement such that no rows are modified. That way, when you execute the statements, your data will remain unchanged, and your output from select statements will always match that shown in this book.

Since MySQL sessions are in auto-commit mode by default (see [Chapter 12](#)), you would not be able to roll back (undo) any changes made to the example data if one of my statements modified the data. You may, of course, do whatever you want with the example data, including wiping it clean and rerunning the scripts to populate the tables, but I try to leave it intact.

## Range Conditions

Along with checking that an expression is equal to (or not equal to) another expression, you can build conditions that check whether an expression falls within a certain range. This type of condition is common when working with numeric or temporal data. Consider the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, rental_date
->   FROM rental
-> WHERE rental_date < '2005-05-25';
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | rental_date      |
+-----+-----+
|      130 | 2005-05-24 22:53:30 |
|      459 | 2005-05-24 22:54:33 |
|      408 | 2005-05-24 23:03:39 |
|      333 | 2005-05-24 23:04:41 |
|      222 | 2005-05-24 23:05:21 |
|      549 | 2005-05-24 23:08:07 |
|      269 | 2005-05-24 23:11:53 |
|      239 | 2005-05-24 23:31:46 |
+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query finds all film rentals prior to May 25, 2005. As well as specifying an upper limit for the rental date, you may also want to specify a lower range:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, rental_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE rental_date <= '2005-06-16'
-> AND rental_date >= '2005-06-14';
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | rental_date      |
+-----+-----+
|        416 | 2005-06-14 22:53:33 |
|        516 | 2005-06-14 22:55:13 |
|        239 | 2005-06-14 23:00:34 |
|        285 | 2005-06-14 23:07:08 |
|        310 | 2005-06-14 23:09:38 |
|        592 | 2005-06-14 23:12:46 |
...
|       148 | 2005-06-15 23:20:26 |
|       237 | 2005-06-15 23:36:37 |
|       155 | 2005-06-15 23:55:27 |
|       341 | 2005-06-15 23:57:20 |
|       149 | 2005-06-15 23:58:53 |
+-----+-----+
364 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This version of the query retrieves all films rented on June 14 or 15 of 2005.

### The between operator

When you have *both* an upper and lower limit for your range, you may choose to use a single condition that utilizes the `between` operator rather than using two separate conditions, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, rental_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE rental_date BETWEEN '2005-06-14' AND '2005-06-16';
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | rental_date      |
+-----+-----+
|        416 | 2005-06-14 22:53:33 |
|        516 | 2005-06-14 22:55:13 |
|        239 | 2005-06-14 23:00:34 |
|        285 | 2005-06-14 23:07:08 |
|        310 | 2005-06-14 23:09:38 |
|        592 | 2005-06-14 23:12:46 |
...
|       148 | 2005-06-15 23:20:26 |
|       237 | 2005-06-15 23:36:37 |
|       155 | 2005-06-15 23:55:27 |
|       341 | 2005-06-15 23:57:20 |
|       149 | 2005-06-15 23:58:53 |
+-----+-----+
```

```
+-----+-----+
364 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

When using the `between` operator, there are a couple of things to keep in mind. You should always specify the lower limit of the range first (after `between`) and the upper limit of the range second (after `and`). Here's what happens if you mistakenly specify the upper limit first:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, rental_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE rental_date BETWEEN '2005-06-16' AND '2005-06-14';
Empty set (0.00 sec)
```

As you can see, no data is returned. This is because the server is, in effect, generating two conditions from your single condition using the `<=` and `>=` operators, as in:

```
SELECT customer_id, rental_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE rental_date >= '2005-06-16'
-> AND rental_date <= '2005-06-14'
Empty set (0.00 sec)
```

Since it is impossible to have a date that is *both* greater than June 16, 2005, and less than June 14, 2005, the query returns an empty set. This brings me to the second pitfall when using `between`, which is to remember that your upper and lower limits are *inclusive*, meaning that the values you provide are included in the range limits. In this case, I want to return any films rented on June 14 or 15, so I specify `2005-06-14` as the lower end of the range and `2005-06-16` as the upper end. Since I am not specifying the time component of the date, the time defaults to midnight, so the effective range is `2005-06-14 00:00:00` to `2005-06-16 00:00:00`, which will include any rentals made on June 14 or 15.

Along with dates, you can also build conditions to specify ranges of numbers. Numeric ranges are fairly easy to grasp, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, payment_date, amount
-> FROM payment
-> WHERE amount BETWEEN 10.0 AND 11.99;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | payment_date       | amount |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      2 | 2005-07-30 13:47:43 | 10.99 |
|      3 | 2005-07-27 20:23:12 | 10.99 |
|     12 | 2005-08-01 06:50:26 | 10.99 |
|     13 | 2005-07-29 22:37:41 | 11.99 |
|     21 | 2005-06-21 01:04:35 | 10.99 |
|     29 | 2005-07-09 21:55:19 | 10.99 |
...
|   571 | 2005-06-20 08:15:27 | 10.99 |
|   572 | 2005-06-17 04:05:12 | 10.99 |
|   573 | 2005-07-31 12:14:19 | 10.99 |
```

```

|      591 | 2005-07-07 20:45:51 | 11.99 |
|      592 | 2005-07-06 22:58:31 | 11.99 |
|      595 | 2005-07-31 11:51:46 | 10.99 |
+-----+-----+-----+
114 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

All payments between \$10 and \$11.99 are returned. Again, make sure that you specify the lower amount first.

## String ranges

While ranges of dates and numbers are easy to understand, you can also build conditions that search for ranges of strings, which are a bit harder to visualize. Say, for example, you are searching for customers whose last name falls within a range. Here's a query that returns customers whose last name falls between FA and FR:

```

mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
    -> FROM customer
    -> WHERE last_name BETWEEN 'FA' AND 'FR';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+
| FARNSWORTH | JOHN |
| FENNELL | ALEXANDER |
| FERGUSON | BERTHA |
| FERNANDEZ | MELINDA |
| FIELDS | VICKI |
| FISHER | CINDY |
| FLEMING | MYRTLE |
| FLETCHER | MAE |
| FLORES | JULIA |
| FORD | CRYSTAL |
| FORMAN | MICHEAL |
| FORSYTHE | ENRIQUE |
| FORTIER | RAUL |
| FORTNER | HOWARD |
| FOSTER | PHYLLIS |
| FOUST | JACK |
| FOWLER | JO |
| FOX | HOLLY |
+-----+-----+
18 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

While there are five customers whose last name starts with FR, they are not included in the results, since a name like FRANKLIN is outside of the range. However, we can pick up four of the five customers by extending the righthand range to FRB:

```

mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
    -> FROM customer
    -> WHERE last_name BETWEEN 'FA' AND 'FRB';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+

```

```

+-----+-----+
| FARNSWORTH | JOHN      |
| FENNELL    | ALEXANDER |
| FERGUSON    | BERTHA    |
| FERNANDEZ   | MELINDA   |
| FIELDS      | VICKI     |
| FISHER      | CINDY     |
| FLEMING     | MYRTLE   |
| FLETCHER    | MAE       |
| FLORES      | JULIA     |
| FORD        | CRYSTAL   |
| FORMAN      | MICHEAL   |
| FORSYTHE   | ENRIQUE   |
| FORTIER     | RAUL      |
| FORTNER     | HOWARD    |
| FOSTER      | PHYLLIS   |
| FOUST       | JACK      |
| FOWLER      | JO        |
| FOX         | HOLLY     |
| FRALEY      | JUAN      |
| FRANCISCO  | JOEL      |
| FRANKLIN   | BETH      |
| FRAZIER     | GLENDA   |
+-----+-----+
22 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

To work with string ranges, you need to know the order of the characters within your character set (the order in which the characters within a character set are sorted is called a *collation*).

## Membership Conditions

In some cases, you will not be restricting an expression to a single value or range of values but rather to a finite set of values. For example, you might want to locate all films that have a rating of either 'G' or 'PG':

```

mysql> SELECT title, rating
    -> FROM film
    -> WHERE rating = 'G' OR rating = 'PG';
+-----+-----+
| title           | rating |
+-----+-----+
| ACADEMY DINOSAUR | PG     |
| ACE GOLDFINGER   | G      |
| AFFAIR PREJUDICE | G      |
| AFRICAN EGG      | G      |
| AGENT TRUMAN     | PG     |
| ALAMO VIDEOTAPE  | G      |
| ALASKA PHANTOM   | PG     |
| ALI FOREVER      | PG     |
| AMADEUS HOLY     | PG     |
+-----+-----+

```

```

...
| WEDDING APOLLO      | PG    |
| WEREWOLF LOLA       | G     |
| WEST LION            | G     |
| WIZARD COLDBLOODED  | PG    |
| WON DARES           | PG    |
| WONDERLAND CHRISTMAS| PG    |
| WORDS HUNTER        | PG    |
| WORST BANGER         | PG    |
| YOUNG LANGUAGE       | G     |
+-----+-----+
372 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

While this `where` clause (two conditions `or'd` together) wasn't too tedious to generate, imagine if the set of expressions contained 10 or 20 members. For these situations, you can use the `in` operator instead:

```

SELECT title, rating
FROM film
WHERE rating IN ('G', 'PG');

```

With the `in` operator, you can write a single condition no matter how many expressions are in the set.

## Using subqueries

Along with writing your own set of expressions, such as `('G', 'PG')`, you can use a subquery to generate a set for you on the fly. For example, if you can assume that any film whose title includes the string `'PET'` would be safe for family viewing, you could execute a subquery against the `film` table to retrieve all ratings associated with these films and then retrieve all films having any of these ratings:

```

mysql> SELECT title, rating
-> FROM film
-> WHERE rating IN (SELECT rating FROM film WHERE title LIKE '%PET%');
+-----+-----+
| title          | rating |
+-----+-----+
| ACADEMY DINOSAUR | PG    |
| ACE GOLDFINGER   | G     |
| AFFAIR PREJUDICE | G     |
| AFRICAN EGG      | G     |
| AGENT TRUMAN     | PG    |
| ALAMO VIDEOTAPE  | G     |
| ALASKA PHANTOM    | PG    |
| ALI FOREVER       | PG    |
| AMADEUS HOLY      | PG    |
...
| WEDDING APOLLO      | PG    |
| WEREWOLF LOLA       | G     |
| WEST LION            | G     |

```

```

| WIZARD COLDBLOODED      | PG      |
| WON DARES               | PG      |
| WONDERLAND CHRISTMAS    | PG      |
| WORDS HUNTER            | PG      |
| WORST BANGER             | PG      |
| YOUNG LANGUAGE           | G       |
+-----+-----+
372 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The subquery returns the set 'G' and 'PG', and the main query checks to see whether the value of the `rating` column can be found in the set returned by the subquery.

### Using `not in`

Sometimes you want to see whether a particular expression exists within a set of expressions, and sometimes you want to see whether the expression does *not* exist within the set. For these situations, you can use the `not in` operator:

```

SELECT title, rating
  FROM film
 WHERE rating NOT IN ('PG-13','R', 'NC-17');

```

This query finds all accounts that are *not* rated 'PG-13', 'R', or 'NC-17', which will return the same set of 372 rows as the previous queries.

## Matching Conditions

So far, you have been introduced to conditions that identify an exact string, a range of strings, or a set of strings; the final condition type deals with partial string matches. You may, for example, want to find all customers whose last name begins with Q. You could use a built-in function to strip off the first letter of the `last_name` column, as in the following:

```

mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
->   FROM customer
->  WHERE left(last_name, 1) = 'Q';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+
| QUALLS    | STEPHEN    |
| QUINTANILLA | ROGER     |
| QUIGLEY   | TROY       |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

While the built-in function `left()` does the job, it doesn't give you much flexibility. Instead, you can use wildcard characters to build search expressions, as demonstrated in the next section.

## Using wildcards

When searching for partial string matches, you might be interested in:

- Strings beginning/ending with a certain character
- Strings beginning/ending with a substring
- Strings containing a certain character anywhere within the string
- Strings containing a substring anywhere within the string
- Strings with a specific format, regardless of individual characters

You can build search expressions to identify these and many other partial string matches by using the wildcard characters shown in [Table 4-4](#).

*Table 4-4. Wildcard characters*

Wildcard character	Matches
_	Exactly one character
%	Any number of characters (including 0)

The underscore character takes the place of a single character, while the percent sign can take the place of a variable number of characters. When building conditions that utilize search expressions, you use the `like` operator, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
    -> FROM customer
    -> WHERE last_name LIKE '_A_T%';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+
| MATTHEWS | ERICA      |
| WALTERS  | CASSANDRA  |
| WATTS    | SHELLY     |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The search expression in the previous example specifies strings containing an *A* in the second position and a *T* in the fourth position, followed by any number of characters and ending in *S*. [Table 4-5](#) shows some more search expressions and their interpretations.

*Table 4-5. Sample search expressions*

Search expression	Interpretation
F%	Strings beginning with <i>F</i>
%t	Strings ending with <i>t</i>
%bas%	Strings containing the substring 'bas'

Search expression	Interpretation
_ _t_	Four-character strings with a <i>t</i> in the third position
_ _ - _ - _ - _	11-character strings with dashes in the fourth and seventh positions

The wildcard characters work fine for building simple search expressions; if your needs are a bit more sophisticated, however, you can use multiple search expressions, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'Q%' OR last_name LIKE 'Y%';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+
| QUALLS   | STEPHEN    |
| QUIGLEY  | TROY        |
| QUINTANILLA | ROGER      |
| YANEZ    | LUIS         |
| YEE      | MARVIN      |
| YOUNG    | CYNTHIA    |
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query finds all customers whose last name begins with Q or Y.

### Using regular expressions

If you find that the wildcard characters don't provide enough flexibility, you can use regular expressions to build search expressions. A regular expression is, in essence, a search expression on steroids. If you are new to SQL but have coded using programming languages such as Perl, then you might already be intimately familiar with regular expressions. If you have never used regular expressions, then you may want to consult Jeffrey E. F. Friedl's *Mastering Regular Expressions* (O'Reilly), since it is far too large a topic to try to cover in this book.

Here's what the previous query (find all customers whose last name starts with Q or Y) would look like using the MySQL implementation of regular expressions:

```
mysql> SELECT last_name, first_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE last_name REGEXP '^[QY]';
+-----+-----+
| last_name | first_name |
+-----+-----+
| YOUNG    | CYNTHIA    |
| QUALLS   | STEPHEN    |
| QUINTANILLA | ROGER      |
| YANEZ    | LUIS         |
| YEE      | MARVIN      |
| QUIGLEY  | TROY        |
+-----+-----+
```

```
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.16 sec)
```

The `regexp` operator takes a regular expression ('`^QY`' in this example) and applies it to the expression on the lefthand side of the condition (the column `last_name`). The query now contains a single condition using a regular expression rather than two conditions using wildcard characters.

Both Oracle Database and Microsoft SQL Server also support regular expressions. With Oracle Database, you would use the `regexp_like` function instead of the `regexp` operator shown in the previous example, whereas SQL Server allows regular expressions to be used with the `like` operator.

## Null: That Four-Letter Word

I put it off as long as I could, but it's time to broach a topic that tends to be met with fear, uncertainty, and dread: the `null` value. `null` is the absence of a value; before an employee is terminated, for example, her `end_date` column in the `employee` table should be `null`. There is no value that can be assigned to the `end_date` column that would make sense in this situation. `null` is a bit slippery, however, as there are various flavors of `null`:

### *Not applicable*

Such as the employee ID column for a transaction that took place at an ATM machine

### *Value not yet known*

Such as when the federal ID is not known at the time a customer row is created

### *Value undefined*

Such as when an account is created for a product that has not yet been added to the database



Some theorists argue that there should be a different expression to cover each of these (and more) situations, but most practitioners would agree that having multiple `null` values would be far too confusing.

When working with `null`, you should remember:

- An expression can *be* `null`, but it can never *equal* `null`.
- Two `null`s are never equal to each other.

To test whether an expression is `null`, you need to use the `is null` operator, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT rental_id, customer_id
    -> FROM rental
    -> WHERE return_date IS NULL;
+-----+-----+
| rental_id | customer_id |
+-----+-----+
|      11496 |         155 |
|     11541 |         335 |
|     11563 |          83 |
|     11577 |         219 |
|     11593 |          99 |
...
|     15867 |         505 |
|     15875 |          41 |
|     15894 |         168 |
|     15966 |         374 |
+-----+-----+
183 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

This query finds all film rentals that were never returned. Here's the same query using `= null` instead of `is null`:

```
mysql> SELECT rental_id, customer_id
    -> FROM rental
    -> WHERE return_date = NULL;
Empty set (0.01 sec)
```

As you can see, the query parses and executes but does not return any rows. This is a common mistake made by inexperienced SQL programmers, and the database server will not alert you to your error, so be careful when constructing conditions that test for `null`.

If you want to see whether a value has been assigned to a column, you can use the `is not null` operator, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT rental_id, customer_id, return_date
    -> FROM rental
    -> WHERE return_date IS NOT NULL;
+-----+-----+-----+
| rental_id | customer_id | return_date   |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       1 |        130 | 2005-05-26 22:04:30 |
|       2 |        459 | 2005-05-28 19:40:33 |
|       3 |        408 | 2005-06-01 22:12:39 |
|       4 |        333 | 2005-06-03 01:43:41 |
|       5 |        222 | 2005-06-02 04:33:21 |
|       6 |        549 | 2005-05-27 01:32:07 |
|       7 |        269 | 2005-05-29 20:34:53 |
...
...
```

```

|    16043 |      526 | 2005-08-31 03:09:03 |
|    16044 |      468 | 2005-08-25 04:08:39 |
|    16045 |       14 | 2005-08-25 23:54:26 |
|    16046 |       74 | 2005-08-27 18:02:47 |
|    16047 |      114 | 2005-08-25 02:48:48 |
|    16048 |      103 | 2005-08-31 21:33:07 |
|    16049 |      393 | 2005-08-30 01:01:12 |
+-----+-----+

```

15861 rows in set (0.02 sec)

This version of the query returns all rentals that were returned, which is the majority of the rows in the table (15,861 out of 16,044).

Before putting `null` aside for a while, it would be helpful to investigate one more potential pitfall. Suppose that you have been asked to find all rentals that were not returned during May through August of 2005. Your first instinct might be to do the following:

```

mysql> SELECT rental_id, customer_id, return_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE return_date NOT BETWEEN '2005-05-01' AND '2005-09-01';
+-----+-----+-----+
| rental_id | customer_id | return_date          |
+-----+-----+-----+
|    15365 |      327 | 2005-09-01 03:14:17 |
|    15388 |       50 | 2005-09-01 03:50:23 |
|    15392 |      410 | 2005-09-01 01:14:15 |
|    15401 |      103 | 2005-09-01 03:44:10 |
|    15415 |      204 | 2005-09-01 02:05:56 |
|
|    15977 |      550 | 2005-09-01 22:12:10 |
|    15982 |      370 | 2005-09-01 21:51:31 |
|    16005 |      466 | 2005-09-02 02:35:22 |
|    16020 |      311 | 2005-09-01 18:17:33 |
|    16033 |      226 | 2005-09-01 02:36:15 |
|    16037 |       45 | 2005-09-01 02:48:04 |
|    16040 |      195 | 2005-09-02 02:19:33 |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

62 rows in set (0.01 sec)

While it is true that these 62 rentals were returned outside of the May to August window, if you look carefully at the data, you will see that all of the rows returned have a non-null return date. But what about the 183 rentals that were never returned? One might argue that these 183 rows were also not returned between May and August, so they should also be included in the result set. To answer the question correctly, therefore, you need to account for the possibility that some rows might contain a `null` in the `return_date` column:

```

mysql> SELECT rental_id, customer_id, return_date
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE return_date IS NULL

```

```

-> OR return_date NOT BETWEEN '2005-05-01' AND '2005-09-01';
+-----+-----+
| rental_id | customer_id | return_date      |
+-----+-----+
| 11496    |      155 | NULL           |
| 11541    |      335 | NULL           |
| 11563    |       83 | NULL           |
| 11577    |      219 | NULL           |
| 11593    |       99 | NULL           |
...
| 15939    |      382 | 2005-09-01 17:25:21 |
| 15942    |      210 | 2005-09-01 18:39:40 |
| 15966    |      374 | NULL           |
| 15971    |      187 | 2005-09-02 01:28:33 |
| 15973    |      343 | 2005-09-01 20:08:41 |
| 15977    |      550 | 2005-09-01 22:12:10 |
| 15982    |      370 | 2005-09-01 21:51:31 |
| 16005    |      466 | 2005-09-02 02:35:22 |
| 16020    |      311 | 2005-09-01 18:17:33 |
| 16033    |      226 | 2005-09-01 02:36:15 |
| 16037    |       45 | 2005-09-01 02:48:04 |
| 16040    |      195 | 2005-09-02 02:19:33 |
+-----+-----+

```

245 rows in set (0.01 sec)

The result set now includes the 62 rentals that were returned outside of the May to August window, along with the 183 rentals that were never returned, for a total of 245 rows. When working with a database that you are not familiar with, it is a good idea to find out which columns in a table allow `nulls` so that you can take appropriate measures with your filter conditions to keep data from slipping through the cracks.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises test your understanding of filter conditions. Please see [Appendix B](#) for solutions.

You'll need to refer to the following subset of rows from the `payment` table for the first two exercises:

```

+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_id | customer_id | amount | date(payment_date) |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 101 |      4 | 8.99 | 2005-08-18 |
| 102 |      4 | 1.99 | 2005-08-19 |
| 103 |      4 | 2.99 | 2005-08-20 |
| 104 |      4 | 6.99 | 2005-08-20 |
| 105 |      4 | 4.99 | 2005-08-21 |
| 106 |      4 | 2.99 | 2005-08-22 |
| 107 |      4 | 1.99 | 2005-08-23 |
| 108 |      5 | 0.99 | 2005-05-29 |
| 109 |      5 | 6.99 | 2005-05-31 |

```

110	5	1.99	2005-05-31
111	5	3.99	2005-06-15
112	5	2.99	2005-06-16
113	5	4.99	2005-06-17
114	5	2.99	2005-06-19
115	5	4.99	2005-06-20
116	5	4.99	2005-07-06
117	5	2.99	2005-07-08
118	5	4.99	2005-07-09
119	5	5.99	2005-07-09
120	5	1.99	2005-07-09

## Exercise 4-1

Which of the payment IDs would be returned by the following filter conditions?

```
customer_id <> 5 AND (amount > 8 OR date(payment_date) = '2005-08-23')
```

## Exercise 4-2

Which of the payment IDs would be returned by the following filter conditions?

```
customer_id = 5 AND NOT (amount > 6 OR date(payment_date) = '2005-06-19')
```

## Exercise 4-3

Construct a query that retrieves all rows from the payments table where the amount is either 1.98, 7.98, or 9.98.

## Exercise 4-4

Construct a query that finds all customers whose last name contains an A in the second position and a W anywhere after the A.

# Querying Multiple Tables

Back in [Chapter 2](#), I demonstrated how related concepts are broken into separate pieces through a process known as normalization. The end result of this exercise was two tables: `person` and `favorite_food`. If, however, you want to generate a single report showing a person's name, address, *and* favorite foods, you will need a mechanism to bring the data from these two tables back together again; this mechanism is known as a *join*, and this chapter concentrates on the simplest and most common join, the *inner join*. [Chapter 10](#) demonstrates all of the different join types.

## What Is a Join?

Queries against a single table are certainly not rare, but you will find that most of your queries will require two, three, or even more tables. To illustrate, let's look at the definitions for the `customer` and `address` tables and then define a query that retrieves data from both tables:

```
mysql> desc customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | PRI | NULL |
| store_id | tinyint(3) unsigned | NO | MUL | NULL |
| first_name | varchar(45) | NO |  | NULL |
| last_name | varchar(45) | NO | MUL | NULL |
| email | varchar(50) | YES |  | NULL |
| address_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | MUL | NULL |
| active | tinyint(1) | NO |  | 1 |
| create_date | datetime | NO |  | NULL |
| last_update | timestamp | YES |  | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
mysql> desc address;
```

Field	Type	Null	Key	Default
<b>address_id</b>	smallint(5) unsigned	NO	PRI	NULL
address	varchar(50)	NO		NULL
address2	varchar(50)	YES		NULL
district	varchar(20)	NO		NULL
city_id	smallint(5) unsigned	NO	MUL	NULL
postal_code	varchar(10)	YES		NULL
phone	varchar(20)	NO		NULL
location	geometry	NO	MUL	NULL
last_update	timestamp	NO		CURRENT_TIMESTAMP

Let's say you want to retrieve the first and last names of each customer, along with their street address. Your query will therefore need to retrieve the `customer.first_name`, `customer.last_name`, and `address.address` columns. But how can you retrieve data from both tables in the same query? The answer lies in the `customer.address_id` column, which holds the ID of the customer's record in the `address` table (in more formal terms, the `customer.address_id` column is the *foreign key* to the `address` table). The query, which you will see shortly, instructs the server to use the `customer.address_id` column as the *transportation* between the `customer` and `address` tables, thereby allowing columns from both tables to be included in the query's result set. This type of operation is known as a *join*.



A foreign key constraint can optionally be created to verify that the values in one table exist in another table. For the previous example, a foreign key constraint could be created on the `customer` table to ensure that any values inserted into the `customer.address_id` column can be found in the `address.address_id` column. Please note that it is not necessary to have a foreign key constraint in place in order to join two tables.

## Cartesian Product

The easiest way to start is to put the `customer` and `address` tables into the `from` clause of a query and see what happens. Here's a query that retrieves the customer's first and last names along with the street address, with a `from` clause naming both tables separated by the `join` keyword:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
-> FROM customer c JOIN address a;
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address          |
+-----+-----+
| MARY      | SMITH     | 47 MySakila Drive |
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   | 47 MySakila Drive |
```

```

| LINDA      | WILLIAMS   | 47 MySakila Drive |
| BARBARA    | JONES       | 47 MySakila Drive |
| ELIZABETH  | BROWN       | 47 MySakila Drive |
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS       | 47 MySakila Drive |
| MARIA      | MILLER     | 47 MySakila Drive |
| SUSAN      | WILSON     | 47 MySakila Drive |
|
| ...        |            |                   |
| SETH        | HANNON     | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| KENT        | ARSENAULT  | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH      | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| RENE        | MCALISTER  | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| EDUARDO    | HIATT      | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| TERRENCE   | GUNDERSON | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE   | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN     | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| WADE        | DELVALLE   | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
| AUSTIN     | CINTRON    | 1325 Fukuyama Street |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

361197 rows in set (0.03 sec)

Hmmm...there are only 599 customers and 603 rows in the `address` table, so how did the result set end up with 361,197 rows? Looking more closely, you can see that many of the customers seem to have the same street address. Because the query didn't specify *how* the two tables should be joined, the database server generated the *Cartesian product*, which is *every* permutation of the two tables (599 customers x 603 addresses = 361,197 permutations). This type of join is known as a *cross join*, and it is rarely used (on purpose, at least). Cross joins are one of the join types that we study in [Chapter 10](#).

## Inner Joins

To modify the previous query so that only a single row is returned for each customer, you need to describe how the two tables are related. Earlier, I showed that the `customer.address_id` column serves as the link between the two tables, so this information needs to be added to the `on` subclause of the `from` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
-> FROM customer c JOIN address a
-> ON c.address_id = a.address_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address          |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH     | 1913 Hanoi Way   |
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   | 1121 Loja Avenue |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS  | 692 Joliet Street|
| BARBARA    | JONES     | 1566 Inegl Manor |
| ELIZABETH  | BROWN     | 53 Idfu Parkway  |
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS     | 1795 Santiago de Compostela Way |
| MARIA      | MILLER    | 900 Santiago de Compostela Parkway |
| SUSAN      | WILSON    | 478 Joliet Way   |

```

MARGARET	MOORE	613 Korolev Drive
...		
TERRANCE	ROUSH	42 Fontana Avenue
RENE	MCALISTER	1895 Zhezqazghan Drive
EDUARDO	HIATT	1837 Kaduna Parkway
TERRENCE	GUNDERSON	844 Bucuresti Place
ENRIQUE	FORSYTHE	1101 Bucuresti Boulevard
FREDDIE	DUGGAN	1103 Quilmes Boulevard
WADE	DELVALLE	1331 Usak Boulevard
AUSTIN	CINTRON	1325 Fukuyama Street

599 rows in set (0.00 sec)

Instead of 361,197 rows, you now have the expected 599 rows due to the addition of the `on` subclause, which instructs the server to join the `customer` and `address` tables by using the `address_id` column to traverse from one table to the other. For example, Mary Smith's row in the `customer` table contains a value of 5 in the `address_id` column (not shown in the example). The server uses this value to look up the row in the `address` table having a value of 5 in its `address_id` column and then retrieves the value '1913 Hanoi Way' from the `address` column in that row.

If a value exists for the `address_id` column in one table but *not* the other, then the join fails for the rows containing that value, and those rows are excluded from the result set. This type of join is known as an *inner join*, and it is the most commonly used type of join. To clarify, if a row in the `customer` table has the value 999 in the `address_id` column and there's no row in the `address` table with a value of 999 in the `address_id` column, then that customer row would not be included in the result set. If you want to include all rows from one table or the other regardless of whether a match exists, you need to specify an *outer join*, but this will be explored [Chapter 10](#).

In the previous example, I did not specify in the `from` clause which type of join to use. However, when you wish to join two tables using an inner join, you should explicitly specify this in your `from` clause; here's the same example, with the addition of the join type (note the keyword `inner`):

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
FROM customer c INNER JOIN address a
ON c.address_id = a.address_id;
```

If you do not specify the type of join, then the server will do an inner join by default. As you will see later in the book, however, there are several types of joins, so you should get in the habit of specifying the exact type of join that you require, especially for the benefit of any other people who might use/maintain your queries in the future.

If the names of the columns used to join the two tables are identical, which is true in the previous query, you can use the `using` subclause instead of the `on` subclause, as in:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
FROM customer c INNER JOIN address a
    USING (address_id);
```

Since `using` is a shorthand notation that you can use in only a specific situation, I prefer always to use the `on` subclause to avoid confusion.

## The ANSI Join Syntax

The notation used throughout this book for joining tables was introduced in the SQL92 version of the ANSI SQL standard. All the major databases (Oracle Database, Microsoft SQL Server, MySQL, IBM DB2 Universal Database, and Sybase Adaptive Server) have adopted the SQL92 join syntax. Because most of these servers have been around since before the release of the SQL92 specification, they all include an older join syntax as well. For example, all these servers would understand the following variation of the previous query:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
-> FROM customer c, address a
-> WHERE c.address_id = a.address_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY      | SMITH     | 1913 Hanoi Way
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   | 1121 Loja Avenue
| LINDA     | WILLIAMS  | 692 Joliet Street
| BARBARA   | JONES     | 1566 Inegl Manor
| ELIZABETH | BROWN     | 53 Idfu Parkway
| JENNIFER  | DAVIS     | 1795 Santiago de Compostela Way
| MARIA     | MILLER    | 900 Santiago de Compostela Parkway
| SUSAN     | WILSON    | 478 Joliet Way
| MARGARET  | MOORE     | 613 Korolev Drive
...
| TERRANCE  | ROUSH     | 42 Fontana Avenue
| RENE      | MCALISTER | 1895 Zhezqazghan Drive
| EDUARDO   | HIATT     | 1837 Kaduna Parkway
| TERRENCE  | GUNDERSON | 844 Bucuresti Place
| ENRIQUE   | FORSYTHE  | 1101 Bucuresti Boulevard
| FREDDIE   | DUGGAN    | 1103 Quilmes Boulevard
| WADE      | DELVALLE  | 1331 Usak Boulevard
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 1325 Fukuyama Street
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This older method of specifying joins does not include the `on` subclause; instead, tables are named in the `from` clause separated by commas, and join conditions are included in the `where` clause. While you may decide to ignore the SQL92 syntax in favor of the older join syntax, the ANSI join syntax has the following advantages:

- Join conditions and filter conditions are separated into two different clauses (the `on` subclause and the `where` clause, respectively), making a query easier to understand.
- The join conditions for each pair of tables are contained in their own `on` clause, making it less likely that part of a join will be mistakenly omitted.
- Queries that use the SQL92 join syntax are portable across database servers, whereas the older syntax is slightly different across the different servers.

The benefits of the SQL92 join syntax are easier to identify for complex queries that include both join and filter conditions. Consider the following query, which returns only those customers whose postal code is 52137:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
-> FROM customer c, address a
-> WHERE c.address_id = a.address_id
-> AND a.postal_code = 52137;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address          |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JAMES      | GANNON    | 1635 Kuwana Boulevard |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN    | 1103 Quilmes Boulevard |
+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

At first glance, it is not so easy to determine which conditions in the `where` clause are join conditions and which are filter conditions. It is also not readily apparent which type of join is being employed (to identify the type of join, you would need to look closely at the join conditions in the `where` clause to see whether any special characters are employed), nor is it easy to determine whether any join conditions have been mistakenly left out. Here's the same query using the SQL92 join syntax:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address
-> FROM customer c INNER JOIN address a
-> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
-> WHERE a.postal_code = 52137;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address          |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JAMES      | GANNON    | 1635 Kuwana Boulevard |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN    | 1103 Quilmes Boulevard |
+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

With this version, it is clear which condition is used for the join and which condition is used for filtering. Hopefully, you will agree that the version using SQL92 join syntax is easier to understand.

## Joining Three or More Tables

Joining three tables is similar to joining two tables, but with one slight wrinkle. With a two-table join, there are two tables and one join type in the `from` clause, and a single `on` subclause to define how the tables are joined. With a three-table join, there are three tables and two join types in the `from` clause, and two `on` subclauses.

To illustrate, let's change the previous query to return the customer's city rather than their street address. The city name, however, is not stored in the `address` table but is accessed via a foreign key to the `city` table. Here are the table definitions:

```
mysql> desc address;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type      | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| address_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | PRI | NULL |
| address | varchar(50) | NO |   | NULL |
| address2 | varchar(50) | YES |   | NULL |
| district | varchar(20) | NO |   | NULL |
| city_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | MUL | NULL |
| postal_code | varchar(10) | YES |   | NULL |
| phone | varchar(20) | NO |   | NULL |
| location | geometry | NO | MUL | NULL |
| last_update | timestamp | NO |   | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+

mysql> desc city;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type      | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| city_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | PRI | NULL |
| city | varchar(50) | NO |   | NULL |
| country_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO | MUL | NULL |
| last_update | timestamp | NO |   | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

To show each customer's city, you will need to traverse from the `customer` table to the `address` table using the `address_id` column and then from the `address` table to the `city` table using the `city_id` column. The query would look like the following:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city
    -> FROM customer c
    ->     INNER JOIN address a
    ->         ON c.address_id = a.address_id
    ->     INNER JOIN city ct
    ->         ON a.city_id = ct.city_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | city |
+-----+-----+-----+
| JULIE     | SANCHEZ  | A Corua (La Corua) |
| PEGGY     | MYERS    | Abha   |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

TOM	MILNER	Abu Dhabi
GLEN	TALBERT	Acua
LARRY	THRASHER	Adana
SEAN	DOUGLASS	Addis Abeba
...		
MICHELE	GRANT	Yuncheng
GARY	COY	Yuzhou
PHYLLIS	FOSTER	Zalantun
CHARLENE	ALVAREZ	Zanzibar
FRANKLIN	TROUTMAN	Zaoyang
FLOYD	GANDY	Zapopan
CONSTANCE	REID	Zaria
JACK	FOUST	Zelevnogorsk
BYRON	BOX	Zhezqazghan
GUY	BROWNLEE	Zhoushan
RONNIE	RICKETTS	Ziguinchor

599 rows in set (0.03 sec)

For this query, there are three tables, two join types, and two `on` subclauses in the `from` clause, so things have gotten quite a bit busier. At first glance, it might seem like the order in which the tables appear in the `from` clause is important, but if you switch the table order, you will get the exact same results. All three of these variations return the same results:

```

SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city
FROM customer c
    INNER JOIN address a
        ON c.address_id = a.address_id
    INNER JOIN city ct
        ON a.city_id = ct.city_id;

SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city
FROM city ct
    INNER JOIN address a
        ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
    INNER JOIN customer c
        ON c.address_id = a.address_id;

SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city
FROM address a
    INNER JOIN city ct
        ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
    INNER JOIN customer c
        ON c.address_id = a.address_id;

```

The only difference you may see would be the order in which the rows are returned, since there is no `order by` clause to specify how the results should be ordered.

## Does Join Order Matter?

If you are confused about why all three versions of the `customer/address/city` query yield the same results, keep in mind that SQL is a nonprocedural language, meaning that you describe what you want to retrieve and which database objects need to be involved, but it is up to the database server to determine how best to execute your query. Using statistics gathered from your database objects, the server must pick one of three tables as a starting point (the chosen table is thereafter known as the *driving table*) and then decide in which order to join the remaining tables. Therefore, the order in which tables appear in your `from` clause is not significant.

If, however, you believe that the tables in your query should always be joined in a particular order, you can place the tables in the desired order and then specify the keyword `straight_join` in MySQL, request the `force_order` option in SQL Server, or use either the `ordered` or the `leading` optimizer hint in Oracle Database. For example, to tell the MySQL server to use the `city` table as the driving table and to then join the `address` and `customer` tables, you could do the following:

```
SELECT STRAIGHT_JOIN c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city
  FROM city ct
    INNER JOIN address a
      ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
    INNER JOIN customer c
      ON c.address_id = a.address_id
```

## Using Subqueries as Tables

You have already seen several examples of queries that include multiple tables, but there is one variation worth mentioning: what to do if some of the data sets are generated by subqueries. Subqueries are the focus of [Chapter 9](#), but I already introduced the concept of a subquery in the `from` clause in the previous chapter. The following query joins the `customer` table to a subquery against the `address` and `city` tables:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, addr.address, addr.city
->   FROM customer c
->     INNER JOIN
->       (SELECT a.address_id, a.address, ct.city
->         FROM address a
->           INNER JOIN city ct
->             ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
->             WHERE a.district = 'California'
->       ) addr
->     ON c.address_id = addr.address_id;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address          | city      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   | 1121 Loja Avenue | San Bernardino |
```

```

| BETTY      | WHITE      | 770 Bydgoszcz Avenue | Citrus Heights |
| ALICE      | STEWART    | 1135 Izumisano Parkway | Fontana        |
| ROSA       | REYNOLDS   | 793 Cam Ranh Avenue  | Lancaster     |
| RENEE      | LANE        | 533 al-Ayn Boulevard | Compton       |
| KRISTIN    | JOHNSTON   | 226 Brest Manor     | Sunnyvale     |
| CASSANDRA  | WALTERS    | 920 Kumbakonam Loop  | Salinas       |
| JACOB      | LANCE       | 1866 al-Qatif Avenue | El Monte      |
| RENE       | MCALISTER   | 1895 Zhezqazghan Drive | Garden Grove  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The subquery, which starts on line 4 and is given the alias `addr`, finds all addresses that are in California. The outer query joins the subquery results to the `customer` table to return the first name, last name, street address, and city of all customers who live in California. **While this query could have been written without the use of a subquery by simply joining the three tables, it can sometimes be advantageous from a performance and/or readability aspect to use one or more subqueries.**

One way to visualize what is going on is to run the subquery by itself and look at the results. Here are the results of the subquery from the prior example:

```

mysql> SELECT a.address_id, a.address, ct.city
   -> FROM address a
   -> INNER JOIN city ct
   -> ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
   -> WHERE a.district = 'California';
+-----+-----+-----+
| address_id | address           | city      |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       6    | 1121 Loja Avenue   | San Bernardino |
|      18    | 770 Bydgoszcz Avenue | Citrus Heights |
|      55    | 1135 Izumisano Parkway | Fontana        |
|     116    | 793 Cam Ranh Avenue | Lancaster     |
|     186    | 533 al-Ayn Boulevard | Compton       |
|     218    | 226 Brest Manor    | Sunnyvale     |
|     274    | 920 Kumbakonam Loop | Salinas       |
|     425    | 1866 al-Qatif Avenue | El Monte      |
|     599    | 1895 Zhezqazghan Drive | Garden Grove  |
+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

This result set consists of all nine California addresses. When joined to the `customer` table via the `address_id` column, your result set will contain information about the customers assigned to these addresses.

## Using the Same Table Twice

If you are joining multiple tables, you might find that you need to join the same table more than once. In the sample database, for example, actors are related to the films in which they appeared via the `film_actor` table. If you want to find all of the films in

which two specific actors appear, you could write a query such as this one, which joins the `film` table to the `film_actor` table to the `actor` table:

```
mysql> SELECT f.title
->   FROM film f
->   INNER JOIN film_actor fa
->   ON f.film_id = fa.film_id
->   INNER JOIN actor a
->   ON fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
->   WHERE ((a.first_name = 'CATE' AND a.last_name = 'MCQUEEN')
->          OR (a.first_name = 'CUBA' AND a.last_name = 'BIRCH'));
+-----+
| title      |
+-----+
| ATLANTIS CAUSE    |
| BLOOD ARGONAUTS  |
| COMMANDMENTS EXPRESS |
| DYNAMITE TARZAN    |
| EDGE KISSING     |
...
| TOWERS HURRICANE  |
| TROJAN TOMORROW   |
| VIRGIN DAISY       |
| VOLCANO TEXAS     |
| WATERSHIP FRONTIER |
+-----+
54 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query returns all movies in which either Cate McQueen or Cuba Birch appeared. However, let's say that you want to retrieve only those films in which *both* of these actors appeared. To accomplish this, you will need to find all rows in the `film` table that have two rows in the `film_actor` table, one of which is associated with Cate McQueen, and the other associated with Cuba Birch. Therefore, you will need to include the `film_actor` and `actor` tables twice, each with a different alias so that the server knows which one you are referring to in the various clauses:

```
mysql> SELECT f.title
->   FROM film f
->   INNER JOIN film_actor fa1
->   ON f.film_id = fa1.film_id
->   INNER JOIN actor a1
->   ON fa1.actor_id = a1.actor_id
->   INNER JOIN film_actor fa2
->   ON f.film_id = fa2.film_id
->   INNER JOIN actor a2
->   ON fa2.actor_id = a2.actor_id
->   WHERE (a1.first_name = 'CATE' AND a1.last_name = 'MCQUEEN')
->          AND (a2.first_name = 'CUBA' AND a2.last_name = 'BIRCH');
+-----+
| title      |
+-----+
```

```
| BLOOD ARGONAUTS  |
| TOWERS HURRICANE |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

Between them, the two actors appeared in 52 different films, but there are only two films in which both actors appeared. This is one example of a query that *requires* the use of table aliases, since the same tables are used multiple times.

## Self-Joins

Not only can you include the same table more than once in the same query, but you can actually join a table to itself. This might seem like a strange thing to do at first, but there are valid reasons for doing so. Some tables include a *self-referencing foreign key*, which means that it includes a column that points to the primary key within the same table. While the sample database doesn't include such a relationship, let's imagine that the `film` table includes the column `prequel_film_id`, which points to the film's parent (e.g., the film *Fiddler Lost II* would use this column to point to the parent film *Fiddler Lost*). Here's what the table would look like if we were to add this additional column:

```
mysql> desc film;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field          | Type           | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id        | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI | NULL    |
| title          | varchar(255)      | NO   | MUL | NULL    |
| description     | text             | YES  |      | NULL    |
| release_year    | year(4)          | YES  |      | NULL    |
| language_id     | tinyint(3) unsigned | NO   | MUL | NULL    |
| original_language_id | tinyint(3) unsigned | YES  | MUL | NULL    |
| rental_duration | tinyint(3) unsigned | NO   |      | 3       |
| rental_rate     | decimal(4,2)       | NO   |      | 4.99    |
| length          | smallint(5) unsigned | YES  |      | NULL    |
| replacement_cost | decimal(5,2)       | NO   |      | 19.99   |
| rating          | enum('G','PG','PG-13',
          |                  'R','NC-17') | YES  |      | G       |
| special_features | set('Trailers',...,
          |                  'Behind the Scenes') | YES  |      | NULL    | |
| last_update      | timestamp         | NO   |      | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
| prequel_film_id  | smallint(5) unsigned | YES  | MUL | NULL    |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Using a *self-join*, you can write a query that lists every film that has a prequel, along with the prequel's title:

```
mysql> SELECT f.title, f_prnt.title prequel
-> FROM film f
-> INNER JOIN film f_prnt
```

```

-> ON f_prnt.film_id = f.prequel_film_id
-> WHERE f.prequel_film_id IS NOT NULL;
+-----+-----+
| title          | prequel      |
+-----+-----+
| FIDDLER LOST II | FIDDLER LOST |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

```

This query joins the `film` table to itself using the `prequel_film_id` foreign key, and the table aliases `f` and `f_prnt` are assigned in order to make it clear which table is used for which purpose.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises are designed to test your understanding of inner joins. Please see [Appendix B](#) for the solutions to these exercises.

### Exercise 5-1

Fill in the blanks (denoted by `<#>`) for the following query to obtain the results that follow:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address, ct.city
-> FROM customer c
-> INNER JOIN address <1>
-> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
-> INNER JOIN city ct
-> ON a.city_id = <2>
-> WHERE a.district = 'California';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address           | city      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON   | 1121 Loja Avenue    | San Bernardino |
| BETTY      | WHITE      | 770 Bydgoszcz Avenue | Citrus Heights |
| ALICE      | STEWART    | 1135 Izumisano Parkway | Fontana     |
| ROSA       | REYNOLDS   | 793 Cam Ranh Avenue | Lancaster   |
| RENEE      | LANE       | 533 al-Ayn Boulevard | Compton     |
| KRISTIN    | JOHNSTON   | 226 Brest Manor     | Sunnyvale   |
| CASSANDRA  | WALTERS    | 920 Kumbakonam Loop | Salinas     |
| JACOB      | LANCE      | 1866 al-Qatif Avenue | El Monte    |
| RENE       | MCALISTER  | 1895 Zhezqazghan Drive | Garden Grove |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

### Exercise 5-2

Write a query that returns the title of every film in which an actor with the first name JOHN appeared.

## Exercise 5-3

Construct a query that returns all addresses that are in the same city. You will need to join the address table to itself, and each row should include two different addresses.

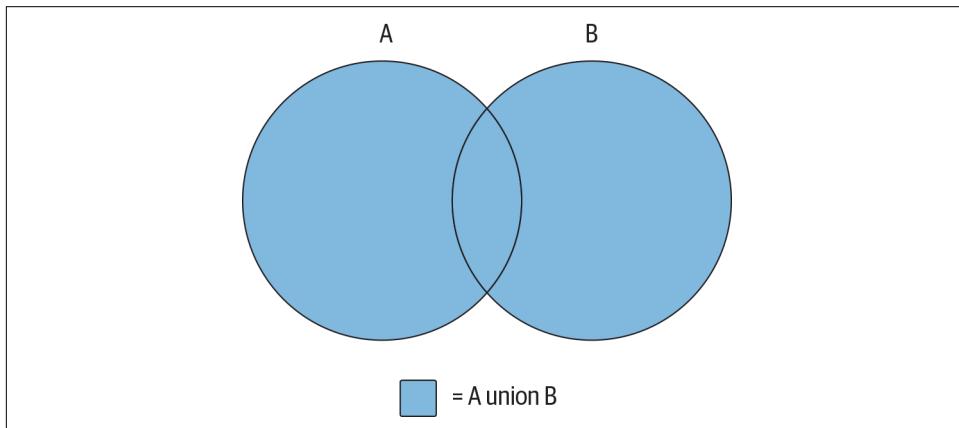
## CHAPTER 6

# Working with Sets

Although you can interact with the data in a database one row at a time, relational databases are really all about sets. This chapter explores how you can combine multiple result sets using various set operators. After a quick overview of set theory, I'll demonstrate how to use the set operators `union`, `intersect`, and `except` to blend multiple data sets together.

## Set Theory Primer

In many parts of the world, basic set theory is included in elementary-level math curriculums. Perhaps you recall looking at something like what is shown in [Figure 6-1](#).

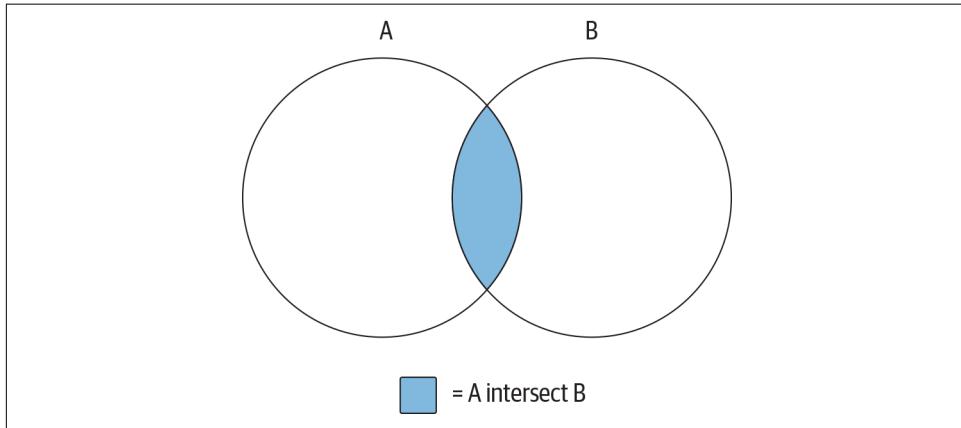


*Figure 6-1. The union operation*

The shaded area in [Figure 6-1](#) represents the *union* of sets A and B, which is the combination of the two sets (with any overlapping regions included only once). Is this

starting to look familiar? If so, then you'll finally get a chance to put that knowledge to use; if not, don't worry, because it's easy to visualize using a couple of diagrams.

Using circles to represent two data sets (A and B), imagine a subset of data that is common to both sets; this common data is represented by the overlapping area shown in [Figure 6-1](#). Since set theory is rather uninteresting without an overlap between data sets, I use the same diagram to illustrate each set operation. There is another set operation that is concerned *only* with the overlap between two data sets; this operation is known as the *intersection* and is demonstrated in [Figure 6-2](#).

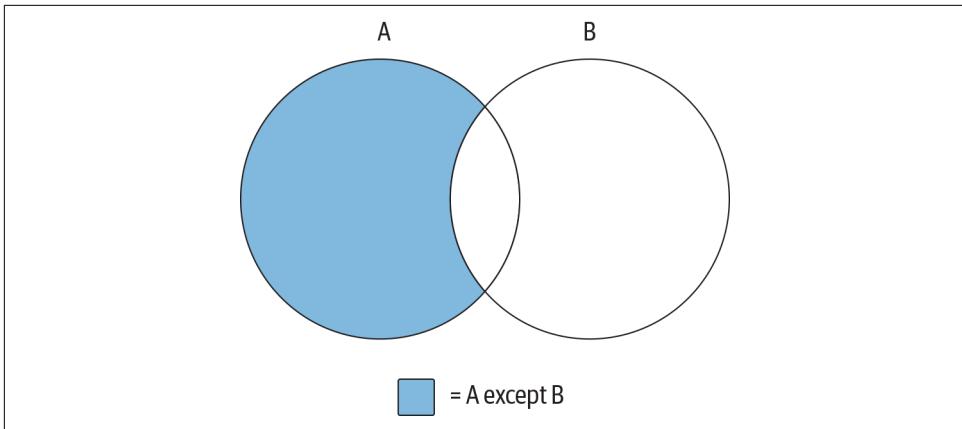


*Figure 6-2. The intersection operation*

The data set generated by the intersection of sets A and B is just the area of overlap between the two sets. If the two sets have no overlap, then the intersection operation yields the empty set.

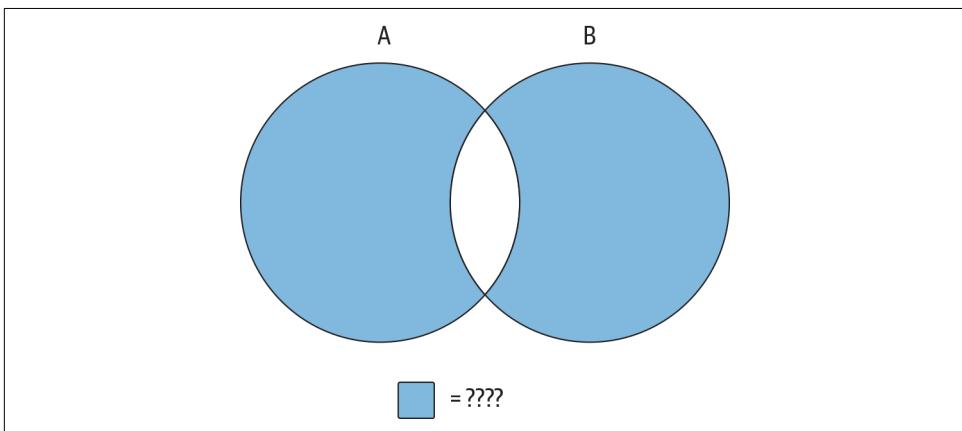
The third and final set operation, which is demonstrated in [Figure 6-3](#), is known as the *except* operation.

[Figure 6-3](#) shows the results of A except B, which is the whole of set A minus any overlap with set B. If the two sets have no overlap, then the operation A except B yields the whole of set A.



*Figure 6-3. The except operation*

Using these three operations, or by combining different operations together, you can generate whatever results you need. For example, imagine that you want to build a set demonstrated by [Figure 6-4](#).



*Figure 6-4. Mystery data set*

The data set you are looking for includes all of sets A and B *without* the overlapping region. You can't achieve this outcome with just one of the three operations shown earlier; instead, you will need to first build a data set that encompasses all of sets A and B, and then utilize a second operation to remove the overlapping region. If the combined set is described as `A union B`, and the overlapping region is described as `A intersect B`, then the operation needed to generate the data set represented by [Figure 6-4](#) would look as follows:

`(A union B) except (A intersect B)`

Of course, there are often multiple ways to achieve the same results; you could reach a similar outcome using the following operation:

```
(A except B) union (B except A)
```

While these concepts are fairly easy to understand using diagrams, the next sections show you how these concepts are applied to a relational database using the SQL set operators.

## Set Theory in Practice

The circles used in the previous section's diagrams to represent data sets don't convey anything about what the data sets comprise. When dealing with actual data, however, there is a need to describe the composition of the data sets involved if they are to be combined. Imagine, for example, what would happen if you tried to generate the union of the `customer` table and the `city` table, whose definitions are as follows:

```
mysql> desc customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type      | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI  | NULL    |
| store_id    | tinyint(3) unsigned  | NO   | MUL  | NULL    |
| first_name  | varchar(45)        | NO   |       | NULL    |
| last_name   | varchar(45)        | NO   | MUL  | NULL    |
| email        | varchar(50)         | YES  |       | NULL    |
| address_id  | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | MUL  | NULL    |
| active       | tinyint(1)          | NO   |       | 1       |
| create_date  | datetime             | NO   |       | NULL    |
| last_update  | timestamp            | YES  |       | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
mysql> desc city;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type      | Null | Key | Default |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| city_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | PRI  | NULL    |
| city    | varchar(50)        | NO   |       | NULL    |
| country_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   | MUL  | NULL    |
| last_update | timestamp           | NO   |       | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

When combined, the first column in the result set would include both the `customer.customer_id` and `city.city_id` columns, the second column would be the combination of the `customer.store_id` and `city.city` columns, and so forth. While some column pairs are easy to combine (e.g., two numeric columns), it is unclear how other column pairs should be combined, such as a numeric column with a string column or a string column with a date column. Additionally, the fifth through ninth columns of the combined tables would include data from only the

`customer` table's fifth through ninth columns, since the `city` table has only four columns. Clearly, there needs to be some commonality between two data sets that you wish to combine.

Therefore, when performing set operations on two data sets, the following guidelines must apply:

- Both data sets must have the same number of columns.
- The data types of each column across the two data sets must be the same (or the server must be able to convert one to the other).

With these rules in place, it is easier to envision what “overlapping data” means in practice; each column pair from the two sets being combined must contain the same string, number, or date for rows in the two tables to be considered the same.

You perform a set operation by placing a *set operator* between two `select` statements, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT 1 num, 'abc' str
      -> UNION
      -> SELECT 9 num, 'xyz' str;
+-----+-----+
| num | str |
+-----+-----+
|   1 | abc |
|   9 | xyz |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

Each of the individual queries yields a data set consisting of a single row having a numeric column and a string column. The set operator, which in this case is `union`, tells the database server to combine all rows from the two sets. Thus, the final set includes two rows of two columns. This query is known as a *compound query* because it comprises multiple, otherwise-independent queries. As you will see later, compound queries may include *more* than two queries if multiple set operations are needed to attain the final results.

## Set Operators

The SQL language includes three set operators that allow you to perform each of the various set operations described earlier in the chapter. Additionally, each set operator has two flavors, one that includes duplicates and another that removes duplicates (but not necessarily *all* of the duplicates). The following subsections define each operator and demonstrate how they are used.

## The union Operator

The `union` and `union all` operators allow you to combine multiple data sets. The difference between the two is that `union` sorts the combined set and removes duplicates, whereas `union all` does not. With `union all`, the number of rows in the final data set will always equal the sum of the number of rows in the sets being combined. This operation is the simplest set operation to perform (from the server's point of view), since there is no need for the server to check for overlapping data. The following example demonstrates how you can use the `union all` operator to generate a set of first and last names from multiple tables:

```
mysql> SELECT 'CUST' typ, c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT 'ACTR' typ, a.first_name, a.last_name
-> FROM actor a;
+-----+-----+
| typ | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| CUST | MARY      | SMITH     |
| CUST | PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   |
| CUST | LINDA     | WILLIAMS  |
| CUST | BARBARA   | JONES     |
| CUST | ELIZABETH | BROWN     |
| CUST | JENNIFER  | DAVIS     |
| CUST | MARIA     | MILLER    |
| CUST | SUSAN     | WILSON    |
| CUST | MARGARET | MOORE     |
| CUST | DOROTHY   | TAYLOR    |
| CUST | LISA      | ANDERSON  |
| CUST | NANCY     | THOMAS    |
| CUST | KAREN     | JACKSON   |
...
| ACTR | BURT      | TEMPLE    |
| ACTR | MERYL     | ALLEN     |
| ACTR | JAYNE     | SILVERSTONE |
| ACTR | BELA      | WALKEN    |
| ACTR | REESE     | WEST      |
| ACTR | MARY      | KEITEL    |
| ACTR | JULIA     | FAWCETT   |
| ACTR | THORA     | TEMPLE    |
+-----+-----+
799 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The query returns 799 names, with 599 rows coming from the `customer` table and the other 200 coming from the `actor` table. The first column, which has the alias `typ`, is not necessary, but was added to show the source of each name returned by the query.

Just to drive home the point that the `union all` operator doesn't remove duplicates, here's another version of the previous example, but with two identical queries against the `actor` table:

```
mysql> SELECT 'ACTR' typ, a.first_name, a.last_name
   -> FROM actor a
   -> UNION ALL
   -> SELECT 'ACTR' typ, a.first_name, a.last_name
   -> FROM actor a;
+-----+-----+-----+
| typ | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
| ACTR | PENELOPE | GUINNESS |
| ACTR | NICK     | WAHLBERG |
| ACTR | ED       | CHASE    |
| ACTR | JENNIFER | DAVIS    |
| ACTR | JOHNNY   | LOLLOBRIGIDA |
| ACTR | BETTE   | NICHOLSON |
| ACTR | GRACE   | MOSTEL   |
...
| ACTR | BURT     | TEMPLE   |
| ACTR | MERYL   | ALLEN    |
| ACTR | JAYNE   | SILVERSTONE |
| ACTR | BELA     | WALKEN   |
| ACTR | REESE   | WEST     |
| ACTR | MARY     | KEITEL   |
| ACTR | JULIA   | FAWCETT  |
| ACTR | THORA   | TEMPLE   |
+-----+-----+-----+
400 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

As you can see by the results, the 200 rows from the `actor` table are included twice, for a total of 400 rows.

While you are unlikely to repeat the same query twice in a compound query, here is another compound query that returns duplicate data:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
   -> FROM customer c
   -> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
   -> UNION ALL
   -> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
   -> FROM actor a
   -> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER  | DAVIS    |
| JENNIFER  | DAVIS    |
| JUDY       | DEAN     |
| JODIE      | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE   | DENCH    |
+-----+-----+
```

```
+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

Both queries return the names of people having the initials JD. Of the five rows in the result set, one of them is a duplicate (Jennifer Davis). If you would like your combined table to *exclude* duplicate rows, you need to use the `union` operator instead of `union all`:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> UNION
-> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
| JUDY        | DEAN       |
| JODIE       | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE    | DENCH      |
+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

For this version of the query, only the four distinct names are included in the result set, rather than the five rows returned when using `union all`.

## The `intersect` Operator

The ANSI SQL specification includes the `intersect` operator for performing intersections. Unfortunately, version 8.0 of MySQL does not implement the `intersect` operator. If you are using Oracle or SQL Server 2008, you will be able to use `intersect`; since I am using MySQL for all examples in this book, however, the result sets for the example queries in this section are fabricated and cannot be executed with any versions up to and including version 8.0. I also refrain from showing the MySQL prompt (`mysql>`), since the statements are not being executed by the MySQL server.

If the two queries in a compound query return nonoverlapping data sets, then the intersection will be an empty set. Consider the following query:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
FROM customer c
WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'D%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'T%'
INTERSECT
SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
FROM actor a
WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'D%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'T%';
Empty set (0.04 sec)
```

While there are both actors and customers having the initials DT, these sets are completely nonoverlapping, so the intersection of the two sets yields the empty set. If we switch back to the initials JD, however, the intersection will yield a single row:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
FROM customer c
WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
INTERSECT
SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
FROM actor a
WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

The intersection of these two queries yields Jennifer Davis, which is the only name found in both queries' result sets.

Along with the `intersect` operator, which removes any duplicate rows found in the overlapping region, the ANSI SQL specification calls for an `intersect all` operator, which does not remove duplicates. The only database server that currently implements the `intersect all` operator is IBM's DB2 Universal Server.

## The `except` Operator

The ANSI SQL specification includes the `except` operator for performing the `except` operation. Once again, unfortunately, version 8.0 of MySQL does not implement the `except` operator, so the same rules apply for this section as for the previous section.



If you are using Oracle Database, you will need to use the non-ANSI-compliant `minus` operator instead.

The `except` operator returns the first result set minus any overlap with the second result set. Here's the example from the previous section, but using `except` instead of `intersect`, and with the order of the queries reversed:

```
SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
FROM actor a
WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
EXCEPT
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
FROM customer c
WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%';
```

```

+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+
| JUDY       | DEAN      |
| JODIE      | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE   | DENCH     |
+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

In this version of the query, the result set consists of the three rows from the first query minus Jennifer Davis, who is found in the result sets from both queries. There is also an `except all` operator specified in the ANSI SQL specification, but once again, only IBM's DB2 Universal Server has implemented the `except all` operator.

The `except all` operator is a bit tricky, so here is an example that demonstrates how duplicate data is handled. Let's say you have two data sets that look like the following:

*Set A*

```

+-----+
| actor_id |
+-----+
|    10 |
|    11 |
|    12 |
|    10 |
|    10 |
+-----+

```

*Set B*

```

+-----+
| actor_id |
+-----+
|    10 |
|    10 |
+-----+

```

The operation `A except B` yields the following:

```

+-----+
| actor_id |
+-----+
|    11 |
|    12 |
+-----+

```

If you change the operation to `A except all B`, you will see the following:

```
+-----+
| actor_id |
+-----+
|      10 |
|      11 |
|      12 |
+-----+
```

Therefore, the difference between the two operations is that `except` removes all occurrences of duplicate data from set A, whereas `except all` removes only one occurrence of duplicate data from set A for every occurrence in set B.

## Set Operation Rules

The following sections outline some rules that you must follow when working with compound queries.

### Sorting Compound Query Results

If you want the results of your compound query to be sorted, you can add an `order by` clause after the last query. When specifying column names in the `order by` clause, you will need to choose from the column names in the first query of the compound query. Frequently, the column names are the same for both queries in a compound query, but this does not need to be the case, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT a.first_name fname, a.last_name lname
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> ORDER BY lname, fname;
+-----+-----+
| fname | lname  |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER | DAVIS   |
| JENNIFER | DAVIS   |
| JUDY    | DEAN    |
| JODIE   | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE | DENCH   |
+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The column names specified in the two queries are different in this example. If you specify a column name from the second query in your `order by` clause, you will see the following error:

```
mysql> SELECT a.first_name fname, a.last_name lname
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> ORDER BY last_name, first_name;
ERROR 1054 (42S22): Unknown column 'last_name' in 'order clause'
```

I recommend giving the columns in both queries identical column aliases in order to avoid this issue.

## Set Operation Precedence

If your compound query contains more than two queries using different set operators, you need to think about the order in which to place the queries in your compound statement to achieve the desired results. Consider the following three-query compound statement:

```
mysql> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'M%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'T%'
-> UNION
-> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
| JUDY        | DEAN       |
| JODIE       | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE    | DENCH      |
| MARY        | TANDY      |
| MENA        | TEMPLE     |
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This compound query includes three queries that return sets of nonunique names; the first and second queries are separated with the `union all` operator, while the second and third queries are separated with the `union` operator. While it might not seem to make much difference where the `union` and `union all` operators are placed, it does, in fact, make a difference. Here's the same compound query with the set operators reversed:

```

mysql> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
      -> FROM actor a
      -> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
      -> UNION
      -> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
      -> FROM actor a
      -> WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'M%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'T%'
      -> UNION ALL
      -> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
      -> FROM customer c
      -> WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
| JUDY        | DEAN       |
| JODIE       | DEGENERES |
| JULIANNE    | DENCH      |
| MARY        | TANDY      |
| MENA        | TEMPLE     |
| JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Looking at the results, it's obvious that it *does* make a difference how the compound query is arranged when using different set operators. In general, compound queries containing three or more queries are evaluated in order from top to bottom, but with the following caveats:

- The ANSI SQL specification calls for the `intersect` operator to have precedence over the other set operators.
- You may dictate the order in which queries are combined by enclosing multiple queries in parentheses.

MySQL does not yet allow parentheses in compound queries, but if you are using a different database server, you can wrap adjoining queries in parentheses to override the default top-to-bottom processing of compound queries, as in:

```

SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
FROM actor a
WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'D%'
UNION
(SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
 FROM actor a
 WHERE a.first_name LIKE 'M%' AND a.last_name LIKE 'T%'
 UNION ALL
 SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
 FROM customer c
 WHERE c.first_name LIKE 'J%' AND c.last_name LIKE 'D%'
)

```

For this compound query, the second and third queries would be combined using the `union all` operator, then the results would be combined with the first query using the `union` operator.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises are designed to test your understanding of set operations. See [Appendix B](#) for the answers to these exercises.

### Exercise 6-1

If set A = {L M N O P} and set B = {P Q R S T}, what sets are generated by the following operations?

- A `union` B
- A `union all` B
- A `intersect` B
- A `except` B

### Exercise 6-2

Write a compound query that finds the first and last names of all actors and customers whose last name starts with L.

### Exercise 6-3

Sort the results from Exercise 6-2 by the `last_name` column.

# Data Generation, Manipulation, and Conversion

As I mentioned in the preface, this book strives to teach generic SQL techniques that can be applied across multiple database servers. This chapter, however, deals with the generation, conversion, and manipulation of string, numeric, and temporal data, and the SQL language does not include commands covering this functionality. Rather, built-in functions are used to facilitate data generation, conversion, and manipulation, and while the SQL standard does specify some functions, the database vendors often do not comply with the function specifications.

Therefore, my approach for this chapter is to show you some of the common ways in which data is generated and manipulated within SQL statements and then demonstrate some of the built-in functions implemented by Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle Database, and MySQL. Along with reading this chapter, I strongly recommend you download a reference guide covering all the functions implemented by your server. If you work with more than one database server, there are several reference guides that cover multiple servers, such as Kevin Kline et al.'s *SQL in a Nutshell* and Jonathan Gennick's *SQL Pocket Guide*, both from O'Reilly.

## Working with String Data

When working with string data, you will be using one of the following character data types:

### CHAR

Holds fixed-length, blank-padded strings. MySQL allows CHAR values up to 255 characters in length, Oracle Database permits up to 2,000 characters, and SQL Server allows up to 8,000 characters.

### `varchar`

Holds variable-length strings. MySQL permits up to 65,535 characters in a `varchar` column, Oracle Database (via the `varchar2` type) allows up to 4,000 characters, and SQL Server allows up to 8,000 characters.

### `text` (*MySQL and SQL Server*) or `clob` (*Oracle Database*)

Holds very large variable-length strings (generally referred to as documents in this context). MySQL has multiple text types (`tinytext`, `text`, `mediumtext`, and `longtext`) for documents up to 4 GB in size. SQL Server has a single `text` type for documents up to 2 GB in size, and Oracle Database includes the `clob` data type, which can hold documents up to a whopping 128 TB. SQL Server 2005 also includes the `varchar(max)` data type and recommends its use instead of the `text` type, which will be removed from the server in some future release.

To demonstrate how you can use these various types, I use the following table for some of the examples in this section:

```
CREATE TABLE string_tbl
  (char_fld CHAR(30),
   varchar_fld VARCHAR(30),
   text_fld TEXT
  );
```

The next two subsections show how you can generate and manipulate string data.

## String Generation

The simplest way to populate a character column is to enclose a string in quotes, as in the following examples:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO string_tbl (char_fld, varchar_fld, text_fld)
    -> VALUES ('This is char data',
    ->           'This is varchar data',
    ->           'This is text data');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
```

When inserting string data into a table, remember that if the length of the string exceeds the maximum size for the character column (either the designated maximum or the maximum allowed for the data type), the server will throw an exception. Although this is the default behavior for all three servers, you can configure MySQL and SQL Server to silently truncate the string instead of throwing an exception. To demonstrate how MySQL handles this situation, the following update statement attempts to modify the `varchar_fld` column, whose maximum length is defined as 30, with a string that is 46 characters in length:

```
mysql> UPDATE string_tbl
    -> SET varchar_fld = 'This is a piece of extremely long varchar data';
ERROR 1406 (22001): Data too long for column 'varchar_fld' at row 1
```

Since MySQL 6.0, the default behavior is now “strict” mode, which means that exceptions are thrown when problems arise, whereas in older versions of the server the string would have been truncated and a warning issued. If you would rather have the engine truncate the string and issue a warning instead of raising an exception, you can opt to be in ANSI mode. The following example shows how to check which mode you are in and then how to change the mode using the `set` command:

```
mysql> SELECT @@session.sql_mode;
+-----+
| @@session.sql_mode |
+-----+
| STRICT_TRANS_TABLES,NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SET sql_mode='ansi';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.08 sec)

mysql> SELECT @@session.sql_mode;
+-----+
| @@session.sql_mode |
+-----+
| REAL_AS_FLOAT,PIPES_AS_CONCAT,ANSI_QUOTES,IGNORE_SPACE,ONLY_FULL_GROUP_BY,ANSI |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

If you rerun the previous update statement, you will find that the column has been modified, but the following warning is generated:

```
mysql> SHOW WARNINGS;
+-----+-----+-----+
| Level | Code | Message |
+-----+-----+-----+
| Warning | 1265 | Data truncated for column 'vchar_fld' at row 1 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

If you retrieve the `vchar_fld` column, you will see that the string has indeed been truncated:

```
mysql> SELECT vchar_fld
-> FROM string_tbl;
+-----+
| vchar_fld |
+-----+
| This is a piece of extremely l |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.05 sec)
```

As you can see, only the first 30 characters of the 46-character string made it into the `vchar_fld` column. The best way to avoid string truncation (or exceptions, in the

case of Oracle Database or MySQL in strict mode) when working with `varchar` columns is to set the upper limit of a column to a high enough value to handle the longest strings that might be stored in the column (keeping in mind that the server allocates only enough space to store the string, so it is not wasteful to set a high upper limit for `varchar` columns).

## Including single quotes

Since strings are demarcated by single quotes, you will need to be alert for strings that include single quotes or apostrophes. For example, you won't be able to insert the following string because the server will think that the apostrophe in the word *doesn't* marks the end of the string:

```
UPDATE string_tbl  
SET text_fld = 'This string doesn't work';
```

To make the server ignore the apostrophe in the word *doesn't*, you will need to add an escape to the string so that the server treats the apostrophe like any other character in the string. All three servers allow you to escape a single quote by adding another single quote directly before, as in:

```
mysql> UPDATE string_tbl  
-> SET text_fld = 'This string didn''t work, but it does now';  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)  
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```



Oracle Database and MySQL users may also choose to escape a single quote by adding a backslash character immediately before, as in:

```
UPDATE string_tbl SET text_fld =  
'This string didn\'t work, but it does now'
```

If you retrieve a string for use in a screen or report field, you don't need to do anything special to handle embedded quotes:

```
mysql> SELECT text_fld  
-> FROM string_tbl;  
+-----+  
| text_fld |  
+-----+  
| This string didn't work, but it does now |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

However, if you are retrieving the string to add to a file that another program will read, you may want to include the escape as part of the retrieved string. If you are using MySQL, you can use the built-in function `quote()`, which places quotes around

the entire string *and* adds escapes to any single quotes/apostrophes within the string. Here's what our string looks like when retrieved via the `quote()` function:

```
mysql> SELECT quote(text_fld)
      -> FROM string_tbl;
+-----+
| QUOTE(text_fld) |
+-----+
| 'This string didn\'t work, but it does now' |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.04 sec)
```

When retrieving data for data export, you may want to use the `quote()` function for all non-system-generated character columns, such as a `customer_notes` column.

## Including special characters

If your application is multinational in scope, you might find yourself working with strings that include characters that do not appear on your keyboard. When working with the French and German languages, for example, you might need to include accented characters such as é and ö. The SQL Server and MySQL servers include the built-in function `char()` so that you can build strings from any of the 255 characters in the ASCII character set (Oracle Database users can use the `chr()` function). To demonstrate, the next example retrieves a typed string and its equivalent built via individual characters:

```
mysql> SELECT 'abcdefg', CHAR(97,98,99,100,101,102,103);
+-----+-----+
| abcdefg | CHAR(97,98,99,100,101,102,103) |
+-----+-----+
| abcdefg | abcdefg           |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

Thus, the 97th character in the ASCII character set is the letter *a*. While the characters shown in the preceding example are not special, the following examples show the location of the accented characters along with other special characters, such as currency symbols:

```
mysql> SELECT CHAR(128,129,130,131,132,133,134,135,136,137);
+-----+
| CHAR(128,129,130,131,132,133,134,135,136,137) |
+-----+
| Çüéâäàâçéë |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> SELECT CHAR(138,139,140,141,142,143,144,145,146,147);
+-----+
| CHAR(138,139,140,141,142,143,144,145,146,147) |
+-----+
```

```

+-----+
| ëïîïÃÃÆÆô |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> SELECT CHAR(148,149,150,151,152,153,154,155,156,157);
+-----+
| CHAR(148,149,150,151,152,153,154,155,156,157) |
+-----+
| öðûùýðÛøEØ |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CHAR(158,159,160,161,162,163,164,165);
+-----+
| CHAR(158,159,160,161,162,163,164,165) |
+-----+
| xfáíóÚñÑ |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

```



I am using the `utf8mb4` character set for the examples in this section. If your session is configured for a different character set, you will see a different set of characters than what is shown here. The same concepts apply, but you will need to familiarize yourself with the layout of your character set to locate specific characters.

Building strings character by character can be quite tedious, especially if only a few of the characters in the string are accented. Fortunately, you can use the `concat()` function to concatenate individual strings, some of which you can type while others you can generate via the `char()` function. For example, the following shows how to build the phrase *danke schön* using the `concat()` and `char()` functions:

```

mysql> SELECT CONCAT('danke sch', CHAR(148), 'n');
+-----+
| CONCAT('danke sch', CHAR(148), 'n') |
+-----+
| danke schön |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

```



Oracle Database users can use the concatenation operator (||) instead of the concat() function, as in:

```
SELECT 'danke sch' || CHR(148) || 'n'  
FROM dual;
```

SQL Server does not include a concat() function, so you will need to use the concatenation operator (+), as in:

```
SELECT 'danke sch' + CHAR(148) + 'n'
```

If you have a character and need to find its ASCII equivalent, you can use the ascii() function, which takes the leftmost character in the string and returns a number:

```
mysql> SELECT ASCII('ö');  
+-----+  
| ASCII('ö') |  
+-----+  
|      148 |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Using the char(), ascii(), and concat() functions (or concatenation operators), you should be able to work with any Roman language even if you are using a keyboard that does not include accented or special characters.

## String Manipulation

Each database server includes many built-in functions for manipulating strings. This section explores two types of string functions: those that return numbers and those that return strings. Before I begin, however, I reset the data in the `string_tbl` table to the following:

```
mysql> DELETE FROM string_tbl;  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.02 sec)  
  
mysql> INSERT INTO string_tbl (char_fld, varchar_fld, text_fld)  
    -> VALUES ('This string is 28 characters',  
    ->   'This string is 28 characters',  
    ->   'This string is 28 characters');  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
```

### String functions that return numbers

Of the string functions that return numbers, one of the most commonly used is the `length()` function, which returns the number of characters in the string (SQL Server users will need to use the `len()` function). The following query applies the `length()` function to each column in the `string_tbl` table:

```

mysql> SELECT LENGTH(char_fld) char_length,
->      LENGTH(vchar_fld) varchar_length,
->      LENGTH(text_fld) text_length
->   FROM string_tbl;
+-----+-----+-----+
| char_length | varchar_length | text_length |
+-----+-----+-----+
|        28 |           28 |          28 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

```

While the lengths of the `varchar` and `text` columns are as expected, you might have expected the length of the `char` column to be 30, since I told you that strings stored in `char` columns are right-padded with spaces. The MySQL server removes trailing spaces from `char` data when it is retrieved, however, so you will see the same results from all string functions regardless of the type of column in which the strings are stored.

Along with finding the length of a string, you might want to find the location of a substring within a string. For example, if you want to find the position at which the string '`characters`' appears in the `vchar_fld` column, you could use the `position()` function, as demonstrated by the following:

```

mysql> SELECT POSITION('characters' IN vchar_fld)
->   FROM string_tbl;
+-----+
| POSITION('characters' IN vchar_fld) |
+-----+
|                   19 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.12 sec)

```

If the substring cannot be found, the `position()` function returns 0.



For those of you who program in a language such as C or C++, where the first element of an array is at position 0, remember when working with databases that the first character in a string is at position 1. A return value of 0 from `instr()` indicates that the substring could not be found, not that the substring was found at the first position in the string.

If you want to start your search at something other than the first character of your target string, you will need to use the `locate()` function, which is similar to the `position()` function except that it allows an optional third parameter, which is used to define the search's start position. The `locate()` function is also proprietary, whereas the `position()` function is part of the SQL:2003 standard. Here's an example asking

for the position of the string 'is' starting at the fifth character in the varchar\_fld column:

```
mysql> SELECT LOCATE('is', varchar_fld, 5)
   -> FROM string_tbl;
+-----+
| LOCATE('is', varchar_fld, 5) |
+-----+
|                  13 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
```



Oracle Database does not include the `position()` or `locate()` function, but it does include the `instr()` function, which mimics the `position()` function when provided with two arguments and mimics the `locate()` function when provided with three arguments. SQL Server also doesn't include a `position()` or `locate()` function, but it does include the `charindex()` function, which also accepts either two or three arguments similar to Oracle's `instr()` function.

Another function that takes strings as arguments and returns numbers is the string comparison function `strcmp()`. `strcmp()`, which is implemented only by MySQL and has no analog in Oracle Database or SQL Server, takes two strings as arguments and returns one of the following:

- `-1` if the first string comes before the second string in sort order
- `0` if the strings are identical
- `1` if the first string comes after the second string in sort order

To illustrate how the function works, I first show the sort order of five strings using a query and then show how the strings compare to one another using `strcmp()`. Here are the five strings that I insert into the `string_tbl` table:

```
mysql> DELETE FROM string_tbl;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO string_tbl(varchar_fld)
   -> VALUES ('abcd'),
   ->           ('xyz'),
   ->           ('QRSTUV'),
   ->           ('qrstuv'),
   ->           ('12345');
Query OK, 5 rows affected (0.05 sec)
Records: 5  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```

Here are the five strings in their sort order:

```
mysql> SELECT varchar_fld
-> FROM string_tbl
-> ORDER BY varchar_fld;
+-----+
| varchar_fld |
+-----+
| 12345      |
| abcd       |
| QRSTUV    |
| qrstuv    |
| xyz        |
+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The next query makes six comparisons among the five different strings:

```
mysql> SELECT STRCMP('12345','12345') 12345_12345,
->   STRCMP('abcd','xyz') abcd_xyz,
->   STRCMP('abcd','QRSTUV') abcd_QRSTUV,
->   STRCMP('qrstuv','QRSTUV') qrstuv_QRSTUV,
->   STRCMP('12345','xyz') 12345_xyz,
->   STRCMP('xyz','qrstuv') xyz_qrstuv;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 12345_12345 | abcd_xyz | abcd_QRSTUV | qrstuv_QRSTUV | 12345_xyz | xyz_qrstuv |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          0 |      -1 |        -1 |           0 |      -1 |         1 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

The first comparison yields 0, which is to be expected since I compared a string to itself. The fourth comparison also yields 0, which is a bit surprising, since the strings are composed of the same letters, with one string all uppercase and the other all lowercase. The reason for this result is that MySQL's `strcmp()` function is case-insensitive, which is something to remember when using the function. The other four comparisons yield either -1 or 1 depending on whether the first string comes before or after the second string in sort order. For example, `strcmp('abcd','xyz')` yields -1, since the string 'abcd' comes before the string 'xyz'.

Along with the `strcmp()` function, MySQL also allows you to use the `like` and `regexp` operators to compare strings in the `select` clause. Such comparisons will yield 1 (for `true`) or 0 (for `false`). Therefore, these operators allow you to build expressions that return a number, much like the functions described in this section. Here's an example using `like`:

```
mysql> SELECT name, name LIKE '%y' ends_in_y
-> FROM category;
+-----+-----+
| name      | ends_in_y |
+-----+-----+
| Action     |      0 |
| Animation  |      0 |
```

```

| Children      |      0 |
| Classics     |      0 |
| Comedy        |      1 |
| Documentary   |      1 |
| Drama         |      0 |
| Family        |      1 |
| Foreign       |      0 |
| Games         |      0 |
| Horror        |      0 |
| Music         |      0 |
| New           |      0 |
| Sci-Fi        |      0 |
| Sports         |      0 |
| Travel         |      0 |
+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

This example retrieves all the category names, along with an expression that returns 1 if the name ends in “y” or 0 otherwise. If you want to perform more complex pattern matches, you can use the `regexp` operator, as demonstrated by the following:

```

mysql> SELECT name, name REGEXP 'y$' ends_in_y
    -> FROM category;
+-----+-----+
| name      | ends_in_y |
+-----+-----+
| Action     |      0 |
| Animation  |      0 |
| Children   |      0 |
| Classics   |      0 |
| Comedy     |      1 |
| Documentary|      1 |
| Drama      |      0 |
| Family     |      1 |
| Foreign    |      0 |
| Games      |      0 |
| Horror     |      0 |
| Music      |      0 |
| New        |      0 |
| Sci-Fi     |      0 |
| Sports     |      0 |
| Travel     |      0 |
+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The second column of this query returns 1 if the value stored in the `name` column matches the given regular expression.



Microsoft SQL Server and Oracle Database users can achieve similar results by building case expressions, which I describe in detail in [Chapter 11](#).

## String functions that return strings

In some cases, you will need to modify existing strings, either by extracting part of the string or by adding additional text to the string. Every database server includes multiple functions to help with these tasks. Before I begin, I once again reset the data in the `string_tbl` table:

```
mysql> DELETE FROM string_tbl;
Query OK, 5 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO string_tbl (text_fld)
-> VALUES ('This string was 29 characters');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
```

Earlier in the chapter, I demonstrated the use of the `concat()` function to help build words that include accented characters. The `concat()` function is useful in many other situations, including when you need to append additional characters to a stored string. For instance, the following example modifies the string stored in the `text_fld` column by tacking an additional phrase on the end:

```
mysql> UPDATE string_tbl
-> SET text_fld = CONCAT(text_fld, ', but now it is longer');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.03 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

The contents of the `text_fld` column are now as follows:

```
mysql> SELECT text_fld
-> FROM string_tbl;
+-----+
| text_fld           |
+-----+
| This string was 29 characters, but now it is longer |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Thus, like all functions that return a string, you can use `concat()` to replace the data stored in a character column.

Another common use for the `concat()` function is to build a string from individual pieces of data. For example, the following query generates a narrative string for each customer:

```
mysql> SELECT concat(first_name, ' ', last_name,
->   ' has been a customer since ', date(create_date)) cust_narrative
-> FROM customer;
```

```

+-----+
| cust_narrative |
+-----+
| MARY SMITH has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| PATRICIA JOHNSON has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| LINDA WILLIAMS has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| BARBARA JONES has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| ELIZABETH BROWN has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| JENNIFER DAVIS has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| MARIA MILLER has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| SUSAN WILSON has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| MARGARET MOORE has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| DOROTHY TAYLOR has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
|
| ...
| RENE MCALISTER has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| EDUARDO HIATT has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| TERRENCE GUNDERSON has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| ENRIQUE FORSYTHE has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| FREDDIE DUGGAN has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| WADE DELVALLE has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
| AUSTIN CINTRON has been a customer since 2006-02-14 |
+
599 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The `concat()` function can handle any expression that returns a string and will even convert numbers and dates to string format, as evidenced by the date column (`create_date`) used as an argument. Although Oracle Database includes the `concat()` function, it will accept only two string arguments, so the previous query will not work on Oracle. Instead, you would need to use the concatenation operator (`||`) rather than a function call, as in:

```

SELECT first_name || ' ' || last_name ||
    ' has been a customer since ' || date(create_date) cust_narrative
FROM customer;

```

SQL Server does not include a `concat()` function, so you would need to use the same approach as the previous query, except that you would use SQL Server's concatenation operator (+) instead of `||`.

While `concat()` is useful for adding characters to the beginning or end of a string, you may also have a need to add or replace characters in the *middle* of a string. All three database servers provide functions for this purpose, but all of them are different, so I demonstrate the MySQL function and then show the functions from the other two servers.

MySQL includes the `insert()` function, which takes four arguments: the original string, the position at which to start, the number of characters to replace, and the replacement string. Depending on the value of the third argument, the function may be used to either insert or replace characters in a string. With a value of 0 for the third

argument, the replacement string is inserted, and any trailing characters are pushed to the right, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT INSERT('goodbye world', 9, 0, 'cruel ') string;
+-----+
| string      |
+-----+
| goodbye cruel world |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

In this example, all characters starting from position 9 are pushed to the right, and the string 'cruel' is inserted. If the third argument is greater than zero, then that number of characters is replaced with the replacement string, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT INSERT('goodbye world', 1, 7, 'hello') string;
+-----+
| string      |
+-----+
| hello world |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

For this example, the first seven characters are replaced with the string 'hello'. Oracle Database does not provide a single function with the flexibility of MySQL's `insert()` function, but Oracle does provide the `replace()` function, which is useful for replacing one substring with another. Here's the previous example reworked to use `replace()`:

```
SELECT REPLACE('goodbye world', 'goodbye', 'hello')
FROM dual;
```

All instances of the string 'goodbye' will be replaced with the string 'hello', resulting in the string 'hello world'. The `replace()` function will replace *every* instance of the search string with the replacement string, so you need to be careful that you don't end up with more replacements than you anticipated.

SQL Server also includes a `replace()` function with the same functionality as Oracle's, but SQL Server also includes a function called `stuff()` with similar functionality to MySQL's `insert()` function. Here's an example:

```
SELECT STUFF('hello world', 1, 5, 'goodbye cruel')
```

When executed, five characters are removed starting at position 1, and then the string 'goodbye cruel' is inserted at the starting position, resulting in the string 'goodbye cruel world'.

Along with inserting characters into a string, you may have a need to *extract* a substring from a string. For this purpose, all three servers include the `substring()` function (although Oracle Database's version is called `substr()`), which extracts a

specified number of characters starting at a specified position. The following example extracts five characters from a string starting at the ninth position:

```
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING('goodbye cruel world', 9, 5);
+-----+
| SUBSTRING('goodbye cruel world', 9, 5) |
+-----+
| cruel |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Along with the functions demonstrated here, all three servers include many more built-in functions for manipulating string data. While many of them are designed for very specific purposes, such as generating the string equivalent of octal or hexadecimal numbers, there are many other general-purpose functions as well, such as functions that remove or add trailing spaces. For more information, consult your server's SQL reference guide, or a general-purpose SQL reference guide such as *SQL in a Nutshell* (O'Reilly).

## Working with Numeric Data

Unlike string data (and temporal data, as you will see shortly), numeric data generation is quite straightforward. You can type a number, retrieve it from another column, or generate it via a calculation. All the usual arithmetic operators (+, -, \*, /) are available for performing calculations, and parentheses may be used to dictate precedence, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT (37 * 59) / (78 - (8 * 6));
+-----+
| (37 * 59) / (78 - (8 * 6)) |
+-----+
| 72.77 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

As I mentioned in [Chapter 2](#), the main concern when storing numeric data is that numbers might be rounded if they are larger than the specified size for a numeric column. For example, the number 9.96 will be rounded to 10.0 if stored in a column defined as `float(3,1)`.

## Performing Arithmetic Functions

Most of the built-in numeric functions are used for specific arithmetic purposes, such as determining the square root of a number. [Table 7-1](#) lists some of the common numeric functions that take a single numeric argument and return a number.

*Table 7-1. Single-argument numeric functions*

Function name	Description
<code>acos( x )</code>	Calculates the arc cosine of $x$
<code>asin( x )</code>	Calculates the arc sine of $x$
<code>atan( x )</code>	Calculates the arc tangent of $x$
<code>cos( x )</code>	Calculates the cosine of $x$
<code>cot( x )</code>	Calculates the cotangent of $x$
<code>exp( x )</code>	Calculates $e^x$
<code>ln( x )</code>	Calculates the natural log of $x$
<code>sin( x )</code>	Calculates the sine of $x$
<code>sqrt( x )</code>	Calculates the square root of $x$
<code>tan( x )</code>	Calculates the tangent of $x$

These functions perform very specific tasks, and I refrain from showing examples for these functions (if you don't recognize a function by name or description, then you probably don't need it). Other numeric functions used for calculations, however, are a bit more flexible and deserve some explanation.

For example, the `modulo` operator, which calculates the remainder when one number is divided into another number, is implemented in MySQL and Oracle Database via the `mod()` function. The following example calculates the remainder when 10 is divided by 4:

```
mysql> SELECT MOD(10,4);
+-----+
| MOD(10,4) |
+-----+
|      2     |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
```

While the `mod()` function is typically used with integer arguments, with MySQL you can also use real numbers, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT MOD(22.75, 5);
+-----+
| MOD(22.75, 5) |
+-----+
|      2.75     |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
```



SQL Server does not have a `mod()` function. Instead, the operator `%` is used for finding remainders. The expression `10 % 4` will therefore yield the value 2.

Another numeric function that takes two numeric arguments is the `pow()` function (or `power()` if you are using Oracle Database or SQL Server), which returns one number raised to the power of a second number, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT POW(2,8);
+-----+
| POW(2,8) |
+-----+
|      256 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.03 sec)
```

Thus, `pow(2,8)` is the MySQL equivalent of specifying  $2^8$ . Since computer memory is allocated in chunks of  $2^x$  bytes, the `pow()` function can be a handy way to determine the exact number of bytes in a certain amount of memory:

```
mysql> SELECT POW(2,10) kilobyte, POW(2,20) megabyte,
->     POW(2,30) gigabyte, POW(2,40) terabyte;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| kilobyte | megabyte | gigabyte | terabyte |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      1024 |   1048576 | 1073741824 | 1099511627776 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

I don't know about you, but I find it easier to remember that a gigabyte is  $2^{30}$  bytes than to remember the number 1,073,741,824.

## Controlling Number Precision

When working with floating-point numbers, you may not always want to interact with or display a number with its full precision. For example, you may store monetary transaction data with a precision to six decimal places, but you might want to round to the nearest hundredth for display purposes. Four functions are useful when limiting the precision of floating-point numbers: `ceil()`, `floor()`, `round()`, and `truncate()`. All three servers include these functions, although Oracle Database includes `trunc()` instead of `truncate()`, and SQL Server includes `ceiling()` instead of `ceil()`.

The `ceil()` and `floor()` functions are used to round either up or down to the closest integer, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT CEIL(72.445), FLOOR(72.445);
+-----+-----+
| CEIL(72.445) | FLOOR(72.445) |
+-----+-----+
|          73 |           72 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.06 sec)
```

Thus, any number between 72 and 73 will be evaluated as 73 by the `ceil()` function and 72 by the `floor()` function. Remember that `ceil()` will round up even if the decimal portion of a number is very small, and `floor()` will round down even if the decimal portion is quite significant, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT CEIL(72.000000001), FLOOR(72.999999999);
+-----+-----+
| CEIL(72.000000001) | FLOOR(72.999999999) |
+-----+-----+
|          73 |           72 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

If this is a bit too severe for your application, you can use the `round()` function to round up or down from the *midpoint* between two integers, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT ROUND(72.49999), ROUND(72.5), ROUND(72.50001);
+-----+-----+-----+
| ROUND(72.49999) | ROUND(72.5) | ROUND(72.50001) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|          72 |           73 |           73 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Using `round()`, any number whose decimal portion is halfway or more between two integers will be rounded up, whereas the number will be rounded down if the decimal portion is anything less than halfway between the two integers.

Most of the time, you will want to keep at least some part of the decimal portion of a number rather than rounding to the nearest integer; the `round()` function allows an optional second argument to specify how many digits to the right of the decimal place to round to. The next example shows how you can use the second argument to round the number 72.0909 to one, two, and three decimal places:

```
mysql> SELECT ROUND(72.0909, 1), ROUND(72.0909, 2), ROUND(72.0909, 3);
+-----+-----+-----+
| ROUND(72.0909, 1) | ROUND(72.0909, 2) | ROUND(72.0909, 3) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|          72.1 |           72.09 |        72.091 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Like the `round()` function, the `truncate()` function allows an optional second argument to specify the number of digits to the right of the decimal, but `truncate()` simply discards the unwanted digits without rounding. The next example shows how the number 72.0909 would be truncated to one, two, and three decimal places:

```
mysql> SELECT TRUNCATE(72.0909, 1), TRUNCATE(72.0909, 2),
->      TRUNCATE(72.0909, 3);
+-----+-----+-----+
| TRUNCATE(72.0909, 1) | TRUNCATE(72.0909, 2) | TRUNCATE(72.0909, 3) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|          72.0 |           72.09 |        72.090 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```



SQL Server does not include a `truncate()` function. Instead, the `round()` function allows for an optional third argument that, if present and nonzero, calls for the number to be truncated rather than rounded.

Both `truncate()` and `round()` also allow a *negative* value for the second argument, meaning that numbers to the *left* of the decimal place are truncated or rounded. This might seem like a strange thing to do at first, but there are valid applications. For example, you might sell a product that can be purchased only in units of 10. If a customer were to order 17 units, you could choose from one of the following methods to modify the customer's order quantity:

```
mysql> SELECT ROUND(17, -1), TRUNCATE(17, -1);
+-----+-----+
| ROUND(17, -1) | TRUNCATE(17, -1) |
+-----+-----+
|          20 |           10 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

If the product in question is thumbtacks, then it might not make much difference to your bottom line whether you sold the customer 10 or 20 thumbtacks when only 17 were requested; if you are selling Rolex watches, however, your business may fare better by rounding.

## Handling Signed Data

If you are working with numeric columns that allow negative values (in [Chapter 2](#), I showed how a numeric column may be labeled *unsigned*, meaning that only positive numbers are allowed), several numeric functions might be of use. Let's say, for example, that you are asked to generate a report showing the current status of a set of bank accounts using the following data from the `account` table:

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| account_id | acct_type     | balance |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      123 | MONEY MARKET |   785.22 |
|      456 | SAVINGS       |    0.00 |
|      789 | CHECKING     | -324.22 |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

The following query returns three columns useful for generating the report:

```
mysql> SELECT account_id, SIGN(balance), ABS(balance)
-> FROM account;
+-----+-----+-----+
| account_id | SIGN(balance) | ABS(balance) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      123 |           1 |      785.22 |
|      456 |           0 |       0.00 |
|      789 |          -1 |      324.22 |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The second column uses the `sign()` function to return `-1` if the account balance is negative, `0` if the account balance is zero, and `1` if the account balance is positive. The third column returns the absolute value of the account balance via the `abs()` function.

## Working with Temporal Data

Of the three types of data discussed in this chapter (character, numeric, and temporal), temporal data is the most involved when it comes to data generation and manipulation. Some of the complexity of temporal data is caused by the myriad ways in which a single date and time can be described. For example, the date on which I wrote this paragraph can be described in all the following ways:

- Wednesday, June 5, 2019
- 6/05/2019 2:14:56 P.M. EST
- 6/05/2019 19:14:56 GMT
- 1562019 (Julian format)
- Star date [-4] 97026.79 14:14:56 (*Star Trek* format)

While some of these differences are purely a matter of formatting, most of the complexity has to do with your frame of reference, which we explore in the next section.

## Dealing with Time Zones

Because people around the world prefer that noon coincides roughly with the sun's peak at their location, there has never been a serious attempt to coerce everyone to

use a universal clock. Instead, the world has been sliced into 24 imaginary sections, called *time zones*; within a particular time zone, everyone agrees on the current time, whereas people in different time zones do not. While this seems simple enough, some geographic regions shift their time by one hour twice a year (implementing what is known as *daylight saving time*) and some do not, so the time difference between two points on Earth might be four hours for one-half of the year and five hours for the other half of the year. Even within a single time zone, different regions may or may not adhere to daylight saving time, causing different clocks in the same time zone to agree for one-half of the year but be one hour different for the rest of the year.

While the computer age has exacerbated the issue, people have been dealing with time zone differences since the early days of naval exploration. To ensure a common point of reference for timekeeping, fifteenth-century navigators set their clocks to the time of day in Greenwich, England. This became known as *Greenwich Mean Time*, or GMT. All other time zones can be described by the number of hours' difference from GMT; for example, the time zone for the Eastern United States, known as *Eastern Standard Time*, can be described as GMT -5:00, or five hours earlier than GMT.

Today, we use a variation of GMT called *Coordinated Universal Time*, or UTC, which is based on an atomic clock (or, to be more precise, the average time of 200 atomic clocks in 50 locations worldwide, which is referred to as *Universal Time*). Both SQL Server and MySQL provide functions that will return the current UTC timestamp (`getutcdate()` for SQL Server and `utc_timestamp()` for MySQL).

Most database servers default to the time zone setting of the server on which it resides and provide tools for modifying the time zone if needed. For example, a database used to store stock exchange transactions from around the world would generally be configured to use UTC time, whereas a database used to store transactions at a particular retail establishment might use the server's time zone.

MySQL keeps two different time zone settings: a global time zone and a session time zone, which may be different for each user logged in to a database. You can see both settings via the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT @@global.time_zone, @@session.time_zone;
+-----+-----+
| @@global.time_zone | @@session.time_zone |
+-----+-----+
| SYSTEM           | SYSTEM           |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

A value of `system` tells you that the server is using the time zone setting from the server on which the database resides.

If you are sitting at a computer in Zurich, Switzerland, and you open a session across the network to a MySQL server situated in New York, you may want to change the time zone setting for your session, which you can do via the following command:

```
mysql> SET time_zone = 'Europe/Zurich';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.18 sec)
```

If you check the time zone settings again, you will see the following:

```
mysql> SELECT @@global.time_zone, @@session.time_zone;
+-----+-----+
| @@global.time_zone | @@session.time_zone |
+-----+-----+
| SYSTEM           | Europe/Zurich      |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

All dates displayed in your session will now conform to Zurich time.



Oracle Database users can change the time zone setting for a session via the following command:

```
ALTER SESSION TIMEZONE = 'Europe/Zurich'
```

## Generating Temporal Data

You can generate temporal data via any of the following means:

- Copying data from an existing `date`, `datetime`, or `time` column
- Executing a built-in function that returns a `date`, `datetime`, or `time`
- Building a string representation of the temporal data to be evaluated by the server

To use the last method, you will need to understand the various components used in formatting dates.

### String representations of temporal data

Table 2-4 in Chapter 2 presented the more popular date components; to refresh your memory, Table 7-2 shows these same components.

*Table 7-2. Date format components*

Component	Definition	Range
YYYY	Year, including century	1000 to 9999
MM	Month	01 (January) to 12 (December)
DD	Day	01 to 31

Component	Definition	Range
HH	Hour	00 to 23
HHH	Hours (elapsed)	-838 to 838
MI	Minute	00 to 59
SS	Second	00 to 59

To build a string that the server can interpret as a `date`, `datetime`, or `time`, you need to put the various components together in the order shown in [Table 7-3](#).

*Table 7-3. Required date components*

Type	Default format
<code>date</code>	YYYY-MM-DD
<code>datetime</code>	YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS
<code>timestamp</code>	YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS
<code>time</code>	HHH:MI:SS

Thus, to populate a `datetime` column with 3:30 P.M. on September 17, 2019, you will need to build the following string:

```
'2019-09-17 15:30:00'
```

If the server is expecting a `datetime` value, such as when updating a `datetime` column or when calling a built-in function that takes a `datetime` argument, you can provide a properly formatted string with the required date components, and the server will do the conversion for you. For example, here's a statement used to modify the return date of a film rental:

```
UPDATE rental
SET return_date = '2019-09-17 15:30:00'
WHERE rental_id = 99999;
```

The server determines that the string provided in the `set` clause must be a `datetime` value, since the string is being used to populate a `datetime` column. Therefore, the server will attempt to convert the string for you by parsing the string into the six components (year, month, day, hour, minute, second) included in the default `date time` format.

### String-to-date conversions

If the server is *not* expecting a `datetime` value or if you would like to represent the `datetime` using a nondefault format, you will need to tell the server to convert the string to a `datetime`. For example, here is a simple query that returns a `datetime` value using the `cast()` function:

```
mysql> SELECT CAST('2019-09-17 15:30:00' AS DATETIME);
+-----+
| CAST('2019-09-17 15:30:00' AS DATETIME) |
+-----+
| 2019-09-17 15:30:00 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

We cover the `cast()` function at the end of this chapter. While this example demonstrates how to build `datetime` values, the same logic applies to the `date` and `time` types as well. The following query uses the `cast()` function to generate a `date` value and a `time` value:

```
mysql> SELECT CAST('2019-09-17' AS DATE) date_field,
->     CAST('108:17:57' AS TIME) time_field;
+-----+-----+
| date_field | time_field |
+-----+-----+
| 2019-09-17 | 108:17:57 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

You might, of course, explicitly convert your strings even when the server is expecting a `date`, `datetime`, or `time` value, rather than allowing the server to do an implicit conversion.

When strings are converted to temporal values—whether explicitly or implicitly—you must provide all the date components in the required order. While some servers are quite strict regarding the date format, the MySQL server is quite lenient about the separators used between the components. For example, MySQL will accept all of the following strings as valid representations of 3:30 P.M. on September 17, 2019:

```
'2019-09-17 15:30:00'  
'2019/09/17 15:30:00'  
'2019,09,17,15,30,00'  
'20190917153000'
```

Although this gives you a bit more flexibility, you may find yourself trying to generate a temporal value *without* the default date components; the next section demonstrates a built-in function that is far more flexible than the `cast()` function.

## Functions for generating dates

If you need to generate temporal data from a string and the string is not in the proper form to use the `cast()` function, you can use a built-in function that allows you to provide a format string along with the date string. MySQL includes the `str_to_date()` function for this purpose. Say, for example, that you pull the string '`September 17, 2019`' from a file and need to use it to update a `date` column. Since

the string is not in the required YYYY-MM-DD format, you can use `str_to_date()` instead of reformatting the string so that you can use the `cast()` function, as in:

```
UPDATE rental
SET return_date = STR_TO_DATE('September 17, 2019', '%M %d, %Y')
WHERE rental_id = 99999;
```

The second argument in the call to `str_to_date()` defines the format of the date string, with, in this case, a month name (%M), a numeric day (%d), and a four-digit numeric year (%Y). While there are more than 30 recognized format components, [Table 7-4](#) defines the dozen or so of the most commonly used components.

*Table 7-4. Date format components*

Format component	Description
%M	Month name (January to December)
%m	Month numeric (01 to 12)
%d	Day numeric (01 to 31)
%j	Day of year (001 to 366)
%W	Weekday name (Sunday to Saturday)
%Y	Year, four-digit numeric
%y	Year, two-digit numeric
%H	Hour (00 to 23)
%h	Hour (01 to 12)
%i	Minutes (00 to 59)
%s	Seconds (00 to 59)
%f	Microseconds (000000 to 999999)
%p	A.M. or P.M.

The `str_to_date()` function returns a `datetime`, `date`, or `time` value depending on the contents of the format string. For example, if the format string includes only %H, %i, and %s, then a `time` value will be returned.



Oracle Database users can use the `to_date()` function in the same manner as MySQL's `str_to_date()` function. SQL Server includes a `convert()` function that is not quite as flexible as MySQL and Oracle Database; rather than supplying a custom format string, your date string must conform to one of 21 predefined formats.

If you are trying to generate the *current* date/time, then you won't need to build a string, because the following built-in functions will access the system clock and return the current date and/or time as a string for you:

```
mysql> SELECT CURRENT_DATE(), CURRENT_TIME(), CURRENT_TIMESTAMP();
+-----+-----+-----+
| CURRENT_DATE() | CURRENT_TIME() | CURRENT_TIMESTAMP() |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 2019-06-05     | 16:54:36      | 2019-06-05 16:54:36 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.12 sec)
```

The values returned by these functions are in the default format for the temporal type being returned. Oracle Database will include `current_date()` and `current_timestamp()` but not `current_time()`, and Microsoft SQL Server includes only the `current_timestamp()` function.

## Manipulating Temporal Data

This section explores the built-in functions that take date arguments and return dates, strings, or numbers.

### Temporal functions that return dates

Many of the built-in temporal functions take one date as an argument and return another date. MySQL's `date_add()` function, for example, allows you to add any kind of interval (e.g., days, months, years) to a specified date to generate another date. Here's an example that demonstrates how to add five days to the current date:

```
mysql> SELECT DATE_ADD(CURRENT_DATE(), INTERVAL 5 DAY);
+-----+
| DATE_ADD(CURRENT_DATE(), INTERVAL 5 DAY) |
+-----+
| 2019-06-10                                |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.06 sec)
```

The second argument is composed of three elements: the `interval` keyword, the desired quantity, and the type of interval. [Table 7-5](#) shows some of the commonly used interval types.

*Table 7-5. Common interval types*

Interval name	Description
second	Number of seconds
minute	Number of minutes
hour	Number of hours
day	Number of days
month	Number of months
year	Number of years
minute_second	Number of minutes and seconds, separated by ":"

Interval name	Description
hour_second	Number of hours, minutes, and seconds, separated by ":"
year_month	Number of years and months, separated by "-"

While the first six types listed in [Table 7-5](#) are pretty straightforward, the last three types require a bit more explanation since they have multiple elements. For example, if you are told that a film was actually returned 3 hours, 27 minutes, and 11 seconds later than what was originally specified, you can fix it via the following:

```
UPDATE rental
SET return_date = DATE_ADD(return_date, INTERVAL '3:27:11' HOUR_SECOND)
WHERE rental_id = 99999;
```

In this example, the `date_add()` function takes the value in the `return_date` column and adds 3 hours, 27 minutes, and 11 seconds to it. Then it uses the value that results to modify the `return_date` column.

Or, if you work in HR and found out that employee ID 4789 claimed to be older than he actually is, you could add 9 years and 11 months to his birth date, as in:

```
UPDATE employee
SET birth_date = DATE_ADD(birth_date, INTERVAL '9-11' YEAR_MONTH)
WHERE emp_id = 4789;
```



SQL Server users can accomplish the previous example using the `dateadd()` function:

```
UPDATE employee
SET birth_date =
    DATEADD(MONTH, 119, birth_date)
WHERE emp_id = 4789
```

SQL Server doesn't have combined intervals (i.e., `year_month`), so I converted 9 years and 11 months to 119 months.

Oracle Database users can use the `add_months()` function for this example, as in:

```
UPDATE employee
SET birth_date = ADD_MONTHS(birth_date, 119)
WHERE emp_id = 4789;
```

There are some cases where you want to add an interval to a date, and you know where you want to arrive but not how many days it takes to get there. For example, let's say that a bank customer logs on to the online banking system and schedules a transfer for the end of the month. Rather than writing some code that figures out the current month and then looks up the number of days in that month, you can call the `last_day()` function, which does the work for you (both MySQL and Oracle Database include the `last_day()` function; SQL Server has no comparable function). If

the customer asks for the transfer on September 17, 2019, you could find the last day of September via the following:

```
mysql> SELECT LAST_DAY('2019-09-17');
+-----+
| LAST_DAY('2019-09-17') |
+-----+
| 2019-09-30           |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.10 sec)
```

Whether you provide a `date` or `datetime` value, the `last_day()` function always returns a `date`. Although this function may not seem like an enormous time-saver, the underlying logic can be tricky if you're trying to find the last day of February and need to figure out whether the current year is a leap year.

### Temporal functions that return strings

Most of the temporal functions that return string values are used to extract a portion of a date or time. For example, MySQL includes the `dayname()` function to determine which day of the week a certain date falls on, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT DAYNAME('2019-09-18');
+-----+
| DAYNAME('2019-09-18') |
+-----+
| Wednesday            |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Many such functions are included with MySQL for extracting information from date values, but I recommend that you use the `extract()` function instead, since it's easier to remember a few variations of one function than to remember a dozen different functions. Additionally, the `extract()` function is part of the SQL:2003 standard and has been implemented by Oracle Database as well as MySQL.

The `extract()` function uses the same interval types as the `date_add()` function (see [Table 7-5](#)) to define which element of the date interests you. For example, if you want to extract just the year portion of a `datetime` value, you can do the following:

```
mysql> SELECT EXTRACT(YEAR FROM '2019-09-18 22:19:05');
+-----+
| EXTRACT(YEAR FROM '2019-09-18 22:19:05') |
+-----+
| 2019 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```



SQL Server doesn't include an implementation of `extract()`, but it does include the `datepart()` function. Here's how you would extract the year from a `datetime` value using `datepart()`:

```
SELECT DATEPART(YEAR, GETDATE())
```

## Temporal functions that return numbers

Earlier in this chapter, I showed you a function used to add a given interval to a date value, thus generating another date value. Another common activity when working with dates is to take *two* date values and determine the number of intervals (days, weeks, years) *between* the two dates. For this purpose, MySQL includes the function `datediff()`, which returns the number of full days between two dates. For example, if I want to know the number of days that my kids will be out of school this summer, I can do the following:

```
mysql> SELECT DATEDIFF('2019-09-03', '2019-06-21');
+-----+
| DATEDIFF('2019-09-03', '2019-06-21') |
+-----+
|                               74 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Thus, I will have to endure 74 days of poison ivy, mosquito bites, and scraped knees before the kids are safely back at school. The `datediff()` function ignores the time of day in its arguments. Even if I include a time of day, setting it to one second until midnight for the first date and to one second after midnight for the second date, those times will have no effect on the calculation:

```
mysql> SELECT DATEDIFF('2019-09-03 23:59:59', '2019-06-21 00:00:01');
+-----+
| DATEDIFF('2019-09-03 23:59:59', '2019-06-21 00:00:01') |
+-----+
|                               74 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

If I switch the arguments and have the earlier date first, `datediff()` will return a negative number, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT DATEDIFF('2019-06-21', '2019-09-03');
+-----+
| DATEDIFF('2019-06-21', '2019-09-03') |
+-----+
|                               -74 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```



SQL Server also includes the `datediff()` function, but it is more flexible than the MySQL implementation in that you can specify the interval type (i.e., year, month, day, hour) instead of counting only the number of days between two dates. Here's how SQL Server would accomplish the previous example:

```
SELECT DATEDIFF(DAY, '2019-06-21', '2019-09-03')
```

Oracle Database allows you to determine the number of days between two dates simply by subtracting one date from another.

## Conversion Functions

Earlier in this chapter, I showed you how to use the `cast()` function to convert a string to a `datetime` value. While every database server includes a number of proprietary functions used to convert data from one type to another, I recommend using the `cast()` function, which is included in the SQL:2003 standard and has been implemented by MySQL, Oracle Database, and Microsoft SQL Server.

To use `cast()`, you provide a value or expression, the `as` keyword, and the type to which you want the value converted. Here's an example that converts a string to an integer:

```
mysql> SELECT CAST('1456328' AS SIGNED INTEGER);
+-----+
| CAST('1456328' AS SIGNED INTEGER) |
+-----+
|                      1456328 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

When converting a string to a number, the `cast()` function will attempt to convert the entire string from left to right; if any nonnumeric characters are found in the string, the conversion halts without an error. Consider the following example:

```
mysql> SELECT CAST('999ABC111' AS UNSIGNED INTEGER);
+-----+
| CAST('999ABC111' AS UNSIGNED INTEGER) |
+-----+
|                      999 |
+-----+
1 row in set, 1 warning (0.08 sec)

mysql> show warnings;
+-----+-----+-----+
| Level | Code | Message          |
+-----+-----+-----+
| Warning | 1292 | Truncated incorrect INTEGER value: '999ABC111' |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.07 sec)
```

In this case, the first three digits of the string are converted, whereas the rest of the string is discarded, resulting in a value of 999. The server did, however, issue a warning to let you know that not all the string was converted.

If you are converting a string to a date, `time`, or `datetime` value, then you will need to stick with the default formats for each type, since you can't provide the `cast()` function with a format string. If your date string is not in the default format (i.e., `YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS` for `datetime` types), then you will need to resort to using another function, such as MySQL's `str_to_date()` function described earlier in the chapter.

## Test Your Knowledge

These exercises are designed to test your understanding of some of the built-in functions shown in this chapter. See [Appendix B](#) for the answers.

### Exercise 7-1

Write a query that returns the 17th through 25th characters of the string 'Please find the substring in this string'.

### Exercise 7-2

Write a query that returns the absolute value and sign (-1, 0, or 1) of the number -25.76823. Also return the number rounded to the nearest hundredth.

### Exercise 7-3

Write a query to return just the month portion of the current date.



# Grouping and Aggregates

Data is generally stored at the lowest level of granularity needed by any of a database's users; if Chuck in accounting needs to look at individual customer transactions, then there needs to be a table in the database that stores individual transactions. That doesn't mean, however, that all users must deal with the data as it is stored in the database. The focus of this chapter is on how data can be grouped and aggregated to allow users to interact with it at some higher level of granularity than what is stored in the database.

## Grouping Concepts

Sometimes you will want to find trends in your data that will require the database server to cook the data a bit before you can generate the results you are looking for. For example, let's say that you are in charge of sending coupons for free rentals to your best customers. You could issue a simple query to look at the raw data:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id FROM rental;
+-----+
| customer_id |
+-----+
|      1 |
|      1 |
|      1 |
|      1 |
|      1 |
|      1 |
|      1 |
|
|      ...    |
|      599 |
|      599 |
|      599 |
|      599 |
```

```
|      599 |
|      599 |
+-----+
16044 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

With 599 customers spanning more than 16,000 rental records, it isn't feasible to determine which customers have rented the most films by looking at the raw data. Instead, you can ask the database server to group the data for you by using the `group by` clause. Here's the same query but employing a `group by` clause to group the rental data by customer ID:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id
-> FROM rental
-> GROUP BY customer_id;
+-----+
| customer_id |
+-----+
|      1 |
|      2 |
|      3 |
|      4 |
|      5 |
|      6 |
...
|      594 |
|      595 |
|      596 |
|      597 |
|      598 |
|      599 |
+-----+
599 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The result set contains one row for each distinct value in the `customer_id` column, resulting in 599 rows instead of the full 16,044 rows. The reason for the smaller result set is that some of the customers rented more than one film. To see how many films each customer rented, you can use an *aggregate function* in the `select` clause to count the number of rows in each group:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*)
-> FROM rental
-> GROUP BY customer_id;
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
|      1 |      32 |
|      2 |      27 |
|      3 |      26 |
|      4 |      22 |
|      5 |      38 |
|      6 |      28 |
```

```
...
|      594 |      27 |
|      595 |      30 |
|      596 |      28 |
|      597 |      25 |
|      598 |      22 |
|      599 |      19 |
+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

The aggregate function `count()` counts the number of rows in each group, and the asterisk tells the server to count everything in the group. Using the combination of a `group by` clause and the `count()` aggregate function, you are able to generate exactly the data needed to answer the business question without having to look at the raw data.

Looking at the results, you can see that 32 films were rented by customer ID 1, and 25 films were rented by the customer ID 597. In order to determine which customers have rented the most films, simply add an `order by` clause:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*)
    -> FROM rental
    -> GROUP BY customer_id
    -> ORDER BY 2 DESC;
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
|      148 |      46 |
|      526 |      45 |
|      236 |      42 |
|      144 |      42 |
|      75 |      41 |
...
|      248 |      15 |
|      110 |      14 |
|      281 |      14 |
|       61 |      14 |
|      318 |      12 |
+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

Now that the results are sorted, you can easily see that customer ID 148 has rented the most films (46), while customer ID 318 has rented the fewest films (12).

When grouping data, you may need to filter out undesired data from your result set based on groups of data rather than based on the raw data. Since the `group by` clause runs *after* the `where` clause has been evaluated, you cannot add filter conditions to your `where` clause for this purpose. For example, here's an attempt to filter out any customers who have rented fewer than 40 films:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*)
-> FROM rental
-> WHERE count(*) >= 40
-> GROUP BY customer_id;
ERROR 1111 (HY000): Invalid use of group function
```

You cannot refer to the aggregate function `count(*)` in your `where` clause, because the groups have not yet been generated at the time the `where` clause is evaluated. Instead, you must put your group filter conditions in the `having` clause. Here's what the query would look like using `having`:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*)
-> FROM rental
-> GROUP BY customer_id
-> HAVING count(*) >= 40;
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
|      75 |      41 |
|     144 |      42 |
|     148 |      46 |
|     197 |      40 |
|    236 |      42 |
|    469 |      40 |
|    526 |      45 |
+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

Because those groups containing fewer than 40 members have been filtered out via the `having` clause, the result set now contains only those customers who have rented 40 or more films.

## Aggregate Functions

Aggregate functions perform a specific operation over all rows in a group. Although every database server has its own set of specialty aggregate functions, the common aggregate functions implemented by all major servers include:

`max()`  
Returns the maximum value within a set

`min()`  
Returns the minimum value within a set

`avg()`  
Returns the average value across a set

`sum()`  
Returns the sum of the values across a set

`count()`

Returns the number of values in a set

Here's a query that uses all of the common aggregate functions to analyze the data on film rental payments:

```
mysql> SELECT MAX(amount) max_amt,
->   MIN(amount) min_amt,
->   AVG(amount) avg_amt,
->   SUM(amount) tot_amt,
->   COUNT(*) num_payments
->   FROM payment;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| max_amt | min_amt | avg_amt | tot_amt | num_payments |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 11.99 | 0.00 | 4.200667 | 67416.51 | 16049 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.09 sec)
```

The results from this query tell you that, across the 16,049 rows in the `payment` table, the maximum amount paid to rent a film was \$11.99, the minimum amount was \$0, the average payment was \$4.20, and the total of all rental payments was \$67,416.51. Hopefully, this gives you an appreciation for the role of these aggregate functions; the next subsections further clarify how you can utilize these functions.

## Implicit Versus Explicit Groups

In the previous example, every value returned by the query is generated by an aggregate function. Since there is no `group by` clause, there is a single, *implicit* group (all rows in the `payment` table).

In most cases, however, you will want to retrieve additional columns along with columns generated by aggregate functions. What if, for example, you wanted to extend the previous query to execute the same five aggregate functions for *each* customer, instead of across all customers? For this query, you would want to retrieve the `customer_id` column along with the five aggregate functions, as in:

```
SELECT customer_id,
      MAX(amount) max_amt,
      MIN(amount) min_amt,
      AVG(amount) avg_amt,
      SUM(amount) tot_amt,
      COUNT(*) num_payments
   FROM payment;
```

However, if you try to execute the query, you will receive the following error:

```
ERROR 1140 (42000): In aggregated query without GROUP BY,
expression #1 of SELECT list contains nonaggregated column
```

While it may be obvious to you that you want the aggregate functions applied to each customer found in the `payment` table, this query fails because you have not *explicitly* specified how the data should be grouped. Therefore, you will need to add a `group by` clause to specify over which group of rows the aggregate functions should be applied:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id,
->   MAX(amount) max_amt,
->   MIN(amount) min_amt,
->   AVG(amount) avg_amt,
->   SUM(amount) tot_amt,
->   COUNT(*) num_payments
-> FROM payment
-> GROUP BY customer_id;
```

customer_id	max_amt	min_amt	avg_amt	tot_amt	num_payments
1	9.99	0.99	3.708750	118.68	32
2	10.99	0.99	4.767778	128.73	27
3	10.99	0.99	5.220769	135.74	26
4	8.99	0.99	3.717273	81.78	22
5	9.99	0.99	3.805789	144.62	38
6	7.99	0.99	3.347143	93.72	28
...					
594	8.99	0.99	4.841852	130.73	27
595	10.99	0.99	3.923333	117.70	30
596	6.99	0.99	3.454286	96.72	28
597	8.99	0.99	3.990000	99.75	25
598	7.99	0.99	3.808182	83.78	22
599	9.99	0.99	4.411053	83.81	19

599 rows in set (0.04 sec)

With the inclusion of the `group by` clause, the server knows to group together rows having the same value in the `customer_id` column first and then to apply the five aggregate functions to each of the 599 groups.

## Counting Distinct Values

When using the `count()` function to determine the number of members in each group, you have your choice of counting *all* members in the group or counting only the *distinct* values for a column across all members of the group.

For example, consider the following query, which uses the `count()` function with the `customer_id` column in two different ways:

```
mysql> SELECT COUNT(customer_id) num_rows,
->   COUNT(DISTINCT customer_id) num_customers
-> FROM payment;
```

num_rows	num_customers

```
|      16049 |          599 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

The first column in the query simply counts the number of rows in the `payment` table, whereas the second column examines the values in the `customer_id` column and counts only the number of unique values. By specifying `distinct`, therefore, the `count()` function examines the values of a column for each member of the group in order to find and remove duplicates, rather than simply counting the number of values in the group.

## Using Expressions

Along with using columns as arguments to aggregate functions, you can use expressions as well. For example, you may want to find the maximum number of days between when a film was rented and subsequently returned. You can achieve this via the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT MAX(datediff(return_date,rental_date))
    -> FROM rental;
+-----+
| MAX(datediff(return_date,rental_date)) |
+-----+
|                               33 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

The `datediff` function is used to compute the number of days between the return date and the rental date for every rental, and the `max` function returns the highest value, which in this case is 33 days.

While this example uses a fairly simple expression, expressions used as arguments to aggregate functions can be as complex as needed, as long as they return a number, string, or date. In [Chapter 11](#), I show you how you can use `case` expressions with aggregate functions to determine whether a particular row should or should not be included in an aggregation.

## How Nulls Are Handled

When performing aggregations, or, indeed, any type of numeric calculation, you should always consider how `null` values might affect the outcome of your calculation. To illustrate, I will build a simple table to hold numeric data and populate it with the set {1, 3, 5}:

```
mysql> CREATE TABLE number_tbl
    -> (val SMALLINT);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
```

```
mysql> INSERT INTO number_tbl VALUES (1);
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO number_tbl VALUES (3);
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO number_tbl VALUES (5);
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
```

Consider the following query, which performs five aggregate functions on the set of numbers:

```
mysql> SELECT COUNT(*) num_rows,
->   COUNT(val) num_vals,
->   SUM(val) total,
->   MAX(val) max_val,
->   AVG(val) avg_val
-> FROM number_tbl;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| num_rows | num_vals | total | max_val | avg_val |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      3 |       3 |     9 |       5 |   3.0000 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.08 sec)
```

The results are as you would expect: both `count(*)` and `count(val)` return the value 3, `sum(val)` returns the value 9, `max(val)` returns 5, and `avg(val)` returns 3. Next, I will add a `null` value to the `number_tbl` table and run the query again:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO number_tbl VALUES (NULL);
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> SELECT COUNT(*) num_rows,
->   COUNT(val) num_vals,
->   SUM(val) total,
->   MAX(val) max_val,
->   AVG(val) avg_val
-> FROM number_tbl;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| num_rows | num_vals | total | max_val | avg_val |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      4 |       3 |     9 |       5 |   3.0000 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

Even with the addition of the `null` value to the table, the `sum()`, `max()`, and `avg()` functions all return the same values, indicating that they ignore any `null` values encountered. The `count(*)` function now returns the value 4, which is valid since the `number_tbl` table contains four rows, while the `count(val)` function still returns the value 3. The difference is that `count(*)` counts the number of rows, whereas

`count(val)` counts the number of *values* contained in the `val` column and ignores any `null` values encountered.

## Generating Groups

People are rarely interested in looking at raw data; instead, people engaging in data analysis will want to manipulate the raw data to better suit their needs. Examples of common data manipulations include:

- Generating totals for a geographic region, such as total European sales
- Finding outliers, such as the top salesperson for 2020
- Determining frequencies, such as the number of films rented in each month

To answer these types of queries, you will need to ask the database server to group rows together by one or more columns or expressions. As you have seen already in several examples, the `group by` clause is the mechanism for grouping data within a query. In this section, you will see how to group data by one or more columns, how to group data using expressions, and how to generate rollups within groups.

### Single-Column Grouping

Single-column groups are the simplest and most-often-used type of grouping. If you want to find the number of films associated with each actor, for example, you need only group on the `film_actor.actor_id` column, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT actor_id, count(*)
    -> FROM film_actor
    -> GROUP BY actor_id;
+-----+-----+
| actor_id | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
|      1 |      19 |
|      2 |      25 |
|      3 |      22 |
|      4 |      22 |
...
|   197 |      33 |
|   198 |      40 |
|   199 |      15 |
|   200 |      20 |
+-----+-----+
200 rows in set (0.11 sec)
```

This query generates 200 groups, one for each actor, and then sums the number of films for each member of the group.

## Multicolumn Grouping

In some cases, you may want to generate groups that span *more* than one column. Expanding on the previous example, imagine that you want to find the total number of films for each film rating (G, PG, ...) for each actor. The following example shows how you can accomplish this:

```
mysql> SELECT fa.actor_id, f.rating, count(*)
-> FROM film_actor fa
-> INNER JOIN film f
-> ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
-> GROUP BY fa.actor_id, f.rating
-> ORDER BY 1,2;
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | rating | count(*) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 | G     |      4 |
|      1 | PG    |      6 |
|      1 | PG-13 |      1 |
|      1 | R     |      3 |
|      1 | NC-17 |      5 |
|      2 | G     |      7 |
|      2 | PG    |      6 |
|      2 | PG-13 |      2 |
|      2 | R     |      2 |
|      2 | NC-17 |      8 |
|
|     199 | G     |      3 |
|     199 | PG   |      4 |
|     199 | PG-13 |      4 |
|     199 | R     |      2 |
|     199 | NC-17 |      2 |
|    200 | G     |      5 |
|    200 | PG   |      3 |
|    200 | PG-13 |      2 |
|    200 | R     |      6 |
|    200 | NC-17 |      4 |
+-----+-----+-----+
996 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

This version of the query generates 996 groups, one for each combination of actor and film rating found by joining the `film_actor` table with the `film` table. Along with adding the `rating` column to the `select` clause, I also added it to the `group by` clause, since `rating` is retrieved from a table and is not generated via an aggregate function such as `max` or `count`.

## Grouping via Expressions

Along with using columns to group data, you can build groups based on the values generated by expressions. Consider the following query, which groups rentals by year:

```
mysql> SELECT extract(YEAR FROM rental_date) year,
->      COUNT(*) how_many
->   FROM rental
->  GROUP BY extract(YEAR FROM rental_date);
+-----+-----+
| year | how_many |
+-----+-----+
| 2005 |     15862 |
| 2006 |       182 |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

This query employs a fairly simple expression that uses the `extract()` function to return only the year portion of a date to group the rows in the `rental` table.

## Generating Rollups

In “[Multicolumn Grouping](#)” on page 156, I showed an example that counts the number of films for each actor and film rating. Let’s say, however, that along with the total count for each actor/rating combination, you also want total counts for each distinct actor. You could run an additional query and merge the results, you could load the results of the query into a spreadsheet, or you could build a Python script, Java program, or some other mechanism to take that data and perform the additional calculations. Better yet, you could use the `WITH ROLLUP` option to have the database server do the work for you. Here’s the revised query using `WITH ROLLUP` in the `group by` clause:

```
mysql> SELECT fa.actor_id, f.rating, count(*)
->   FROM film_actor fa
->   INNER JOIN film f
->   ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
->  GROUP BY fa.actor_id, f.rating WITH ROLLUP
->  ORDER BY 1,2;
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | rating | count(*) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|    NULL  |  NULL  |     5462 |
|      1   |  NULL  |       19 |
|      1   |    G    |        4 |
|      1   |    PG   |       6 |
|      1   |  PG-13 |       1 |
|      1   |      R  |       3 |
|      1   |  NC-17 |       5 |
|      2   |  NULL  |      25 |
|      2   |      G  |       7 |
```

```

|      2 | PG      |      6 |
|      2 | PG-13   |      2 |
|      2 | R       |      2 |
|      2 | NC-17   |      8 |
...
| 199 | NULL    |     15 |
| 199 | G       |      3 |
| 199 | PG      |      4 |
| 199 | PG-13   |      4 |
| 199 | R       |      2 |
| 199 | NC-17   |      2 |
| 200 | NULL    |     20 |
| 200 | G       |      5 |
| 200 | PG      |      3 |
| 200 | PG-13   |      2 |
| 200 | R       |      6 |
| 200 | NC-17   |      4 |
+-----+
1197 rows in set (0.07 sec)

```

There are now 201 additional rows in the result set, one for each of the 200 distinct actors and one for the grand total (all actors combined). For the 200 actor rollups, a `null` value is provided for the `rating` column, since the rollup is being performed across all ratings. Looking at the first line for `actor_id 200`, for example, you will see that a total of 20 films are associated with the actor; this equals the sum of the counts for each rating ( $4 \text{ NC-17} + 6 \text{ R} + 2 \text{ PG-13} + 3 \text{ PG} + 5 \text{ G}$ ). For the grand total row in the first line of the output, a `null` value is provided for both the `actor_id` and `rating` columns; the total for the first line of output equals 5,462, which is equal to the number of rows in the `film_actor` table.



If you are using Oracle Database, you need to use a slightly different syntax to indicate that you want a rollup performed. The `group by` clause for the previous query would look as follows when using Oracle:

```
GROUP BY ROLLUP(fa.actor_id, f.rating)
```

The advantage of this syntax is that it allows you to perform rollups on a subset of the columns in the `group_by` clause. If you are grouping by columns `a`, `b`, and `c`, for example, you could indicate that the server should perform rollups on only columns `b` and `c` via the following:

```
GROUP BY a, ROLLUP(b, c)
```

If in addition to totals by actor you also want to calculate totals per rating, then you can use the `with cube` option, which will generate summary rows for *all* possible combinations of the grouping columns. Unfortunately, `with cube` is not available in version 8.0 of MySQL, but it is available with SQL Server and Oracle Database.

## Group Filter Conditions

In [Chapter 4](#), I introduced you to various types of filter conditions and showed how you can use them in the `where` clause. When grouping data, you also can apply filter conditions to the data *after* the groups have been generated. The `having` clause is where you should place these types of filter conditions. Consider the following example:

```
mysql> SELECT fa.actor_id, f.rating, count(*)
-> FROM film_actor fa
-> INNER JOIN film f
-> ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
-> WHERE f.rating IN ('G','PG')
-> GROUP BY fa.actor_id, f.rating
-> HAVING count(*) > 9;
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | rating | count(*) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      137 | PG     |      10 |
|       37 | PG     |      12 |
|      180 | PG     |      12 |
|        7 | G      |      10 |
|      83 | G      |      14 |
|     129 | G      |      12 |
|     111 | PG     |      15 |
|      44 | PG     |      12 |
|      26 | PG     |      11 |
|      92 | PG     |      12 |
|       17 | G      |      12 |
|     158 | PG     |      10 |
|     147 | PG     |      10 |
|      14 | G      |      10 |
|     102 | PG     |      11 |
|     133 | PG     |      10 |
+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

This query has two filter conditions: one in the `where` clause, which filters out any films rated something other than G or PG, and another in the `having` clause, which filters out any actors who appeared in less than 10 films. Thus, one of the filters acts on data *before* it is grouped, and the other filter acts on data *after* the groups have been created. If you mistakenly put both filters in the `where` clause, you will see the following error:

```
mysql> SELECT fa.actor_id, f.rating, count(*)
-> FROM film_actor fa
->   INNER JOIN film f
->     ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
-> WHERE f.rating IN ('G','PG')
->   AND count(*) > 9
-> GROUP BY fa.actor_id, f.rating;
ERROR 1111 (HY000): Invalid use of group function
```

This query fails because you cannot include an aggregate function in a query's `where` clause. This is because the filters in the `where` clause are evaluated *before* the grouping occurs, so the server can't yet perform any functions on groups.



When adding filters to a query that includes a `group by` clause, think carefully about whether the filter acts on raw data, in which case it belongs in the `where` clause, or on grouped data, in which case it belongs in the `having` clause.

## Test Your Knowledge

Work through the following exercises to test your grasp of SQL's grouping and aggregating features. Check your work with the answers in [Appendix B](#).

### Exercise 8-1

Construct a query that counts the number of rows in the `payment` table.

### Exercise 8-2

Modify your query from Exercise 8-1 to count the number of payments made by each customer. Show the customer ID and the total amount paid for each customer.

### Exercise 8-3

Modify your query from Exercise 8-2 to include only those customers who have made at least 40 payments.

# CHAPTER 9

---

# Subqueries

Subqueries are a powerful tool that you can use in all four SQL data statements. In this chapter, I'll show you how subqueries can be used to filter data, generate values, and construct temporary data sets. After a little experimentation, I think you'll agree that subqueries are one of the most powerful features of the SQL language.

## What Is a Subquery?

A *subquery* is a query contained within another SQL statement (which I refer to as the *containing statement* for the rest of this discussion). A subquery is always enclosed within parentheses, and it is usually executed prior to the containing statement. Like any query, a subquery returns a result set that may consist of:

- A single row with a single column
- Multiple rows with a single column
- Multiple rows having multiple columns

The type of result set returned by the subquery determines how it may be used and which operators the containing statement may use to interact with the data the subquery returns. When the containing statement has finished executing, the data returned by any subqueries is discarded, making a subquery act like a temporary table with *statement scope* (meaning that the server frees up any memory allocated to the subquery results after the SQL statement has finished execution).

You already saw several examples of subqueries in earlier chapters, but here's a simple example to get started:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name  
-> FROM customer  
-> WHERE customer_id = (SELECT MAX(customer_id) FROM customer);
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      599 | AUSTIN     | CINTRON    |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.27 sec)
```

In this example, the subquery returns the maximum value found in the `customer_id` column in the `customer` table, and the containing statement then returns data about that customer. If you are ever confused about what a subquery is doing, you can run the subquery by itself (without the parentheses) to see what it returns. Here's the subquery from the previous example:

```
mysql> SELECT MAX(customer_id) FROM customer;
+-----+
| MAX(customer_id) |
+-----+
|      599 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

The subquery returns a single row with a single column, which allows it to be used as one of the expressions in an equality condition (if the subquery returned two or more rows, it could be *compared* to something but could not be *equal* to anything, but more on this later). In this case, you can take the value the subquery returned and substitute it into the righthand expression of the filter condition in the containing query, as in the following:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name
   -> FROM customer
   -> WHERE customer_id = 599;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      599 | AUSTIN     | CINTRON    |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

The subquery is useful in this case because it allows you to retrieve information about the customer with the highest ID in a single query, rather than retrieving the maximum `customer_id` using one query and then writing a second query to retrieve the desired data from the `customer` table. As you will see, subqueries are useful in many other situations as well and may become one of the most powerful tools in your SQL toolkit.

# Subquery Types

Along with the differences noted previously regarding the type of result set returned by a subquery (single row/column, single row/multicolumn, or multiple columns), you can use another feature to differentiate subqueries; some subqueries are completely self-contained (called *noncorrelated subqueries*), while others reference columns from the containing statement (called *correlated subqueries*). The next several sections explore these two subquery types and show the different operators that you can employ to interact with them.

## Noncorrelated Subqueries

The example from earlier in the chapter is a noncorrelated subquery; it may be executed alone and does not reference anything from the containing statement. Most subqueries that you encounter will be of this type unless you are writing update or delete statements, which frequently make use of correlated subqueries (more on this later). Along with being noncorrelated, the example from earlier in the chapter also returns a result set containing a single row and column. This type of subquery is known as a *scalar subquery* and can appear on either side of a condition using the usual operators (`=`, `<>`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`). The next example shows how you can use a scalar subquery in an inequality condition:

```
mysql> SELECT city_id, city
-> FROM city
-> WHERE country_id <>
-> (SELECT country_id FROM country WHERE country = 'India');
+-----+-----+
| city_id | city
+-----+-----+
|      1 | A Corua (La Corua)
|      2 | Abha
|      3 | Abu Dhabi
|      4 | Acua
|      5 | Adana
|      6 | Addis Abeba
...
|    595 | Zapopan
|    596 | Zaria
|    597 | Zeleznogorsk
|    598 | Zhezqazghan
|    599 | Zhoushan
|   600 | Ziguinchor
+-----+
540 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

This query returns all cities that are not in India. The subquery, which is found on the last line of the statement, returns the country ID for India, and the containing query

returns all cities that do not have that country ID. While the subquery in this example is quite simple, subqueries may be as complex as you need them to be, and they may utilize any and all the available query clauses (`select`, `from`, `where`, `group by`, `having`, and `order by`).

If you use a subquery in an equality condition but the subquery returns more than one row, you will receive an error. For example, if you modify the previous query such that the subquery returns *all* countries *except for* India, you will receive the following error:

```
mysql> SELECT city_id, city
-> FROM city
-> WHERE country_id <>
-> (SELECT country_id FROM country WHERE country <> 'India');
ERROR 1242 (21000): Subquery returns more than 1 row
```

If you run the subquery by itself, you will see the following results:

```
mysql> SELECT country_id FROM country WHERE country <> 'India';
+-----+
| country_id |
+-----+
|      1 |
|      2 |
|      3 |
|      4 |
...
|    106 |
|    107 |
|    108 |
|    109 |
+-----+
108 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The containing query fails because an expression (`country_id`) cannot be equated to a set of expressions (`country_ids 1, 2, 3, ..., 109`). In other words, a single thing cannot be equated to a set of things. In the next section, you will see how to fix the problem by using a different operator.

## Multiple-Row, Single-Column Subqueries

If your subquery returns more than one row, you will not be able to use it on one side of an equality condition, as the previous example demonstrated. However, there are four additional operators that you can use to build conditions with these types of subqueries.

## The in and not in operators

While you can't *equate* a single value to a set of values, you can check to see whether a single value can be found *within* a set of values. The next example, while it doesn't use a subquery, demonstrates how to build a condition that uses the `in` operator to search for a value within a set of values:

```
mysql> SELECT country_id
-> FROM country
-> WHERE country IN ('Canada','Mexico');
+-----+
| country_id |
+-----+
|      20 |
|      60 |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The expression on the lefthand side of the condition is the `country` column, while the righthand side of the condition is a set of strings. The `in` operator checks to see whether either of the strings can be found in the `country` column; if so, the condition is met, and the row is added to the result set. You could achieve the same results using two equality conditions, as in:

```
mysql> SELECT country_id
-> FROM country
-> WHERE country = 'Canada' OR country = 'Mexico';
+-----+
| country_id |
+-----+
|      20 |
|      60 |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

While this approach seems reasonable when the set contains only two expressions, it is easy to see why a single condition using the `in` operator would be preferable if the set contained dozens (or hundreds, thousands, etc.) of values.

Although you will occasionally create a set of strings, dates, or numbers to use on one side of a condition, you are more likely to generate the set using a subquery that returns one or more rows. The following query uses the `in` operator with a subquery on the righthand side of the filter condition to return all cities that are in Canada or Mexico:

```
mysql> SELECT city_id, city
-> FROM city
-> WHERE country_id IN
-> (SELECT country_id
->   FROM country
->   WHERE country IN ('Canada','Mexico'));
```

```

+-----+
| city_id | city
+-----+
| 179 | Gatineau
| 196 | Halifax
| 300 | Lethbridge
| 313 | London
| 383 | Oshawa
| 430 | Richmond Hill
| 565 | Vancouver
...
| 452 | San Juan Bautista Tuxtepec
| 541 | Torren
| 556 | Uruapan
| 563 | Valle de Santiago
| 595 | Zapopan
+-----+
37 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Along with seeing whether a value exists within a set of values, you can check the converse using the `not in` operator. Here's another version of the previous query using `not in` instead of `in`:

```

mysql> SELECT city_id, city
    -> FROM city
    -> WHERE country_id NOT IN
    -> (SELECT country_id
    ->     FROM country
    ->     WHERE country IN ('Canada','Mexico'));
+-----+
| city_id | city
+-----+
| 1 | A Corua (La Corua)
| 2 | Abha
| 3 | Abu Dhabi
| 5 | Adana
| 6 | Addis Abeba
...
| 596 | Zaria
| 597 | Zeleznogorsk
| 598 | Zhezqazghan
| 599 | Zhoushan
| 600 | Ziguinchor
+-----+
563 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

This query finds all cities that are *not* in Canada or Mexico.

## The all operator

While the `in` operator is used to see whether an expression can be found within a set of expressions, the `all` operator allows you to make comparisons between a single value and every value in a set. To build such a condition, you will need to use one of the comparison operators (`=`, `<>`, `<`, `>`, etc.) in conjunction with the `all` operator. For example, the next query finds all customers who have never gotten a free film rental:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
->   FROM customer
-> WHERE customer_id <> ALL
->   (SELECT customer_id
->     FROM payment
->    WHERE amount = 0);
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH      |
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON    |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS   |
| BARBARA    | JONES      |
|
| ...        |            |
| EDUARDO    | HIATT      |
| TERENCE    | GUNDERSON |
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE   |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN     |
| WADE       | DELVALLE   |
| AUSTIN     | CINTRON    |
+-----+-----+
576 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

The subquery returns the set of IDs for customers who have paid \$0 for a film rental, and the containing query returns the names of all customers whose ID is not in the set returned by the subquery. If this approach seems a bit clumsy to you, you are in good company; most people would prefer to phrase the query differently and avoid using the `all` operator. To illustrate, the previous query generates the same results as the next example, which uses the `not in` operator:

```
SELECT first_name, last_name
FROM customer
WHERE customer_id NOT IN
(SELECT customer_id
 FROM payment
 WHERE amount = 0)
```

It's a matter of preference, but I think that most people would find the version that uses `not in` to be easier to understand.



When using `not in` or `<> all` to compare a value to a set of values, you must be careful to ensure that the set of values does not contain a `null` value, because the server equates the value on the left-hand side of the expression to each member of the set, and any attempt to equate a value to `null` yields `unknown`. Thus, the following query returns an empty set:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE customer_id NOT IN (122, 452, NULL);
Empty set (0.00 sec)
```

Here's another example using the `all` operator, but this time the subquery is in the `having` clause:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*)
-> FROM rental
-> GROUP BY customer_id
-> HAVING count(*) > ALL
-> (SELECT count(*)
-> FROM rental r
-> INNER JOIN customer c
-> ON r.customer_id = c.customer_id
-> INNER JOIN address a
-> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
-> INNER JOIN city ct
-> ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
-> INNER JOIN country co
-> ON ct.country_id = co.country_id
-> WHERE co.country IN ('United States','Mexico','Canada')
-> GROUP BY r.customer_id
-> );
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
|          148 |        46 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

The subquery in this example returns the total number of film rentals for all customers in North America, and the containing query returns all customers whose total number of film rentals exceeds any of the North American customers.

## The `any` operator

Like the `all` operator, the `any` operator allows a value to be compared to the members of a set of values; unlike `all`, however, a condition using the `any` operator evaluates to `true` as soon as a single comparison is favorable. This example will find all customers whose total film rental payments exceed the total payments for all customers in Bolivia, Paraguay, or Chile:

```

mysql> SELECT customer_id, sum(amount)
->   FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id
->   HAVING sum(amount) > ANY
->     (SELECT sum(p.amount)
->       FROM payment p
->       INNER JOIN customer c
->         ON p.customer_id = c.customer_id
->       INNER JOIN address a
->         ON c.address_id = a.address_id
->       INNER JOIN city ct
->         ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
->       INNER JOIN country co
->         ON ct.country_id = co.country_id
->       WHERE co.country IN ('Bolivia','Paraguay','Chile')
->     GROUP BY co.country
->   );
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | sum(amount) |
+-----+-----+
|      137 |    194.61 |
|      144 |    195.58 |
|      148 |    216.54 |
|      178 |    194.61 |
|      459 |    186.62 |
|      526 |    221.55 |
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

The subquery returns the total film rental fees for all customers in Bolivia, Paraguay, and Chile, and the containing query returns all customers who outspent at least one of these three countries (if you find yourself outspending an entire country, perhaps you need to cancel your Netflix subscription and book a trip to Bolivia, Paraguay, or Chile...).



Although most people prefer to use `in`, using `= any` is equivalent to using the `in` operator.

## Multicolumn Subqueries

So far, the subquery examples in this chapter have returned a single column and one or more rows. In certain situations, however, you can use subqueries that return two or more columns. To show the utility of multicolumn subqueries, it might help to look first at an example that uses multiple, single-column subqueries:

```

mysql> SELECT fa.actor_id, fa.film_id
->   FROM film_actor fa

```

```

-> WHERE fa.actor_id IN
-> (SELECT actor_id FROM actor WHERE last_name = 'MONROE')
-> AND fa.film_id IN
-> (SELECT film_id FROM film WHERE rating = 'PG');

+-----+-----+
| actor_id | film_id |
+-----+-----+
|      120 |      63 |
|      120 |     144 |
|      120 |     414 |
|      120 |     590 |
|      120 |     715 |
|      120 |     894 |
|      178 |     164 |
|      178 |     194 |
|      178 |     273 |
|      178 |     311 |
|      178 |     983 |
+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

This query uses two subqueries to identify all actors with the last name Monroe and all films rated PG, and the containing query then uses this information to retrieve all cases where an actor named Monroe appeared in a PG film. However, you could merge the two single-column subqueries into one multicolumn subquery and compare the results to two columns in the `film_actor` table. To do so, your filter condition must name both columns from the `film_actor` table surrounded by parentheses and in the same order as returned by the subquery, as in:

```

mysql> SELECT actor_id, film_id
-> FROM film_actor
-> WHERE (actor_id, film_id) IN
-> (SELECT a.actor_id, f.film_id
->   FROM actor a
->       CROSS JOIN film f
->   WHERE a.last_name = 'MONROE'
->   AND f.rating = 'PG');

+-----+-----+
| actor_id | film_id |
+-----+-----+
|      120 |      63 |
|      120 |     144 |
|      120 |     414 |
|      120 |     590 |
|      120 |     715 |
|      120 |     894 |
|      178 |     164 |
|      178 |     194 |
|      178 |     273 |
|      178 |     311 |
|      178 |     983 |
+-----+-----+

```

```
+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This version of the query performs the same function as the previous example, but with a single subquery that returns two columns instead of two subqueries that each return a single column. The subquery in this version uses a type of join called a *cross join*, which will be explored in the next chapter. The basic idea is to return all combinations of actors named Monroe (2) and all films rated PG (194) for a total of 388 rows, 11 of which can be found in the `film_actor` table.

## Correlated Subqueries

All of the subqueries shown thus far have been independent of their containing statements, meaning that you can execute them by themselves and inspect the results. A *correlated subquery*, on the other hand, is *dependent* on its containing statement from which it references one or more columns. Unlike a noncorrelated subquery, a correlated subquery is not executed once prior to execution of the containing statement; instead, the correlated subquery is executed once for each candidate row (rows that might be included in the final results). For example, the following query uses a correlated subquery to count the number of film rentals for each customer, and the containing query then retrieves those customers who have rented exactly 20 films:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
   -> FROM customer c
   -> WHERE 20 =
   -> (SELECT count(*) FROM rental r
   -> WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id);
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name  |
+-----+-----+
| LAUREN     | HUDSON    |
| JEANETTE   | GREENE    |
| TARA        | RYAN      |
| WILMA      | RICHARDS  |
| JO          | FOWLER    |
| KAY         | CALDWELL  |
| DANIEL     | CABRAL    |
| ANTHONY    | SCHWAB   |
| TERRY       | GRISSOM   |
| LUIS        | YANEZ    |
| HERBERT    | KRUGER    |
| OSCAR       | AQUINO   |
| RAUL        | FORTIER  |
| NELSON     | CHRISTENSON |
| ALFREDO    | MCADAMS  |
+-----+-----+
15 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

The reference to `c.customer_id` at the very end of the subquery is what makes the subquery correlated; the containing query must supply values for `c.customer_id` for the subquery to execute. In this case, the containing query retrieves all 599 rows from the `customer` table and executes the subquery once for each customer, passing in the appropriate customer ID for each execution. If the subquery returns the value 20, then the filter condition is met, and the row is added to the result set.



One word of caution: since the correlated subquery will be executed once for each row of the containing query, the use of correlated subqueries can cause performance issues if the containing query returns a large number of rows.

Along with equality conditions, you can use correlated subqueries in other types of conditions, such as the range condition illustrated here:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE
->   (SELECT sum(p.amount) FROM payment p
->    WHERE p.customer_id = c.customer_id)
->   BETWEEN 180 AND 240;
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| RHONDA    | KENNEDY   |
| CLARA     | SHAW       |
| ELEANOR   | HUNT       |
| MARION    | SNYDER    |
| TOMMY     | COLLAZO   |
| KARL      | SEAL       |
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

This variation on the previous query finds all customers whose total payments for all film rentals are between \$180 and \$240. Once again, the correlated subquery is executed 599 times (once for each customer row), and each execution of the subquery returns the total account balance for the given customer.



Another subtle difference in the previous query is that the subquery is on the lefthand side of the condition, which may look a bit odd but is perfectly valid.

## The exists Operator

While you will often see correlated subqueries used in equality and range conditions, the most common operator used to build conditions that utilize correlated subqueries is the `exists` operator. You use the `exists` operator when you want to identify that a relationship exists without regard for the quantity; for example, the following query finds all the customers who rented at least one film prior to May 25, 2005, without regard for how many films were rented:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE EXISTS
-> (SELECT 1 FROM rental r
-> WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id
-> AND date(r.rental_date) < '2005-05-25');
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| CHARLOTTE | HUNTER   |
| DELORES   | HANSEN   |
| MINNIE    | ROMERO   |
| CASSANDRA | WALTERS  |
| ANDREW    | PURDY    |
| MANUEL    | MURRELL  |
| TOMMY     | COLLAZO  |
| NELSON    | CHRISTENSON |
+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

Using the `exists` operator, your subquery can return zero, one, or many rows, and the condition simply checks whether the subquery returned one or more rows. If you look at the `select` clause of the subquery, you will see that it consists of a single literal (1); since the condition in the containing query only needs to know how many rows have been returned, the actual data the subquery returned is irrelevant. Your subquery can return whatever strikes your fancy, as demonstrated next:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name
-> FROM customer c
-> WHERE EXISTS
-> (SELECT r.rental_date, r.customer_id, 'ABCD' str, 2 * 3 / 7 nmbr
-> FROM rental r
-> WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id
-> AND date(r.rental_date) < '2005-05-25');
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| CHARLOTTE | HUNTER   |
| DELORES   | HANSEN   |
| MINNIE    | ROMERO   |
| CASSANDRA | WALTERS  |
+-----+-----+
```

```
| ANDREW      | PURDY      |
| MANUEL     | MURRELL    |
| TOMMY      | COLLAZO    |
| NELSON      | CHRISTENSON |
+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

However, the convention is to specify either `select 1` or `select *` when using `exists`.

You may also use `not exists` to check for subqueries that return no rows, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name
->   FROM actor a
-> WHERE NOT EXISTS
->   (SELECT 1
->     FROM film_actor fa
->       INNER JOIN film f ON f.film_id = fa.film_id
->     WHERE fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
->       AND f.rating = 'R');
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| JANE       | JACKMAN   |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query finds all actors who have never appeared in an R-rated film.

## Data Manipulation Using Correlated Subqueries

All of the examples thus far in the chapter have been `select` statements, but don't think that means that subqueries aren't useful in other SQL statements. Subqueries are used heavily in `update`, `delete`, and `insert` statements as well, with correlated subqueries appearing frequently in `update` and `delete` statements. Here's an example of a correlated subquery used to modify the `last_update` column in the `customer` table:

```
UPDATE customer c
SET c.last_update =
(SELECT max(r.rental_date) FROM rental r
 WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id);
```

This statement modifies every row in the `customer` table (since there is no `where` clause) by finding the latest rental date for each customer in the `rental` table. While it seems reasonable to expect that every customer will have at least one film rental, it would be best to check before attempting to update the `last_update` column; otherwise, the column will be set to `null`, since the subquery would return no rows. Here's

another version of the update statement, this time employing a `where` clause with a second correlated subquery:

```
UPDATE customer c
SET c.last_update =
  (SELECT max(r.rental_date) FROM rental r
   WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id)
WHERE EXISTS
  (SELECT 1 FROM rental r
   WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id);
```

The two correlated subqueries are identical except for the `select` clauses. The subquery in the `set` clause, however, executes only if the condition in the `update` statement's `where` clause evaluates to `true` (meaning that at least one rental was found for the customer), thus protecting the data in the `last_update` column from being overwritten with a `null`.

Correlated subqueries are also common in `delete` statements. For example, you may run a data maintenance script at the end of each month that removes unnecessary data. The script might include the following statement, which removes rows from the `customer` table where there have been no film rentals in the past year:

```
DELETE FROM customer
WHERE 365 < ALL
  (SELECT datediff(now(), r.rental_date) days_since_last_rental
   FROM rental r
   WHERE r.customer_id = customer.customer_id);
```

When using correlated subqueries with `delete` statements in MySQL, keep in mind that, for whatever reason, table aliases are not allowed when using `delete`, which is why I had to use the entire table name in the subquery. With most other database servers, you could provide an alias for the `customer` table, such as:

```
DELETE FROM customer c
WHERE 365 < ALL
  (SELECT datediff(now(), r.rental_date) days_since_last_rental
   FROM rental r
   WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id);
```

## When to Use Subqueries

Now that you have learned about the different types of subqueries and the different operators that you can employ to interact with the data returned by subqueries, it's time to explore the many ways in which you can use subqueries to build powerful SQL statements. The next three sections demonstrate how you may use subqueries to construct custom tables, to build conditions, and to generate column values in result sets.

## Subqueries as Data Sources

Back in [Chapter 3](#), I stated that the `from` clause of a `select` statement contains the *tables* to be used by the query. Since a subquery generates a result set containing rows and columns of data, it is perfectly valid to include subqueries in your `from` clause along with tables. Although it might, at first glance, seem like an interesting feature without much practical merit, using subqueries alongside tables is one of the most powerful tools available when writing queries. Here's a simple example:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->     pymnt.num_rentals, pymnt.tot_payments
->   FROM customer c
->   INNER JOIN
->     (SELECT customer_id,
->            count(*) num_rentals, sum(amount) tot_payments
->          FROM payment
->         GROUP BY customer_id
->     ) pymnt
->   ON c.customer_id = pymnt.customer_id;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | num_rentals | tot_payments |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH    |      32 |      118.68 |
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON  |      27 |      128.73 |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS |      26 |      135.74 |
| BARBARA    | JONES    |      22 |      81.78  |
| ELIZABETH  | BROWN    |      38 |      144.62 |
...
| TERENCE    | GUNDERSON |      30 |      117.70 |
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE  |      28 |      96.72  |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN   |      25 |      99.75  |
| WADE        | DELVALLE  |      22 |      83.78  |
| AUSTIN      | CINTRON  |      19 |      83.81  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

In this example, a subquery generates a list of customer IDs along with the number of film rentals and the total payments. Here's the result set generated by the subquery:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*) num_rentals, sum(amount) tot_payments
->   FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | num_rentals | tot_payments |
+-----+-----+-----+
|           1 |      32 |      118.68 |
|           2 |      27 |      128.73 |
|           3 |      26 |      135.74 |
|           4 |      22 |      81.78 |
...
|      596 |      28 |      96.72 |
|      597 |      25 |      99.75 |
```

```

|      598 |      22 |     83.78 |
|      599 |      19 |     83.81 |
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

The subquery is given the name `pymnt` and is joined to the `customer` table via the `customer_id` column. The containing query then retrieves the customer's name from the `customer` table, along with the summary columns from the `pymnt` subquery.

Subqueries used in the `from` clause must be noncorrelated;<sup>1</sup> they are executed first, and the data is held in memory until the containing query finishes execution. Subqueries offer immense flexibility when writing queries, because you can go far beyond the set of available tables to create virtually any view of the data that you desire and then join the results to other tables or subqueries. If you are writing reports or generating data feeds to external systems, you may be able to do things with a single query that used to demand multiple queries or a procedural language to accomplish.

## Data fabrication

Along with using subqueries to summarize existing data, you can use subqueries to generate data that doesn't exist in any form within your database. For example, you may wish to group your customers by the amount of money spent on film rentals, but you want to use group definitions that are not stored in your database. For example, let's say you want to sort your customers into the groups shown in [Table 9-1](#).

*Table 9-1. Customer payment groups*

Group name	Lower limit	Upper limit
Small Fry	0	\$74.99
Average Joes	\$75	\$149.99
Heavy Hitters	\$150	\$9,999,999.99

To generate these groups within a single query, you will need a way to define these three groups. The first step is to define a query that generates the group definitions:

```

mysql> SELECT 'Small Fry' name, 0 low_limit, 74.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT 'Average Joes' name, 75 low_limit, 149.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT 'Heavy Hitters' name, 150 low_limit, 9999999.99 high_limit;
+-----+-----+-----+
| name      | low_limit | high_limit |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

---

<sup>1</sup> Actually, depending on which database server you are using, you might be able to include correlated subqueries in your `from` clause by using `cross apply` or `outer apply`, but these features are beyond the scope of this book.

```

+-----+-----+-----+
| Small Fry |      0 |    74.99 |
| Average Joes |    75 | 149.99 |
| Heavy Hitters | 150 | 9999999.99 |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

I have used the set operator `union all` to merge the results from three separate queries into a single result set. Each query retrieves three literals, and the results from the three queries are put together to generate a result set with three rows and three columns. You now have a query to generate the desired groups, and you can place it into the `from` clause of another query to generate your customer groups:

```

mysql> SELECT pymnt_grps.name, count(*) num_customers
-> FROM
-> (SELECT customer_id,
->       count(*) num_rentals, sum(amount) tot_payments
->     FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id
-> ) pymnt
->   INNER JOIN
-> (SELECT 'Small Fry' name, 0 low_limit, 74.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
->   SELECT 'Average Joes' name, 75 low_limit, 149.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
->   SELECT 'Heavy Hitters' name, 150 low_limit, 9999999.99 high_limit
-> ) pymnt_grps
->   ON pymnt.tot_payments
->     BETWEEN pymnt_grps.low_limit AND pymnt_grps.high_limit
->   GROUP BY pymnt_grps.name;
+-----+-----+
| name | num_customers |
+-----+-----+
| Average Joes |      515 |
| Heavy Hitters |       46 |
| Small Fry |       38 |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

The `from` clause contains two subqueries; the first subquery, named `pymnt`, returns the total number of film rentals and total payments for each customer, while the second subquery, named `pymnt_grps`, generates the three customer groupings. The two subqueries are joined by finding which of the three groups each customer belongs to, and the rows are then grouped by the group name in order to count the number of customers in each group.

Of course, you could simply decide to build a permanent (or temporary) table to hold the group definitions instead of using a subquery. Using that approach, you would find your database to be littered with small special-purpose tables after a while, and you wouldn't remember the reason for which most of them were created. Using

subqueries, however, you will be able to adhere to a policy where tables are added to a database only when there is a clear business need to store new data.

## Task-oriented subqueries

Let's say that you want to generate a report showing each customer's name, along with their city, the total number of rentals, and the total payment amount. You could accomplish this by joining the `payment`, `customer`, `address`, and `city` tables, and then grouping on the customer's first and last names:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city,
->     sum(p.amount) tot_payments, count(*) tot_rentals
->   FROM payment p
->   INNER JOIN customer c
->     ON p.customer_id = c.customer_id
->   INNER JOIN address a
->     ON c.address_id = a.address_id
->   INNER JOIN city ct
->     ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
-> GROUP BY c.first_name, c.last_name, ct.city;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | city          | tot_payments | tot_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH      | Sasebo        |      118.68  |      32      |
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON    | San Bernardino |      128.73  |      27      |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS   | Athenai       |      135.74  |      26      |
| BARBARA    | JONES      | Myingyan     |      81.78   |      22      |
...
| TERENCE    | GUNDERSON  | Jinzhou       |      117.70  |      30      |
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE   | Patras        |      96.72   |      28      |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN     | Sullana       |      99.75   |      25      |
| WADE       | DELVALLE   | Lausanne      |      83.78   |      22      |
| AUSTIN     | CINTRON    | Tieli         |      83.81   |      19      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.06 sec)
```

This query returns the desired data, but if you look at the query closely, you will see that the `customer`, `address`, and `city` tables are needed only for display purposes and that the `payment` table has everything needed to generate the groupings (`customer_id` and `amount`). Therefore, you could separate out the task of generating the groups into a subquery and then join the other three tables to the table generated by the subquery to achieve the desired end result. Here's the grouping subquery:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id,
->     count(*) tot_rentals, sum(amount) tot_payments
->   FROM payment
-> GROUP BY customer_id;
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | tot_rentals | tot_payments |
+-----+-----+
|           1 |        32 |      118.68 |
+-----+-----+
```

```

|      2 |          27 |      128.73 |
|      3 |          26 |      135.74 |
|      4 |          22 |       81.78 |
...
|    595 |          30 |      117.70 |
|    596 |          28 |       96.72 |
|    597 |          25 |      99.75 |
|    598 |          22 |      83.78 |
|    599 |          19 |      83.81 |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

599 rows in set (0.03 sec)

This is the heart of the query; the other tables are needed only to provide meaningful strings in place of the `customer_id` value. The next query joins the previous data set to the other three tables:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->     ct.city,
->     pymnt.tot_payments, pymnt.tot_rentals
->   FROM
->   (SELECT customer_id,
->         count(*) tot_rentals, sum(amount) tot_payments
->     FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id
->   ) pymnt
->   INNER JOIN customer c
->   ON pymnt.customer_id = c.customer_id
->   INNER JOIN address a
->   ON c.address_id = a.address_id
->   INNER JOIN city ct
->   ON a.city_id = ct.city_id;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | city           | tot_payments | tot_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH     | Sasebo        |      118.68 |       32 |
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON   | San Bernardino |      128.73 |       27 |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS  | Athenai       |      135.74 |       26 |
| BARBARA   | JONES     | Myingyan     |       81.78 |       22 |
...
| TERENCE   | GUNDERSON | Jinzhou       |      117.70 |       30 |
| ENRIQUE   | FORSYTHE  | Patras        |       96.72 |       28 |
| FREDDIE   | DUGGAN    | Sullana       |      99.75 |       25 |
| WADE      | DELVALLE  | Lausanne      |      83.78 |       22 |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | Tieli         |      83.81 |       19 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

599 rows in set (0.06 sec)

I realize that beauty is in the eye of the beholder, but I find this version of the query to be far more satisfying than the big, flat version. This version may execute faster as well, because the grouping is being done on a single numeric column (`customer_id`)

instead of multiple lengthy string columns (`customer.first_name`, `customer.last_name`, `city.city`).

## Common table expressions

Common table expressions (a.k.a. CTEs), which are new to MySQL in version 8.0, have been available in other database servers for quite some time. A CTE is a named subquery that appears at the top of a query in a `WITH clause`, which can contain multiple CTEs separated by commas. Along with making queries more understandable, this feature also allows each CTE to refer to any other CTE defined above it in the same `WITH clause`. The following example includes three CTEs, where the second refers to the first, and the third refers to the second:

```
mysql> WITH actors_s AS
->   (SELECT actor_id, first_name, last_name
->     FROM actor
->    WHERE last_name LIKE 'S%'
->  ),
->   actors_s_pg AS
->   (SELECT s.actor_id, s.first_name, s.last_name,
->          f.film_id, f.title
->     FROM actors_s s
->       INNER JOIN film_actor fa
->         ON s.actor_id = fa.actor_id
->       INNER JOIN film f
->         ON f.film_id = fa.film_id
->    WHERE f.rating = 'PG'
->  ),
->   actors_s_pg_revenue AS
->   (SELECT spg.first_name, spg.last_name, p.amount
->     FROM actors_s_pg spg
->       INNER JOIN inventory i
->         ON i.film_id = spg.film_id
->       INNER JOIN rental r
->         ON i.inventory_id = r.inventory_id
->       INNER JOIN payment p
->         ON r.rental_id = p.rental_id
->  ) -- end of With clause
->   SELECT spg_rev.first_name, spg_rev.last_name,
->          sum(spg_rev.amount) tot_revenue
->     FROM actors_s_pg_revenue spg_rev
->   GROUP BY spg_rev.first_name, spg_rev.last_name
-> ORDER BY 3 desc;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | tot_revenue |
+-----+-----+-----+
| NICK       | STALLONE  |      692.21 |
| JEFF       | SILVERSTONE |      652.35 |
| DAN        | STREEP     |      509.02 |
| GROUCHO    | SINATRA    |      457.97 |
```

```

| SISSY      | SOBIESKI    |      379.03 |
| JAYNE     | SILVERSTONE |      372.18 |
| CAMERON   | STREEP      |      361.00 |
| JOHN       | SUVARI      |      296.36 |
| JOE        | SWANK       |      177.52 |
+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.18 sec)

```

This query calculates the total revenues generated from PG-rated film rentals where the cast includes an actor whose last name starts with S. The first subquery (`actors_s`) finds all actors whose last name starts with S, the second subquery (`actors_s_pg`) joins that data set to the `film` table and filters on films having a PG rating, and the third subquery (`actors_s_pg_revenue`) joins that data set to the `payment` table to retrieve the amounts paid to rent any of these films. The final query simply groups the data from `actors_s_pg_revenue` by first/last names and sums the revenues.



Those who tend to utilize temporary tables to store query results for use in subsequent queries may find CTEs an attractive alternative.

## Subqueries as Expression Generators

For this last section of the chapter, I finish where I began: with single-column, single-row scalar subqueries. Along with being used in filter conditions, scalar subqueries may be used wherever an expression can appear, including the `select` and `order by` clauses of a query and the `values` clause of an `insert` statement.

In “[Task-oriented subqueries](#)” on page 179, I showed you how to use a subquery to separate out the grouping mechanism from the rest of the query. Here’s another version of the same query that uses subqueries for the same purpose, but in a different way:

```

mysql> SELECT
->   (SELECT c.first_name FROM customer c
->     WHERE c.customer_id = p.customer_id
->   ) first_name,
->   (SELECT c.last_name FROM customer c
->     WHERE c.customer_id = p.customer_id
->   ) last_name,
->   (SELECT ct.city
->     FROM customer c
->     INNER JOIN address a
->       ON c.address_id = a.address_id
->     INNER JOIN city ct
->       ON a.city_id = ct.city_id

```

```

-> WHERE c.customer_id = p.customer_id
-> ) city,
-> sum(p.amount) tot_payments,
-> count(*) tot_rentals
-> FROM payment p
-> GROUP BY p.customer_id;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | city           | tot_payments | tot_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH     | Sasebo         |      118.68  |      32      |
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON   | San Bernardino |      128.73  |      27      |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS  | Athenai        |      135.74  |      26      |
| BARBARA    | JONES     | Myingyan      |      81.78   |      22      |
...
| TERENCE    | GUNDERSON | Jinzhou        |      117.70  |      30      |
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE  | Patras         |      96.72   |      28      |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN    | Sullana        |      99.75   |      25      |
| WADE       | DELVALLE  | Lausanne       |      83.78   |      22      |
| AUSTIN     | CINTRON   | Tieli          |      83.81   |      19      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.06 sec)

```

There are two main differences between this query and the earlier version using a subquery in the `from` clause:

- Instead of joining the `customer`, `address`, and `city` tables to the `payment` data, correlated scalar subqueries are used in the `select` clause to look up the customer's first/last names and city.
- The `customer` table is accessed three times (once in each of the three subqueries) rather than just once.

The `customer` table is accessed three times because scalar subqueries can return only a single column and row, so if we need three columns related to the customer, it is necessary to use three different subqueries.

As previously noted, scalar subqueries can also appear in the `order by` clause. The following query retrieves an actor's first and last names and sorts by the number of films in which the actor appeared:

```

mysql> SELECT a.actor_id, a.first_name, a.last_name
-> FROM actor a
-> ORDER BY
-> (SELECT count(*) FROM film_actor fa
-> WHERE fa.actor_id = a.actor_id) DESC;
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | first_name | last_name  |
+-----+-----+-----+
|    107   | GINA       | DEGENERES  |
|    102   | WALTER     | TORN       |
|    198   | MARY       | KEITEL     |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

|     181 | MATTHEW      | CARREY      |
...
|     71  | ADAM          | GRANT        |
|    186 | JULIA          | ZELLWEGER    |
|     35  | JUDY           | DEAN         |
|    199 | JULIA          | FAWCETT      |
|    148 | EMILY          | DEE          |
+-----+-----+-----+
200 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

The query uses a correlated scalar subquery in the `order by` clause to return just the number of film appearances, and this value is used solely for sorting purposes.

Along with using correlated scalar subqueries in `select` statements, you can use non-correlated scalar subqueries to generate values for an `insert` statement. For example, let's say you are going to generate a new row in the `film_actor` table, and you've been given the following data:

- The first and last name of the actor
- The name of the film

You have two choices for how to go about it: execute two queries to retrieve the primary key values from `film` and `actor` and place those values into an `insert` statement or use subqueries to retrieve the two key values from within an `insert` statement. Here's an example of the latter approach:

```

INSERT INTO film_actor (actor_id, film_id, last_update)
VALUES (
  (SELECT actor_id FROM actor
   WHERE first_name = 'JENNIFER' AND last_name = 'DAVIS'),
  (SELECT film_id FROM film
   WHERE title = 'ACE GOLDFINGER'),
  now()
);

```

Using a single SQL statement, you can create a row in the `film_actor` table and look up two foreign key column values at the same time.

## Subquery Wrap-Up

I covered a lot of ground in this chapter, so it might be a good idea to review it. The examples in this chapter demonstrate subqueries that:

- Return a single column and row, a single column with multiple rows, and multiple columns and rows
- Are independent of the containing statement (noncorrelated subqueries)

- Reference one or more columns from the containing statement (correlated subqueries)
- Are used in conditions that utilize comparison operators as well as the special-purpose operators `in`, `not in`, `exists`, and `not exists`
- Can be found in `select`, `update`, `delete`, and `insert` statements
- Generate result sets that can be joined to other tables (or subqueries) in a query
- Can be used to generate values to populate a table or to populate columns in a query's result set
- Are used in the `select`, `from`, `where`, `having`, and `order by` clauses of queries

Obviously, subqueries are a very versatile tool, so don't feel bad if all these concepts haven't sunk in after reading this chapter for the first time. Keep experimenting with the various uses for subqueries, and you will soon find yourself thinking about how you might utilize a subquery every time you write a nontrivial SQL statement.

## Test Your Knowledge

These exercises are designed to test your understanding of subqueries. Please see [Appendix B](#) for the solutions.

### Exercise 9-1

Construct a query against the `film` table that uses a filter condition with a noncorrelated subquery against the `category` table to find all action films (`category.name = 'Action'`).

### Exercise 9-2

Rework the query from Exercise 9-1 using a *correlated* subquery against the `category` and `film_category` tables to achieve the same results.

### Exercise 9-3

Join the following query to a subquery against the `film_actor` table to show the level of each actor:

```
SELECT 'Hollywood Star' level, 30 min_roles, 99999 max_roles
UNION ALL
SELECT 'Prolific Actor' level, 20 min_roles, 29 max_roles
UNION ALL
SELECT 'Newcomer' level, 1 min_roles, 19 max_roles
```

The subquery against the `film_actor` table should count the number of rows for each actor using `group by actor_id`, and the count should be compared to the `min_roles/max_roles` columns to determine which level each actor belongs to.

# Joins Revisited

By now, you should be comfortable with the concept of the inner join, which I introduced in [Chapter 5](#). This chapter focuses on other ways in which you can join tables, including the outer join and the cross join.

## Outer Joins

In all the examples thus far that have included multiple tables, we haven't been concerned that the join conditions might fail to find matches for all the rows in the tables. For example, the `inventory` table contains a row for every film available for rental, but of the 1,000 rows in the `film` table, only 958 have one or more rows in the `inventory` table. The other 42 films are not available for rental (perhaps they are new releases due to arrive in a few days), so these film IDs cannot be found in the `inventory` table. The following query counts the number of available copies of each film by joining these two tables:

```
mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, count(*) num_copies
    -> FROM film f
    -> INNER JOIN inventory i
    -> ON f.film_id = i.film_id
    -> GROUP BY f.film_id, f.title;
```

film_id	title	num_copies
1	ACADEMY DINOSAUR	8
2	ACE GOLDFINGER	3
3	ADAPTATION HOLES	4
4	AFFAIR PREJUDICE	7
...		
13	ALI FOREVER	4
15	ALIEN CENTER	6
...		

```

|   997 | YOUTH KICK          |      2 |
|   998 | ZHIVAGO CORE        |      2 |
|   999 | ZOOLANDER FICTION    |      5 |
|  1000 | ZORRO ARK           |      8 |
+-----+-----+-----+
958 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

While you may have expected 1,000 rows to be returned (one for each film), the query returns only 958 rows. This is because the query uses an inner join, which only returns rows that satisfy the join condition. The film *Alice Fantasia* (`film_id` 14) doesn't appear in the results, for example, because it doesn't have any rows in the `inventory` table.

If you want the query to return all 1,000 films, regardless of whether or not there are rows in the `inventory` table, you can use an outer join, which essentially makes the join condition optional:

```

mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, COUNT(i.inventory_id) num_copies
-> FROM film f
-> LEFT OUTER JOIN inventory i
-> ON f.film_id = i.film_id
-> GROUP BY f.film_id, f.title;
+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id | title          | num_copies |
+-----+-----+-----+
|     1 | ACADEMY DINOSAUR |      8 |
|     2 | ACE GOLDFINGER   |      3 |
|     3 | ADAPTATION HOLES |      4 |
|     4 | AFFAIR PREJUDICE |      7 |
...
|    13 | ALI FOREVER     |      4 |
| 14 | ALICE FANTASIA  |      0 |
|    15 | ALIEN CENTER    |      6 |
...
|   997 | YOUTH KICK      |      2 |
|   998 | ZHIVAGO CORE    |      2 |
|   999 | ZOOLANDER FICTION|      5 |
|  1000 | ZORRO ARK       |      8 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1000 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

As you can see, the query now returns all 1,000 rows from the `film` table, and 42 of the rows (including *Alice Fantasia*) have a value of 0 in the `num_copies` column, which indicates that there are no copies in inventory.

Here's a description of the changes from the prior version of the query:

- The join definition was changed from `inner` to `left outer`, which instructs the server to include all rows from the table on the left side of the join (`film`, in this case) and then include columns from the table on the right side of the join (`inventory`) if the join is successful.
- The `num_copies` column definition was changed from `count(*)` to `count(i.inventory_id)`, which will count the number of non-null values of the `inventory.inventory_id` column.

Next, let's remove the `group by` clause and filter out most of the rows in order to clearly see the differences between `inner` and `outer` joins. Here's a query using an `inner` join and a filter condition to return rows for just a few films:

```
mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, i.inventory_id
   -> FROM film f
   -> INNER JOIN inventory i
   -> ON f.film_id = i.film_id
   -> WHERE f.film_id BETWEEN 13 AND 15;
+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id | title      | inventory_id |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       67 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       68 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       69 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       70 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      71 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      72 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      73 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      74 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      75 |
| 15     | ALIEN CENTER |      76 |
+-----+-----+-----+
10 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

The results show that there are four copies of *Ali Forever* and six copies of *Alien Center* in inventory. Here's the same query, but using an `outer` join:

```
mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, i.inventory_id
   -> FROM film f
   -> LEFT OUTER JOIN inventory i
   -> ON f.film_id = i.film_id
   -> WHERE f.film_id BETWEEN 13 AND 15;
+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id | title      | inventory_id |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       67 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       68 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       69 |
| 13     | ALI FOREVER |       70 |
| 14     | ALICE FANTASIA |    NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

```

|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      71 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      72 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      73 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      74 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      75 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER   |      76 |
+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The results are the same for *Ali Forever* and *Alien Center*, but there's one new row for *Alice Fantasia*, with a `null` value for the `inventory.inventory_id` column. This example illustrates how an `outer join` will add column values without restricting the number of rows returned by the query. If the join condition fails (as in the case of *Alice Fantasia*), any columns retrieved from the outer-joined table will be `null`.

## Left Versus Right Outer Joins

In each of the outer join examples in the previous section, I specified `left outer join`. The keyword `left` indicates that the table on the left side of the join is responsible for determining the number of rows in the result set, whereas the table on the right side is used to provide column values whenever a match is found. However, you may also specify a `right outer join`, in which case the table on the right side of the join is responsible for determining the number of rows in the result set, whereas the table on the left side is used to provide column values.

Here's the last query from the previous section rearranged to use a `right outer join` instead of a `left outer join`:

```

mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, i.inventory_id
-> FROM inventory i
->   RIGHT OUTER JOIN film f
->     ON f.film_id = i.film_id
-> WHERE f.film_id BETWEEN 13 AND 15;
+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id | title       | inventory_id |
+-----+-----+-----+
|   13 | ALI FOREVER |      67 |
|   13 | ALI FOREVER |      68 |
|   13 | ALI FOREVER |      69 |
|   13 | ALI FOREVER |      70 |
|   14 | ALICE FANTASIA |    NULL |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      71 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      72 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      73 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      74 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      75 |
|   15 | ALIEN CENTER |      76 |
+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Keep in mind that both versions of the query are performing outer joins; the keywords `left` and `right` are there just to tell the server which table is allowed to have gaps in the data. If you want to outer-join tables A and B and you want all rows from A with additional columns from B whenever there is matching data, you can specify either `A left outer join B` or `B right outer join A`.



Since you will rarely (if ever) encounter right outer joins, and since not all database servers support them, I recommend that you always use left outer joins. The `outer` keyword is optional, so you may opt for `A left join B` instead, but I recommend including `outer` for the sake of clarity.

## Three-Way Outer Joins

In some cases, you may want to outer-join one table with two other tables. For example, the query from a prior section can be expanded to include data from the `rental` table:

```
mysql> SELECT f.film_id, f.title, i.inventory_id, r.rental_date
->   FROM film f
->   LEFT OUTER JOIN inventory i
->   ON f.film_id = i.film_id
->   LEFT OUTER JOIN rental r
->   ON i.inventory_id = r.inventory_id
-> WHERE f.film_id BETWEEN 13 AND 15;
+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id | title      | inventory_id | rental_date      |
+-----+-----+-----+
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           67 | 2005-07-31 18:11:17 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           67 | 2005-08-22 21:59:29 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           68 | 2005-07-28 15:26:20 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           68 | 2005-08-23 05:02:31 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           69 | 2005-08-01 23:36:10 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           69 | 2005-08-22 02:12:44 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           70 | 2005-07-12 10:51:09 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           70 | 2005-07-29 01:29:51 |
|     13  | ALI FOREVER |           70 | 2006-02-14 15:16:03 |
|     14  | ALICE FANTASIA |       NULL | NULL          |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           71 | 2005-05-28 02:06:37 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           71 | 2005-06-17 16:40:03 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           71 | 2005-07-11 05:47:08 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           71 | 2005-08-02 13:58:55 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           71 | 2005-08-23 05:13:09 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           72 | 2005-05-27 22:49:27 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           72 | 2005-06-19 13:29:28 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           72 | 2005-07-07 23:05:53 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           72 | 2005-08-01 05:55:13 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           72 | 2005-08-20 15:11:48 |
|     15  | ALIEN CENTER  |           73 | 2005-07-06 15:51:58 |
```

```

| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 73 | 2005-07-30 14:48:24 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 73 | 2005-08-20 22:32:11 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 74 | 2005-07-27 00:15:18 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 74 | 2005-08-23 19:21:22 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 75 | 2005-07-09 02:58:41 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 75 | 2005-07-29 23:52:01 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 75 | 2005-08-18 21:55:01 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 76 | 2005-06-15 08:01:29 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 76 | 2005-07-07 18:31:50 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 76 | 2005-08-01 01:49:36 |
| 15 | ALIEN CENTER | 76 | 2005-08-17 07:26:47 |
+-----+-----+-----+
32 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

The results include all rentals of all films in inventory, but the film *Alice Fantasia* has null values for the columns from both outer-joined tables.

## Cross Joins

Back in [Chapter 5](#), I introduced the concept of a Cartesian product, which is essentially the result of joining multiple tables without specifying any join conditions. Cartesian products are used fairly frequently by accident (e.g., forgetting to add the join condition to the `FROM` clause) but are not so common otherwise. If, however, you *do* intend to generate the Cartesian product of two tables, you should specify a *cross join*, as in:

```

mysql> SELECT c.name category_name, l.name language_name
   -> FROM category c
   -> CROSS JOIN language l;
+-----+-----+
| category_name | language_name |
+-----+-----+
| Action        | English          |
| Action        | Italian           |
| Action        | Japanese          |
| Action        | Mandarin          |
| Action        | French            |
| Action        | German             |
| Animation     | English          |
| Animation     | Italian           |
| Animation     | Japanese          |
| Animation     | Mandarin          |
| Animation     | French            |
| Animation     | German             |
...
| Sports         | English          |
| Sports         | Italian           |
| Sports         | Japanese          |
| Sports         | Mandarin          |
| Sports         | French            |

```

```

| Sports      | German
| Travel     | English
| Travel     | Italian
| Travel     | Japanese
| Travel     | Mandarin
| Travel     | French
| Travel     | German
+-----+-----+
96 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

This query generates the Cartesian product of the `category` and `language` tables, resulting in 96 rows (16 `category` rows  $\times$  6 `language` rows). But now that you know what a cross join is and how to specify it, what is it used for? Most SQL books will describe what a cross join is and then tell you that it is seldom useful, but I would like to share with you a situation in which I find the cross join to be quite helpful.

In [Chapter 9](#), I discussed how to use subqueries to fabricate tables. The example I used showed how to build a three-row table that could be joined to other tables. Here's the fabricated table from the example:

```

mysql> SELECT 'Small Fry' name, 0 low_limit, 74.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT 'Average Joes' name, 75 low_limit, 149.99 high_limit
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT 'Heavy Hitters' name, 150 low_limit, 9999999.99 high_limit;
+-----+-----+-----+
| name      | low_limit | high_limit |
+-----+-----+-----+
| Small Fry |          0 |      74.99 |
| Average Joes |       75 |    149.99 |
| Heavy Hitters |      150 | 9999999.99 |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

While this table was exactly what was needed for placing customers into three groups based on their total film payments, this strategy of merging single-row tables using the `set operator union all` doesn't work very well if you need to fabricate a large table.

Say, for example, that you want to create a query that generates a row for every day in the year 2020 but you don't have a table in your database that contains a row for every day. Using the strategy from the example in [Chapter 9](#), you could do something like the following:

```

SELECT '2020-01-01' dt
UNION ALL
SELECT '2020-01-02' dt
UNION ALL
SELECT '2020-01-03' dt
UNION ALL
...

```

```
...
...
SELECT '2020-12-29' dt
UNION ALL
SELECT '2020-12-30' dt
UNION ALL
SELECT '2020-12-31' dt
```

Building a query that merges together the results of 366 queries is a bit tedious, so maybe a different strategy is needed. What if you generate a table with 366 rows (2020 is a leap year) with a single column containing a number between 0 and 366 and then add that number of days to January 1, 2020? Here's one possible method to generate such a table:

```
mysql> SELECT ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num
-> FROM
-> (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 1 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 2 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 3 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 4 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 5 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 6 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 7 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 8 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 9 num) ones
-> CROSS JOIN
-> (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 10 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 20 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 30 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 40 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 50 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 60 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 70 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 80 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 90 num) tens
-> CROSS JOIN
-> (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 100 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 200 num UNION ALL
-> SELECT 300 num) hundreds;
+-----+
| ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num |
+-----+
| 0 |
| 1 |
| 2 |
| 3 |
| 4 |
| 5 |
| 6 |
```

```

|    7 |
|    8 |
|    9 |
|   10 |
|   11 |
|   12 |
...
...
|
| 391 |
| 392 |
| 393 |
| 394 |
| 395 |
| 396 |
| 397 |
| 398 |
| 399 |
+-----+
400 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

If you take the Cartesian product of the three sets  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$ ,  $\{0, 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90\}$ , and  $\{0, 100, 200, 300\}$  and add the values in the three columns, you get a 400-row result set containing all numbers between 0 and 399. While this is more than the 366 rows needed to generate the set of days in 2020, it's easy enough to get rid of the excess rows, and I'll show you how shortly.

The next step is to convert the set of numbers to a set of dates. To do this, I will use the `date_add()` function to add each number in the result set to January 1, 2020. Then I'll add a filter condition to throw away any dates that venture into 2021:

```

mysql> SELECT DATE_ADD('2020-01-01',
->   INTERVAL (ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num) DAY) dt
-> FROM
->   (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 1 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 2 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 3 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 4 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 5 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 6 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 7 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 8 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 9 num) ones
->   CROSS JOIN
->   (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 10 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 20 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 30 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 40 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 50 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 60 num UNION ALL

```

```

->   SELECT 70 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 80 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 90 num) tens
->   CROSS JOIN
->   (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 100 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 200 num UNION ALL
->   SELECT 300 num) hundreds
-> WHERE DATE_ADD('2020-01-01',
->   INTERVAL (ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num) DAY) < '2021-01-01'
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+
| dt      |
+-----+
| 2020-01-01 |
| 2020-01-02 |
| 2020-01-03 |
| 2020-01-04 |
| 2020-01-05 |
| 2020-01-06 |
| 2020-01-07 |
| 2020-01-08 |
...
...
...
| 2020-02-26 |
| 2020-02-27 |
| 2020-02-28 |
| 2020-02-29 |
| 2020-03-01 |
| 2020-03-02 |
| 2020-03-03 |
...
...
...
| 2020-12-24 |
| 2020-12-25 |
| 2020-12-26 |
| 2020-12-27 |
| 2020-12-28 |
| 2020-12-29 |
| 2020-12-30 |
| 2020-12-31 |
+-----+
366 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

The nice thing about this approach is that the result set automatically includes the extra leap day (February 29) without your intervention, since the database server figures it out when it adds 59 days to January 1, 2020.

Now that you have a mechanism for fabricating all the days in 2020, what should you do with it? Well, you might be asked to generate a report that shows every day in 2020

along with the number of film rentals on that day. The report needs to include every day of the year, including days when no films are rented. Here's what the query might look like (using the year 2005 to match the data in the `rental` table):

```
mysql> SELECT days.dt, COUNT(r.rental_id) num_rentals
->   FROM rental r
->   RIGHT OUTER JOIN
->     (SELECT DATE_ADD('2005-01-01',
->       INTERVAL (ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num) DAY) dt
->   FROM
->     (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 1 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 2 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 3 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 4 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 5 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 6 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 7 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 8 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 9 num) ones
->      CROSS JOIN
->     (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 10 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 20 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 30 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 40 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 50 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 60 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 70 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 80 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 90 num) tens
->      CROSS JOIN
->     (SELECT 0 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 100 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 200 num UNION ALL
->      SELECT 300 num) hundreds
-> WHERE DATE_ADD('2005-01-01',
->   INTERVAL (ones.num + tens.num + hundreds.num) DAY)
->   < '2006-01-01'
-> ) days
->   ON days.dt = date(r.rental_date)
-> GROUP BY days.dt
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+
| dt      | num_rentals |
+-----+-----+
| 2005-01-01 |          0 |
| 2005-01-02 |          0 |
| 2005-01-03 |          0 |
| 2005-01-04 |          0 |
...
| 2005-05-23 |          0 |
```

2005-05-24	8
2005-05-25	137
2005-05-26	174
2005-05-27	166
2005-05-28	196
2005-05-29	154
2005-05-30	158
2005-05-31	163
2005-06-01	0
...	
2005-06-13	0
2005-06-14	16
2005-06-15	348
2005-06-16	324
2005-06-17	325
2005-06-18	344
2005-06-19	348
2005-06-20	331
2005-06-21	275
2005-06-22	0
...	
2005-12-27	0
2005-12-28	0
2005-12-29	0
2005-12-30	0
2005-12-31	0
+-----+-----+	

365 rows in set (8.99 sec)

This is one of the more interesting queries thus far in the book, in that it includes cross joins, outer joins, a date function, grouping, set operations (`union all`), and an aggregate function (`count()`). It is also not the most elegant solution to the given problem, but it should serve as an example of how, with a little creativity and a firm grasp on the language, you can make even a seldom-used feature like cross joins a potent tool in your SQL toolkit.

## Natural Joins

If you are lazy (and aren't we all), you can choose a join type that allows you to name the tables to be joined but lets the database server determine what the join conditions need to be. Known as the *natural join*, this join type relies on identical column names across multiple tables to infer the proper join conditions. For example, the `rental` table includes a column named `customer_id`, which is the foreign key to the `customer` table, whose primary key is also named `customer_id`. Thus, you could try to write a query that uses `natural join` to join the two tables:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, date(r.rental_date)
-> FROM customer c
-> NATURAL JOIN rental r;
Empty set (0.04 sec)
```

Because you specified a natural join, the server inspected the table definitions and added the join condition `r.customer_id = c.customer_id` to join the two tables. This would have worked fine, but in the Sakila schema all of the tables include the column `last_update` to show when each row was last modified, so the server is also adding the join condition `r.last_update = c.last_update`, which causes the query to return no data.

The only way around this issue is to use a subquery to restrict the columns for at least one of the tables:

```
mysql> SELECT cust.first_name, cust.last_name, date(r.rental_date)
-> FROM
-> (SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name
->   FROM customer
-> ) cust
-> NATURAL JOIN rental r;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | date(r.rental_date) |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-05-25      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-05-28      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-15      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-15      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-15      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-16      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-18      |
| MARY      | SMITH     | 2005-06-18      |
...
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-21      |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-21      |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-21      |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-23      |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-23      |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON   | 2005-08-23      |
+-----+-----+-----+
16044 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

So, is the reduced wear and tear on the old fingers from not having to type the join condition worth the trouble? Absolutely not; you should avoid this join type and use inner joins with explicit join conditions.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises test your understanding of outer and cross joins. Please see [Appendix B](#) for solutions.

## Exercise 10-1

Using the following table definitions and data, write a query that returns each customer name along with their total payments:

Customer:	
Customer_id	Name
1	John Smith
2	Kathy Jones
3	Greg Oliver

Payment:		
Payment_id	Customer_id	Amount
101	1	8.99
102	3	4.99
103	1	7.99

Include all customers, even if no payment records exist for that customer.

## Exercise 10-2

Reformulate your query from Exercise 10-1 to use the other outer join type (e.g., if you used a left outer join in Exercise 10-1, use a right outer join this time) such that the results are identical to Exercise 10-1.

## Exercise 10-3 (Extra Credit)

Devise a query that will generate the set {1, 2, 3, ..., 99, 100}. (Hint: use a cross join with at least two `from` clause subqueries.)

# Conditional Logic

In certain situations, you may want your SQL logic to branch in one direction or another depending on the values of certain columns or expressions. This chapter focuses on how to write statements that can behave differently depending on the data encountered during statement execution. The mechanism used for conditional logic in SQL statements is the `case` expression, which can be utilized in `select`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements.

## What Is Conditional Logic?

Conditional logic is simply the ability to take one of several paths during program execution. For example, when querying customer information, you might want to include the `customer.active` column, which stores 1 to indicate active and 0 to indicate inactive. If the query results are being used to generate a report, you may want to translate the value to improve readability. While every database includes built-in functions for these types of situations, there are no standards, so you would need to remember which functions are used by which database. Fortunately, every database's SQL implementation includes the `case` expression, which is useful in many situations, including simple translations:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name,
->     CASE
->         WHEN active = 1 THEN 'ACTIVE'
->         ELSE 'INACTIVE'
->     END activity_type
-> FROM customer;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | activity_type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH    | ACTIVE      |
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON  | ACTIVE      |
```

LINDA	WILLIAMS	ACTIVE	
BARBARA	JONES	ACTIVE	
ELIZABETH	BROWN	ACTIVE	
JENNIFER	DAVIS	ACTIVE	
...			
KENT	ARSENAULT	ACTIVE	
TERRANCE	ROUSH	INACTIVE	
RENE	MCALISTER	ACTIVE	
EDUARDO	HIATT	ACTIVE	
TERRENCE	GUNDERSON	ACTIVE	
ENRIQUE	FORSYTHE	ACTIVE	
FREDDIE	DUGGAN	ACTIVE	
WADE	DELVALLE	ACTIVE	
AUSTIN	CINTRON	ACTIVE	

+-----+-----+-----+

599 rows in set (0.00 sec)

This query includes a `case` expression to generate a value for the `activity_type` column, which returns the string “ACTIVE” or “INACTIVE” depending on the value of the `customer.active` column.

## The `case` Expression

All of the major database servers include built-in functions designed to mimic the if-then-else statement found in most programming languages (examples include Oracle’s `decode()` function, MySQL’s `if()` function, and SQL Server’s `coalesce()` function). `case` expressions are also designed to facilitate if-then-else logic but enjoy two advantages over built-in functions:

- The `case` expression is part of the SQL standard (SQL92 release) and has been implemented by Oracle Database, SQL Server, MySQL, PostgreSQL, IBM UDB, and others.
- `case` expressions are built into the SQL grammar and can be included in `select`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements.

The next two subsections introduce the two different types of `case` expressions. This is followed by some examples of `case` expressions in action.

## Searched case Expressions

The `case` expression demonstrated earlier in the chapter is an example of a *searched case expression*, which has the following syntax:

```
CASE
  WHEN C1 THEN E1
  WHEN C2 THEN E2
  ...

```

```

WHEN CN THEN EN
[ELSE ED]
END

```

In the previous definition, the symbols C1, C2, ..., CN represent conditions, and the symbols E1, E2, ..., EN represent expressions to be returned by the `case` expression. If the condition in a `when` clause evaluates to `true`, then the `case` expression returns the corresponding expression. Additionally, the ED symbol represents the default expression, which the `case` expression returns if *none* of the conditions C1, C2, ..., CN evaluate to `true` (the `else` clause is optional, which is why it is enclosed in square brackets). All the expressions returned by the various `when` clauses must evaluate to the same type (e.g., `date`, `number`, `varchar`).

Here's an example of a searched `case` expression:

```

CASE
WHEN category.name IN ('Children','Family','Sports','Animation')
    THEN 'All Ages'
WHEN category.name = 'Horror'
    THEN 'Adult'
WHEN category.name IN ('Music','Games')
    THEN 'Teens'
ELSE 'Other'
END

```

This `case` expression returns a string that can be used to classify films depending on their category. When the `case` expression is evaluated, the `when` clauses are evaluated in order from top to bottom; as soon as one of the conditions in a `when` clause evaluates to `true`, the corresponding expression is returned, and any remaining `when` clauses are ignored. If none of the `when` clause conditions evaluates to `true`, then the expression in the `else` clause is returned.

Although the previous example returns string expressions, keep in mind that `case` expressions may return any type of expression, including subqueries. Here's another version of the query from earlier in the chapter that uses a subquery to return the number of rentals, but only for active customers:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->     CASE
->         WHEN active = 0 THEN 0
->         ELSE
->             (SELECT count(*) FROM rental r
->              WHERE r.customer_id = c.customer_id)
->         END num_rentals
->     FROM customer c;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | num_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH     |        32 |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

| PATRICIA    | JOHNSON      |      27 |
| LINDA       | WILLIAMS     |      26 |
| BARBARA     | JONES        |      22 |
| ELIZABETH   | BROWN         |      38 |
| JENNIFER    | DAVIS         |      28 |
|
| TERRANCE    | ROUSH         |       0 |
| RENE         | MCALISTER    |      26 |
| EDUARDO     | HIATT         |      27 |
| TERRENCE    | GUNDERSON   |      30 |
| ENRIQUE     | FORSYTHE    |      28 |
| FREDDIE     | DUGGAN        |      25 |
| WADE         | DELVALLE     |      22 |
| AUSTIN       | CINTRON      |      19 |
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

This version of the query uses a correlated subquery to retrieve the number of rentals for each active customer. Depending on the percentage of active customers, using this approach may be more efficient than joining the `customer` and `rental` tables and grouping on the `customer_id` column.

## Simple case Expressions

The *simple case expression* is quite similar to the searched case expression but is a bit less flexible. Here's the syntax:

```

CASE V0
  WHEN V1 THEN E1
  WHEN V2 THEN E2
  ...
  WHEN VN THEN EN
  [ELSE ED]
END

```

In the preceding definition, `V0` represents a value, and the symbols `V1`, `V2`, ..., `VN` represent values that are to be compared to `V0`. The symbols `E1`, `E2`, ..., `EN` represent expressions to be returned by the `case` expression, and `ED` represents the expression to be returned if none of the values in the set `V1`, `V2`, ..., `VN` matches the `V0` value.

Here's an example of a simple `case` expression:

```

CASE category.name
  WHEN 'Children' THEN 'All Ages'
  WHEN 'Family' THEN 'All Ages'
  WHEN 'Sports' THEN 'All Ages'
  WHEN 'Animation' THEN 'All Ages'
  WHEN 'Horror' THEN 'Adult'
  WHEN 'Music' THEN 'Teens'
  WHEN 'Games' THEN 'Teens'

```

```
    ELSE 'Other'  
END
```

Simple case expressions are less flexible than searched case expressions because you can't specify your own conditions, whereas searched case expressions may include range conditions, inequality conditions, and multipart conditions using and/or/not, so I would recommend using searched case expressions for all but the simplest logic.

## Examples of case Expressions

The following sections present a variety of examples illustrating the utility of conditional logic in SQL statements.

### Result Set Transformations

You may have run into a situation where you are performing aggregations over a finite set of values, such as days of the week, but you want the result set to contain a single row with one column per value instead of one row per value. As an example, let's say you have been asked to write a query that shows the number of film rentals for May, June, and July of 2005:

```
mysql> SELECT monthname(rental_date) rental_month,  
->      count(*) num_rentals  
->   FROM rental  
-> WHERE rental_date BETWEEN '2005-05-01' AND '2005-08-01'  
-> GROUP BY monthname(rental_date);  
+-----+-----+  
| rental_month | num_rentals |  
+-----+-----+  
| May          |      1156 |  
| June         |      2311 |  
| July          |      6709 |  
+-----+-----+  
3 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

However, you have also been instructed to return a single row of data with three columns (one for each of the three months). To transform this result set into a single row, you will need to create three columns and, within each column, sum *only* those rows pertaining to the month in question:

```
mysql> SELECT  
->      SUM(CASE WHEN monthname(rental_date) = 'May' THEN 1  
->                  ELSE 0 END) May_rentals,  
->      SUM(CASE WHEN monthname(rental_date) = 'June' THEN 1  
->                  ELSE 0 END) June_rentals,  
->      SUM(CASE WHEN monthname(rental_date) = 'July' THEN 1  
->                  ELSE 0 END) July_rentals  
->   FROM rental  
-> WHERE rental_date BETWEEN '2005-05-01' AND '2005-08-01';
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| May_rentals | June_rentals | July_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1156 |       2311 |       6709 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

Each of the three columns in the previous query are identical, except for the month value. When the `monthname()` function returns the desired value for that column, the `case` expression returns the value 1; otherwise, it returns a 0. When summed over all rows, each column returns the number of accounts opened for that month. Obviously, such transformations are practical for only a small number of values; generating one column for each year since 1905 would quickly become tedious.



Although it is a bit advanced for this book, it is worth pointing out that both SQL Server and Oracle Database include `pivot` clauses specifically for these types of queries.

## Checking for Existence

Sometimes you will want to determine whether a relationship exists between two entities without regard for the quantity. For example, you might want to know whether an actor has appeared in at least one G-rated film, without regard for the actual number of films. Here's a query that uses multiple `case` expressions to generate three output columns, one to show whether the actor has appeared in G-rated films, another for PG-rated films, and a third for NC-17-rated films:

```
mysql> SELECT a.first_name, a.last_name,
->   CASE
->     WHEN EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM film_actor fa
->                   INNER JOIN film f ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
->                   WHERE fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
->                         AND f.rating = 'G') THEN 'Y'
->     ELSE 'N'
->   END g_actor,
->   CASE
->     WHEN EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM film_actor fa
->                   INNER JOIN film f ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
->                   WHERE fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
->                         AND f.rating = 'PG') THEN 'Y'
->     ELSE 'N'
->   END pg_actor,
->   CASE
->     WHEN EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM film_actor fa
->                   INNER JOIN film f ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
->                   WHERE fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
->                         AND f.rating = 'NC-17') THEN 'Y'
```

```

->      ELSE 'N'
->  END nc17_actor
-> FROM actor a
-> WHERE a.last_name LIKE 'S%' OR a.first_name LIKE 'S%';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | g_actor | pg_actor | nc17_actor |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| JOE        | SWANK     | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SANDRA    | KILMER    | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| CAMERON   | STREEP    | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SANDRA    | PECK      | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SISSY      | SOBIESKI  | Y       | Y       | N       |
| NICK       | STALLONE  | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SEAN       | WILLIAMS  | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| GROUCHO   | SINATRA   | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SCARLETT  | DAMON     | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SPENCER   | PECK      | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SEAN       | GUINNESS  | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SPENCER   | DEPP      | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SUSAN      | DAVIS     | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SIDNEY    | CROWE    | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SYLVESTER | DERN      | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SUSAN      | DAVIS     | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| DAN        | STREEP    | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| SALMA     | NOLTE     | Y       | N       | Y       |
| SCARLETT  | BENING    | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| JEFF       | SILVERSTONE | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| JOHN       | SUAVARI   | Y       | Y       | Y       |
| JAYNE     | SILVERSTONE | Y       | Y       | Y       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
22 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Each `case` expression includes a correlated subquery against the `film_actor` and `film` tables; one looks for films with a G rating, the second for films with a PG rating, and the third for films with a NC-17 rating. Since each `when` clause uses the `exists` operator, the conditions evaluate to `true` as long as the actor has appeared in at least one film with the proper rating.

In other cases, you may care how many rows are encountered, but only up to a point. For example, the next query uses a simple `case` expression to count the number of copies in inventory for each film and then returns either 'Out Of Stock', 'Scarce', 'Available', or 'Common':

```

mysql> SELECT f.title,
->   CASE (SELECT count(*) FROM inventory i
->         WHERE i.film_id = f.film_id)
->         WHEN 0 THEN 'Out Of Stock'
->         WHEN 1 THEN 'Scarce'
->         WHEN 2 THEN 'Scarce'
->         WHEN 3 THEN 'Available'
->         WHEN 4 THEN 'Available'

```

```

->      ELSE 'Common'
->  END film_availability
-> FROM film f
-> ;
+-----+-----+
| title          | film_availability |
+-----+-----+
| ACADEMY DINOSAUR | Common      |
| ACE GOLDFINGER   | Available   |
| ADAPTATION HOLES  | Available   |
| AFFAIR PREJUDICE  | Common      |
| AFRICAN EGG       | Available   |
| AGENT TRUMAN     | Common      |
| AIRPLANE SIERRA   | Common      |
| AIRPORT POLLOCK   | Available   |
| ALABAMA DEVIL     | Common      |
| ALADDIN CALENDAR   | Common      |
| ALAMO VIDEOTAPE    | Common      |
| ALASKA PHANTOM     | Common      |
| ALI FOREVER        | Available   |
| ALICE FANTASIA     | Out Of Stock |
|
| YOUNG LANGUAGE     | Scarce      |
| YOUTH KICK         | Scarce      |
| ZHIVAGO CORE        | Scarce      |
| ZOOLANDER FICTION   | Common      |
| ZORRO ARK          | Common      |
+-----+-----+
1000 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

For this query, I stopped counting after 5, since every other number greater than 5 will be given the 'Common' label.

## Division-by-Zero Errors

When performing calculations that include division, you should always take care to ensure that the denominators are never equal to zero. Whereas some database servers, such as Oracle Database, will throw an error when a zero denominator is encountered, MySQL simply sets the result of the calculation to `null`, as demonstrated by the following:

```

mysql> SELECT 100 / 0;
+-----+
| 100 / 0 |
+-----+
| NULL |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

```

To safeguard your calculations from encountering errors or, even worse, from being mysteriously set to `null`, you should wrap all denominators in conditional logic, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
->     sum(p.amount) tot_payment_amt,
->     count(p.amount) num_payments,
->     sum(p.amount) /
->     CASE WHEN count(p.amount) = 0 THEN 1
->           ELSE count(p.amount)
->       END avg_payment
->   FROM customer c
->   LEFT OUTER JOIN payment p
->     ON c.customer_id = p.customer_id
->   GROUP BY c.first_name, c.last_name;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | tot_payment_amt | num_payments | avg_payment |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY      | SMITH    |      118.68 |        32 | 3.708750 |
| PATRICIA  | JOHNSON  |      128.73 |        27 | 4.767778 |
| LINDA     | WILLIAMS |      135.74 |        26 | 5.220769 |
| BARBARA   | JONES    |       81.78 |        22 | 3.717273 |
| ELIZABETH | BROWN   |      144.62 |        38 | 3.805789 |
...
| EDUARDO   | HIATT    |      130.73 |        27 | 4.841852 |
| TERENCE   | GUNDERSON |      117.70 |        30 | 3.923333 |
| ENRIQUE   | FORSYTHE |       96.72 |        28 | 3.454286 |
| FREDDIE   | DUGGAN   |      99.75 |        25 | 3.990000 |
| WADE      | DELVALLE |      83.78 |        22 | 3.808182 |
| AUSTIN    | CINTRON  |      83.81 |        19 | 4.411053 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.07 sec)
```

This query computes the average payment amount for each customer. Since some customers may be new and have yet to rent a film, it is best to include the `case` expression to ensure that the denominator is never zero.

## Conditional Updates

When updating rows in a table, you sometimes need conditional logic to generate a value for a column. For example, let's say that you run a job every week that will set the `customer.active` column to 0 for any customers who haven't rented a film in the last 90 days. Here's a statement that will set the value to either 0 or 1 for every customer:

```
UPDATE customer
SET active =
CASE
  WHEN 90 <= (SELECT datediff(now(), max(rental_date))
                FROM rental r
               WHERE r.customer_id = customer.customer_id)
```

```
    THEN 0
ELSE 1
END
WHERE active = 1;
```

This statement uses a correlated subquery to determine the number of days since the last rental date for each customer and compares the value to 90; if the number returned by the subquery is 90 or higher, the customer is marked as inactive.

## Handling Null Values

While `null` values are the appropriate thing to store in a table if the value for a column is unknown, it is not always appropriate to retrieve `null` values for display or to take part in expressions. For example, you might want to display the word *unknown* on a data entry screen rather than leaving a field blank. When retrieving the data, you can use a `case` expression to substitute the string if the value is `null`, as in:

```
SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name,
CASE
    WHEN a.address IS NULL THEN 'Unknown'
    ELSE a.address
END address,
CASE
    WHEN ct.city IS NULL THEN 'Unknown'
    ELSE ct.city
END city,
CASE
    WHEN cn.country IS NULL THEN 'Unknown'
    ELSE cn.country
END country
FROM customer c
LEFT OUTER JOIN address a
ON c.address_id = a.address_id
LEFT OUTER JOIN city ct
ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
LEFT OUTER JOIN country cn
ON ct.country_id = cn.country_id;
```

For calculations, `null` values often cause a `null` result, as demonstrated by the following example:

```
mysql> SELECT (7 * 5) / ((3 + 14) * null);
+-----+
| (7 * 5) / ((3 + 14) * null) |
+-----+
|           NULL |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.08 sec)
```

When performing calculations, `case` expressions are useful for translating a `null` value into a number (usually 0 or 1) that will allow the calculation to yield a non-`null` value.

## Test Your Knowledge

Challenge your ability to work through conditional logic problems with the examples that follow. When you're done, compare your solutions with those in [Appendix B](#).

### Exercise 11-1

Rewrite the following query, which uses a simple `case` expression, so that the same results are achieved using a searched `case` expression. Try to use as few `when` clauses as possible.

```
SELECT name,
CASE name
    WHEN 'English' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'Italian' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'French' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'German' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'Japanese' THEN 'utf8'
    WHEN 'Mandarin' THEN 'utf8'
    ELSE 'Unknown'
END character_set
FROM language;
```

### Exercise 11-2

Rewrite the following query so that the result set contains a single row with five columns (one for each rating). Name the five columns G, PG, PG\_13, R, and NC\_17.

```
mysql> SELECT rating, count(*)
-> FROM film
-> GROUP BY rating;
+-----+-----+
| rating | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
| PG     |      194 |
| G      |      178 |
| NC-17  |      210 |
| PG-13  |      223 |
| R      |      195 |
+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```



# CHAPTER 12

---

# Transactions

All of the examples thus far in this book have been individual, independent SQL statements. While this may be the norm for ad hoc reporting or data maintenance scripts, application logic will frequently include multiple SQL statements that need to execute together as a logical unit of work. This chapter explores *transactions*, which are the mechanism used to group a set of SQL statements together such that either all or none of the statements succeed.

## Multiuser Databases

Database management systems allow a single user to query and modify data, but in today's world there may be thousands of people making changes to a database simultaneously. If every user is only executing queries, such as might be the case with a data warehouse during normal business hours, then there are very few issues for the database server to deal with. If some of the users are adding and/or modifying data, however, the server must handle quite a bit more bookkeeping.

Let's say, for example, that you are running a report that sums up the current week's film rental activity. At the same time you are running the report, however, the following activities are occurring:

- A customer rents a film.
- A customer returns a film after the due date and pays a late fee.
- Five new films are added to inventory.

While your report is running, therefore, multiple users are modifying the underlying data, so what numbers should appear on the report? The answer depends somewhat on how your server handles *locking*, which is described in the next section.

## Locking

Locks are the mechanism the database server uses to control simultaneous use of data resources. When some portion of the database is locked, any other users wishing to modify (or possibly read) that data must wait until the lock has been released. Most database servers use one of two locking strategies:

- Database writers must request and receive from the server a *write lock* to modify data, and database readers must request and receive from the server a *read lock* to query data. While multiple users can read data simultaneously, only one write lock is given out at a time for each table (or portion thereof), and read requests are blocked until the write lock is released.
- Database writers must request and receive from the server a write lock to modify data, but readers do not need any type of lock to query data. Instead, the server ensures that a reader sees a consistent view of the data (the data seems the same even though other users may be making modifications) from the time her query begins until her query has finished. This approach is known as *versioning*.

There are pros and cons to both approaches. The first approach can lead to long wait times if there are many concurrent read and write requests, and the second approach can be problematic if there are long-running queries while data is being modified. Of the three servers discussed in this book, Microsoft SQL Server uses the first approach, Oracle Database uses the second approach, and MySQL uses both approaches (depending on your choice of *storage engine*, which we'll discuss a bit later in the chapter).

## Lock Granularities

There are also a number of different strategies that you may employ when deciding *how* to lock a resource. The server may apply a lock at one of three different levels, or *granularities*:

### *Table locks*

Keep multiple users from modifying data in the same table simultaneously

### *Page locks*

Keep multiple users from modifying data on the same page (a page is a segment of memory generally in the range of 2 KB to 16 KB) of a table simultaneously

### *Row locks*

Keep multiple users from modifying the same row in a table simultaneously

Again, there are pros and cons to these approaches. It takes very little bookkeeping to lock entire tables, but this approach quickly yields unacceptable wait times as the number of users increases. On the other hand, row locking takes quite a bit more

bookkeeping, but it allows many users to modify the same table as long as they are interested in different rows. Of the three servers discussed in this book, Microsoft SQL Server uses page, row, and table locking, Oracle Database uses only row locking, and MySQL uses table, page, or row locking (depending, again, on your choice of storage engine). SQL Server will, under certain circumstances, *escalate* locks from row to page, and from page to table, whereas Oracle Database will never escalate locks.

To get back to your report, the data that appears on the pages of the report will mirror either the state of the database when your report started (if your server uses a versioning approach) or the state of the database when the server issues the reporting application a read lock (if your server uses both read and write locks).

## What Is a Transaction?

If database servers enjoyed 100% uptime, if users always allowed programs to finish executing, and if applications always completed without encountering fatal errors that halt execution, then there would be nothing left to discuss regarding concurrent database access. However, we can rely on none of these things, so one more element is necessary to allow multiple users to access the same data.

This extra piece of the concurrency puzzle is the *transaction*, which is a device for grouping together multiple SQL statements such that either *all* or *none* of the statements succeed (a property known as *atomicity*). If you attempt to transfer \$500 from your savings account to your checking account, you would be a bit upset if the money were successfully withdrawn from your savings account but never made it to your checking account. Whatever the reason for the failure (the server was shut down for maintenance, the request for a page lock on the `account` table timed out, etc.), you want your \$500 back.

To protect against this kind of error, the program that handles your transfer request would first begin a transaction, then issue the SQL statements needed to move the money from your savings to your checking account, and, if everything succeeds, end the transaction by issuing the `commit` command. If something unexpected happens, however, the program would issue a `rollback` command, which instructs the server to undo all changes made since the transaction began. The entire process might look something like the following:

```
START TRANSACTION;

/* withdraw money from first account, making sure balance is sufficient */
UPDATE account SET avail_balance = avail_balance - 500
WHERE account_id = 9988
AND avail_balance > 500;

IF <exactly one row was updated by the previous statement> THEN
```

```

/* deposit money into second account */
UPDATE account SET avail_balance = avail_balance + 500
    WHERE account_id = 9989;

IF <exactly one row was updated by the previous statement> THEN
    /* everything worked, make the changes permanent */
    COMMIT;
ELSE
    /* something went wrong, undo all changes in this transaction */
    ROLLBACK;
END IF;
ELSE
    /* insufficient funds, or error encountered during update */
    ROLLBACK;
END IF;

```



While the previous code block may look similar to one of the procedural languages provided by the major database companies, such as Oracle's PL/SQL or Microsoft's Transact-SQL, it is written in pseudocode and does not attempt to mimic any particular language.

The previous code block begins by starting a transaction and then attempts to remove \$500 from the checking account and add it to the savings account. If all goes well, the transaction is committed; if anything goes awry, however, the transaction is rolled back, meaning that all data changes since the beginning of the transaction are undone.

By using a transaction, the program ensures that your \$500 either stays in your savings account or moves to your checking account, without the possibility of it falling into a crack. Regardless of whether the transaction was committed or was rolled back, all resources acquired (e.g., write locks) during the execution of the transaction are released when the transaction completes.

Of course, if the program manages to complete both update statements but the server shuts down before a `commit` or `rollback` can be executed, then the transaction will be rolled back when the server comes back online. (One of the tasks that a database server must complete before coming online is to find any incomplete transactions that were underway when the server shut down and roll them back.) Additionally, if your program finishes a transaction and issues a `commit` but the server shuts down before the changes have been applied to permanent storage (i.e., the modified data is sitting in memory but has not been flushed to disk), then the database server must reapply the changes from your transaction when the server is restarted (a property known as durability).

## Starting a Transaction

Database servers handle transaction creation in one of two ways:

- An active transaction is always associated with a database session, so there is no need or method to explicitly begin a transaction. When the current transaction ends, the server automatically begins a new transaction for your session.
- Unless you explicitly begin a transaction, individual SQL statements are automatically committed independently of one another. To begin a transaction, you must first issue a command.

Of the three servers, Oracle Database takes the first approach, while Microsoft SQL Server and MySQL take the second approach. One of the advantages of Oracle's approach to transactions is that, even if you are issuing only a single SQL command, you have the ability to roll back the changes if you don't like the outcome or if you change your mind. Thus, if you forget to add a `where` clause to your `delete` statement, you will have the opportunity to undo the damage (assuming you've had your morning coffee and realize that you didn't mean to delete all 125,000 rows in your table). With MySQL and SQL Server, however, once you press the Enter key, the changes brought about by your SQL statement will be permanent (unless your DBA can retrieve the original data from a backup or from some other means).

The SQL:2003 standard includes a `start transaction` command to be used when you want to explicitly begin a transaction. While MySQL conforms to the standard, SQL Server users must instead issue the command `begin transaction`. With both servers, until you explicitly begin a transaction, you are in what is known as *autocommit mode*, which means that individual statements are automatically committed by the server. You can, therefore, decide that you want to be in a transaction and issue a start/begin transaction command, or you can simply let the server commit individual statements.

Both MySQL and SQL Server allow you to turn off autocommit mode for individual sessions, in which case the servers will act just like Oracle Database regarding transactions. With SQL Server, you issue the following command to disable autocommit mode:

```
SET IMPLICIT_TRANSACTIONS ON
```

MySQL allows you to disable autocommit mode via the following:

```
SET AUTOCOMMIT=0
```

Once you have left autocommit mode, all SQL commands take place within the scope of a transaction and must be explicitly committed or rolled back.



A word of advice: shut off autocommit mode each time you log in, and get in the habit of running all of your SQL statements within a transaction. If nothing else, it may save you the embarrassment of having to ask your DBA to reconstruct data that you have inadvertently deleted.

## Ending a Transaction

Once a transaction has begun, whether explicitly via the `start transaction` command or implicitly by the database server, you must explicitly end your transaction for your changes to become permanent. You do this by way of the `commit` command, which instructs the server to mark the changes as permanent and release any resources (i.e., page or row locks) used during the transaction.

If you decide that you want to undo all the changes made since starting the transaction, you must issue the `rollback` command, which instructs the server to return the data to its pre-transaction state. After the `rollback` has been completed, any resources used by your session are released.

Along with issuing either the `commit` or `rollback` command, there are several other scenarios by which your transaction can end, either as an indirect result of your actions or as a result of something outside your control:

- The server shuts down, in which case your transaction will be rolled back automatically when the server is restarted.
- You issue an SQL schema statement, such as `alter table`, which will cause the current transaction to be committed and a new transaction to be started.
- You issue another `start transaction` command, which will cause the previous transaction to be committed.
- The server prematurely ends your transaction because the server detects a *deadlock* and decides that your transaction is the culprit. In this case, the transaction will be rolled back, and you will receive an error message.

Of these four scenarios, the first and third are fairly straightforward, but the other two merit some discussion. As far as the second scenario is concerned, alterations to a database, whether it be the addition of a new table or index or the removal of a column from a table, cannot be rolled back, so commands that alter your schema must take place outside a transaction. If a transaction is currently underway, therefore, the server will commit your current transaction, execute the SQL schema statement command(s), and then automatically start a new transaction for your session. The server will not inform you of what has happened, so you should be careful that the statements that comprise a unit of work are not inadvertently broken up into multiple transactions by the server.

The fourth scenario deals with deadlock detection. A deadlock occurs when two different transactions are waiting for resources that the other transaction currently holds. For example, transaction A might have just updated the account table and is waiting for a write lock on the transaction table, while transaction B has inserted a row into the transaction table and is waiting for a write lock on the account table. If both transactions happen to be modifying the same page or row (depending on the lock granularity in use by the database server), then they will each wait forever for the other transaction to finish and free up the needed resource. Database servers must always be on the lookout for these situations so that throughput doesn't grind to a halt; when a deadlock is detected, one of the transactions is chosen (either arbitrarily or by some criteria) to be rolled back so that the other transaction may proceed. Most of the time, the terminated transaction can be restarted and will succeed without encountering another deadlock situation.

Unlike the second scenario discussed earlier, the database server will raise an error to inform you that your transaction has been rolled back due to deadlock detection. With MySQL, for example, you will receive error 1213, which carries the following message:

```
Message: Deadlock found when trying to get lock; try restarting transaction
```

As the error message suggests, it is a reasonable practice to retry a transaction that has been rolled back due to deadlock detection. However, if deadlocks become fairly common, then you may need to modify the applications that access the database to decrease the probability of deadlocks (one common strategy is to ensure that data resources are always accessed in the same order, such as always modifying account data before inserting transaction data).

## Transaction Savepoints

In some cases, you may encounter an issue within a transaction that requires a rollback, but you may not want to undo *all* of the work that has transpired. For these situations, you can establish one or more *savepoints* within a transaction and use them to roll back to a particular location within your transaction rather than rolling all the way back to the start of the transaction.

### Choosing a Storage Engine

When using Oracle Database or Microsoft SQL Server, a single set of code is responsible for low-level database operations, such as retrieving a particular row from a table based on primary key value. The MySQL server, however, has been designed so that multiple storage engines may be utilized to provide low-level database functionality, including resource locking and transaction management. As of version 8.0, MySQL includes the following storage engines:

### *MyISAM*

A nontransactional engine employing table locking

### *MEMORY*

A nontransactional engine used for in-memory tables

### *CSV*

A transactional engine that stores data in comma-separated files

### *InnoDB*

A transactional engine employing row-level locking

### *Merge*

A specialty engine used to make multiple identical MyISAM tables appear as a single table (a.k.a. table partitioning)

### *Archive*

A specialty engine used to store large amounts of unindexed data, mainly for archival purposes

Although you might think that you would be forced to choose a single storage engine for your database, MySQL is flexible enough to allow you to choose a storage engine on a table-by-table basis. For any tables that might take part in transactions, however, you should choose the InnoDB engine, which uses row-level locking and versioning to provide the highest level of concurrency across the different storage engines.

You may explicitly specify a storage engine when creating a table, or you can change an existing table to use a different engine. If you do not know what engine is assigned to a table, you can use the `show table status` command, as demonstrated by the following:

```
mysql> show table status like 'customer' \G;
***** 1. row ****
      Name: customer
    Engine: InnoDB
   Version: 10
  Row_format: Dynamic
      Rows: 599
Avg_row_length: 136
  Data_length: 81920
Max_data_length: 0
  Index_length: 49152
  Data_free: 0
Auto_increment: 599
 Create_time: 2019-03-12 14:24:46
Update_time: NULL
Check_time: NULL
  Collation: utf8_general_ci
  Checksum: NULL
Create_options:
Comment:
1 row in set (0.16 sec)
```

Looking at the second item, you can see that the `customer` table is already using the InnoDB engine. If it were not, you could assign the InnoDB engine to the transaction table via the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE customer ENGINE = INNODB;
```

All savepoints must be given a name, which allows you to have multiple savepoints within a single transaction. To create a savepoint named `my_savepoint`, you can do the following:

```
SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

To roll back to a particular savepoint, you simply issue the `rollback` command followed by the keywords `to savepoint` and the name of the savepoint, as in:

```
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

Here's an example of how savepoints may be used:

```
START TRANSACTION;

UPDATE product
SET date_retired = CURRENT_TIMESTAMP()
WHERE product_cd = 'XYZ';

SAVEPOINT before_close_accounts;

UPDATE account
SET status = 'CLOSED', close_date = CURRENT_TIMESTAMP(),
    last_activity_date = CURRENT_TIMESTAMP()
WHERE product_cd = 'XYZ';

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT before_close_accounts;
COMMIT;
```

The net effect of this transaction is that the mythical XYZ product is retired but none of the accounts are closed.

When using savepoints, remember the following:

- Despite the name, nothing is saved when you create a savepoint. You must eventually issue a `commit` if you want your transaction to be made permanent.
- If you issue a `rollback` without naming a savepoint, all savepoints within the transaction will be ignored, and the entire transaction will be undone.

If you are using SQL Server, you will need to use the proprietary command `save transaction` to create a savepoint and `rollback transaction` to roll back to a savepoint, with each command being followed by the savepoint name.

# Test Your Knowledge

Test your understanding of transactions by working through the following exercise. When you're done, compare your solution with that in [Appendix B](#).

## Exercise 12-1

Generate a unit of work to transfer \$50 from account 123 to account 789. You will need to insert two rows into the `transaction` table and update two rows in the `account` table. Use the following table definitions/data:

Account:			
account_id	avail_balance	last_activity_date	
123	500	2019-07-10 20:53:27	
789	75	2019-06-22 15:18:35	

Transaction:				
txn_id	txn_date	account_id	txn_type_cd	amount
1001	2019-05-15	123	C	500
1002	2019-06-01	789	C	75

Use `txn_type_cd = 'C'` to indicate a credit (addition), and use `txn_type_cd = 'D'` to indicate a debit (subtraction).

# Indexes and Constraints

Because the focus of this book is on programming techniques, the first 12 chapters concentrated on elements of the SQL language that you can use to craft powerful `select`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements. However, other database features *indirectly* affect the code you write. This chapter focuses on two of those features: indexes and constraints.

## Indexes

When you insert a row into a table, the database server does not attempt to put the data in any particular location within the table. For example, if you add a row to the `customer` table, the server doesn't place the row in numeric order via the `customer_id` column or in alphabetical order via the `last_name` column. Instead, the server simply places the data in the next available location within the file (the server maintains a list of free space for each table). When you query the `customer` table, therefore, the server will need to inspect every row of the table to answer the query. For example, let's say that you issue the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
    -> FROM customer
    -> WHERE last_name LIKE 'Y%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| LUIS       | YANEZ      |
| MARVIN     | YEE        |
| CYNTHIA    | YOUNG      |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.09 sec)
```

To find all customers whose last name begins with *Y*, the server must visit each row in the `customer` table and inspect the contents of the `last_name` column; if the last name begins with *Y*, then the row is added to the result set. This type of access is known as a *table scan*.

While this method works fine for a table with only three rows, imagine how long it might take to answer the query if the table contains three million rows. At some number of rows larger than three and smaller than three million, a line is crossed where the server cannot answer the query within a reasonable amount of time without additional help. This help comes in the form of one or more *indexes* on the `customer` table.

Even if you have never heard of a database index, you are certainly aware of what an index is (e.g., this book has one). An index is simply a mechanism for finding a specific item within a resource. Each technical publication, for example, includes an index at the end that allows you to locate a specific word or phrase within the publication. The index lists these words and phrases in alphabetical order, allowing the reader to move quickly to a particular letter within the index, find the desired entry, and then find the page or pages on which the word or phrase may be found.

In the same way that a person uses an index to find words within a publication, a database server uses indexes to locate rows in a table. Indexes are special tables that, unlike normal data tables, *are* kept in a specific order. Instead of containing *all* of the data about an entity, however, an index contains only the column (or columns) used to locate rows in the data table, along with information describing where the rows are physically located. Therefore, the role of indexes is to facilitate the retrieval of a subset of a table's rows and columns *without* the need to inspect every row in the table.

## Index Creation

Returning to the `customer` table, you might decide to add an index on the `email` column to speed up any queries that specify a value for this column, as well as any update or delete operations that specify a customer's email address. Here's how you can add such an index to a MySQL database:

```
mysql> ALTER TABLE customer
    -> ADD INDEX idx_email (email);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (1.87 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```

This statement creates an index (a B-tree index to be precise, but more on this shortly) on the `customer.email` column; furthermore, the index is given the name `idx_email`. With the index in place, the query optimizer (which we discussed in [Chapter 3](#)) can choose to use the index if it is deemed beneficial to do so. If there is more than one index on a table, the optimizer must decide which index will be the most beneficial for a particular SQL statement.



MySQL treats indexes as optional components of a table, which is why in earlier versions you would use the `alter table` command to add or remove an index. Other database servers, including SQL Server and Oracle Database, treat indexes as independent schema objects. For both SQL Server and Oracle, therefore, you would generate an index using the `create index` command, as in:

```
CREATE INDEX idx_email  
ON customer (email);
```

As of MySQL version 5, a `create index` command is available, although it is mapped to the `alter table` command. You must still use the `alter table` command to create primary key indexes, however.

All database servers allow you to look at the available indexes. MySQL users can use the `show` command to see all of the indexes on a specific table, as in:

```
mysql> SHOW INDEX FROM customer \G;  
*****  
      1. row *****  
      Table: customer  
Non_unique: 0  
      Key_name: PRIMARY  
Seq_in_index: 1  
Column_name: customer_id  
      Collation: A  
Cardinality: 599  
Sub_part: NULL  
      Packed: NULL  
      Null:  
Index_type: BTREE  
...  
*****  
      2. row *****  
      Table: customer  
Non_unique: 1  
      Key_name: idx_fk_store_id  
Seq_in_index: 1  
Column_name: store_id  
      Collation: A  
Cardinality: 2  
Sub_part: NULL  
      Packed: NULL  
      Null:  
Index_type: BTREE  
...  
*****  
      3. row *****  
      Table: customer  
Non_unique: 1  
      Key_name: idx_fk_address_id  
Seq_in_index: 1  
Column_name: address_id
```

```

    Collation: A
Cardinality: 599
Sub_part: NULL
Packed: NULL
Null:
Index_type: BTREE
...
***** 4. row *****
    Table: customer
Non_unique: 1
Key_name: idx_last_name
Seq_in_index: 1
Column_name: last_name
Collation: A
Cardinality: 599
Sub_part: NULL
Packed: NULL
Null:
Index_type: BTREE
...
***** 5. row *****
    Table: customer
Non_unique: 1
Key_name: idx_email
Seq_in_index: 1
Column_name: email
Collation: A
Cardinality: 599
Sub_part: NULL
Packed: NULL
Null: YES
Index_type: BTREE
...
5 rows in set (0.06 sec)

```

The output shows that there are five indexes on the `customer` table: one on the `customer_id` column called `PRIMARY`, and four others on the `store_id`, `address_id`, `last_name`, and `email` columns. If you are wondering where these indexes came from, I created the index on the `email` column, and the rest were installed as part of the sample Sakila database. Here's the statement used to create the table:

```

CREATE TABLE customer (
    customer_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,
    store_id TINYINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL,
    first_name VARCHAR(45) NOT NULL,
    last_name VARCHAR(45) NOT NULL,
    email VARCHAR(50) DEFAULT NULL,
    address_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL,
    active BOOLEAN NOT NULL DEFAULT TRUE,
    create_date DATETIME NOT NULL,
    last_update TIMESTAMP DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
    PRIMARY KEY  (customer_id),

```

```
KEY idx_fk_store_id (store_id),
KEY idx_fk_address_id (address_id),
KEY idx_last_name (last_name),
...
```

When the table was created, the MySQL server automatically generated an index on the primary key column, which in this case is `customer_id`, and gave the index the name **PRIMARY**. This is a special type of index used with a primary key constraint, but I will cover constraints later in this chapter.

If, after creating an index, you decide that the index is not proving useful, you can remove it via the following:

```
mysql> ALTER TABLE customer
-> DROP INDEX idx_email;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.50 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```



SQL Server and Oracle Database users must use the `drop index` command to remove an index, as in:

```
DROP INDEX idx_email; (Oracle)
```

```
DROP INDEX idx_email ON customer; (SQL Server)
```

MySQL now also supports the `drop index` command, although it is also mapped to the `alter table` command.

## Unique indexes

When designing a database, it is important to consider which columns are allowed to contain duplicate data and which are not. For example, it is allowable to have two customers named John Smith in the `customer` table since each row will have a different identifier (`customer_id`), email, and address to help tell them apart. You would not, however, want to allow two different customers to have the same email address. You can enforce a rule against duplicate values by creating a *unique index* on the `customer.email` column.

A unique index plays multiple roles; along with providing all the benefits of a regular index, it also serves as a mechanism for disallowing duplicate values in the indexed column. Whenever a row is inserted or when the indexed column is modified, the database server checks the unique index to see whether the value already exists in another row in the table. Here's how you would create a unique index on the `customer.email` column:

```
mysql> ALTER TABLE customer
-> ADD UNIQUE idx_email (email);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.64 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```



SQL Server and Oracle Database users need only add the `unique` keyword when creating an index, as in:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX idx_email  
ON customer (email);
```

With the index in place, you will receive an error if you try to add a new customer with an email address that already exists:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO customer  
-> (store_id, first_name, last_name, email, address_id, active)  
-> VALUES  
-> (1,'ALAN','KAHN', 'ALAN.KAHN@sakilacustomer.org', 394, 1);  
ERROR 1062 (23000): Duplicate entry 'ALAN.KAHN@sakilacustomer.org'  
for key 'idx_email'
```

You should not build unique indexes on your primary key column(s), since the server already checks uniqueness for primary key values. You may, however, create more than one unique index on the same table if you feel that it is warranted.

### Multicolumn indexes

Along with the single-column indexes demonstrated thus far, you may also build indexes that span multiple columns. If, for example, you find yourself searching for customers by first *and* last names, you can build an index on *both* columns together, as in:

```
mysql> ALTER TABLE customer  
-> ADD INDEX idx_full_name (last_name, first_name);  
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.35 sec)  
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```

This index will be useful for queries that specify the first and last names or just the last name, but it would not be useful for queries that specify only the customer's first name. To understand why, consider how you would find a person's phone number; if you know the person's first and last names, you can use a phone book to find the number quickly, since a phone book is organized by last name and then by first name. If you know only the person's first name, you would need to scan every entry in the phone book to find all the entries with the specified first name.

When building multiple-column indexes, therefore, you should think carefully about which column to list first, which column to list second, and so on, to help make the index as useful as possible. Keep in mind, however, that there is nothing stopping you from building multiple indexes using the same set of columns but in a different order if you feel that it is needed to ensure adequate response time.

## Types of Indexes

Indexing is a powerful tool, but since there are many different types of data, a single indexing strategy doesn't always do the job. The following sections illustrate the different types of indexing available from various servers.

### B-tree indexes

All the indexes shown thus far are *balanced-tree indexes*, which are more commonly known as *B-tree indexes*. MySQL, Oracle Database, and SQL Server all default to B-tree indexing, so you will get a B-tree index unless you explicitly ask for another type. As you might expect, B-tree indexes are organized as trees, with one or more levels of *branch nodes* leading to a single level of *leaf nodes*. Branch nodes are used for navigating the tree, while leaf nodes hold the actual values and location information. For example, a B-tree index built on the `customer.last_name` column might look something like Figure 13-1.

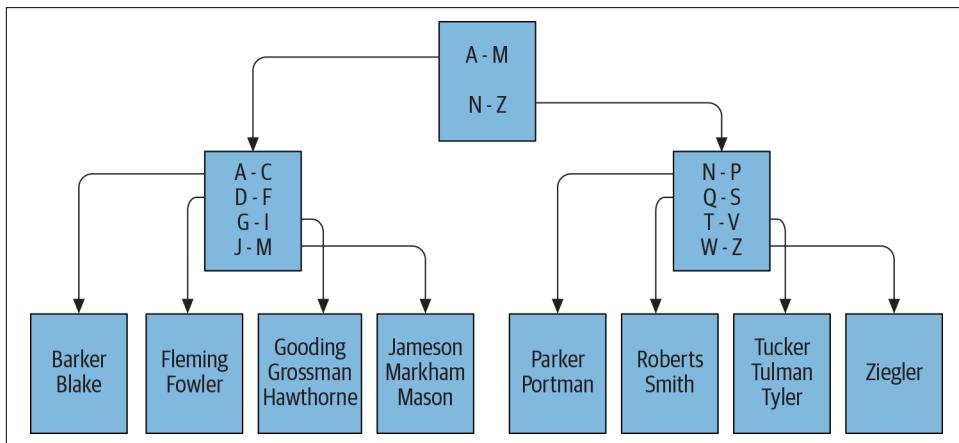


Figure 13-1. B-tree example

If you were to issue a query to retrieve all customers whose last name starts with *G*, the server would look at the top branch node (called the *root node*) and follow the link to the branch node that handles last names beginning with *A* through *M*. This branch node would, in turn, direct the server to a leaf node containing last names beginning with *G* through *I*. The server then starts reading the values in the leaf node until it encounters a value that doesn't begin with *G* (which, in this case, is *Hawthorne*).

As rows are inserted, updated, and deleted from the `customer` table, the server will attempt to keep the tree balanced so that there aren't far more branch/leaf nodes on one side of the root node than the other. The server can add or remove branch nodes to redistribute the values more evenly and can even add or remove an entire level of

branch nodes. By keeping the tree balanced, the server is able to traverse quickly to the leaf nodes to find the desired values without having to navigate through many levels of branch nodes.

## Bitmap indexes

Although B-tree indexes are great at handling columns that contain many different values, such as a customer's first/last names, they can become unwieldy when built on a column that allows only a small number of values. For example, you may decide to generate an index on the `customer.active` column so that you can quickly retrieve all active or inactive accounts. Because there are only two different values (stored as 1 for active and 0 for inactive), however, and because there are far more active customers, it can be difficult to maintain a balanced B-tree index as the number of customers grows.

For columns that contain only a small number of values across a large number of rows (known as *low-cardinality* data), a different indexing strategy is needed. To handle this situation more efficiently, Oracle Database includes *bitmap indexes*, which generate a bitmap for each value stored in the column. If you were to build a bitmap index on the `customer.active` column, the index would maintain two bitmaps: one for the value 0 and another for the value 1. When you write a query to retrieve all inactive customers, the database server can traverse the 0 bitmap and quickly retrieve the desired rows.

Bitmap indexes are a nice, compact indexing solution for low-cardinality data, but this indexing strategy breaks down if the number of values stored in the column climbs too high in relation to the number of rows (known as *high-cardinality* data), since the server would need to maintain too many bitmaps. For example, you would never build a bitmap index on your primary key column, since this represents the highest possible cardinality (a different value for every row).

Oracle users can generate bitmap indexes by simply adding the `bitmap` keyword to the `create index` statement, as in:

```
CREATE BITMAP INDEX idx_active ON customer (active);
```

Bitmap indexes are commonly used in data warehousing environments, where large amounts of data are generally indexed on columns containing relatively few values (e.g., sales quarters, geographic regions, products, salespeople).

## Text indexes

If your database stores documents, you may need to allow users to search for words or phrases in the documents. You certainly don't want the server to peruse each document and scan for the desired text each time a search is requested, but traditional indexing strategies don't work for this situation. To handle this situation,

MySQL, SQL Server, and Oracle Database include specialized indexing and search mechanisms for documents; both SQL Server and MySQL include what they call *full-text* indexes, and Oracle Database includes a powerful set of tools known as *Oracle Text*. Document searches are specialized enough that it is not practical to show an example, but it is useful to at least know what is available.

## How Indexes Are Used

Indexes are generally used by the server to quickly locate rows in a particular table, after which the server visits the associated table to extract the additional information requested by the user. Consider the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE first_name LIKE 'S%' AND last_name LIKE 'P%';
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      84 | SARA       | PERRY      |
|     197 | SUE        | PETERS     |
|    167 | SALLY      | PIERCE    |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

For this query, the server can employ any of the following strategies:

- Scan all rows in the `customer` table.
- Use the index on the `last_name` column to find all customers whose last name starts with P; then visit each row of the `customer` table to find only rows whose first name starts with S.
- Use the index on the `last_name` and `first_name` columns to find all customers whose last name starts with P and whose first name starts with S.

The third choice seems to be the best option, since the index will yield all of the rows needed for the result set, without the need to revisit the table. But how do you know which of the three options will be utilized? To see how MySQL's query optimizer decides to execute the query, I use the `explain` statement to ask the server to show the execution plan for the query rather than executing the query:

```
mysql> EXPLAIN
-> SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE first_name LIKE 'S%' AND last_name LIKE 'P%' \G;
***** 1. row *****
id: 1
select_type: SIMPLE
table: customer
partitions: NULL
```

```
type: range
possible_keys: idx_last_name, idx_full_name
key: idx_full_name
key_len: 274
ref: NULL
rows: 28
filtered: 11.11
Extra: Using where; Using index
1 row in set, 1 warning (0.00 sec)
```



Each database server includes tools to allow you to see how the query optimizer handles your SQL statement. SQL Server allows you to see an execution plan by issuing the statement `set show plan_text on` before running your SQL statement. Oracle Database includes the `explain plan` statement, which writes the execution plan to a special table called `plan_table`.

Looking at the query results, the `possible_keys` column tells you that the server could decide to use either the `idx_last_name` or the `idx_full_name` index, and the `key` column tells you that the `idx_full_name` index was chosen. Furthermore, the `type` column tells you that a range scan will be utilized, meaning that the database server will be looking for a range of values in the index, rather than expecting to retrieve a single row.



The process that I just led you through is an example of query tuning. Tuning involves looking at an SQL statement and determining the resources available to the server to execute the statement. You can decide to modify the SQL statement, to adjust the database resources, or to do both in order to make a statement run more efficiently. Tuning is a detailed topic, and I strongly urge you to either read your server's tuning guide or pick up a good tuning book so that you can see all the different approaches available for your server.

## The Downside of Indexes

If indexes are so great, why not index everything? Well, the key to understanding why more indexes are not necessarily a good thing is to keep in mind that every index is a table (a special type of table but still a table). Therefore, every time a row is added to or removed from a table, all indexes on that table must be modified. When a row is updated, any indexes on the column or columns that were affected need to be modified as well. Therefore, the more indexes you have, the more work the server needs to do to keep all schema objects up-to-date, which tends to slow things down.

Indexes also require disk space as well as some amount of care from your administrators, so the best strategy is to add an index when a clear need arises. If you need an index for only special purposes, such as a monthly maintenance routine, you can always add the index, run the routine, and then drop the index until you need it again. In the case of data warehouses, where indexes are crucial during business hours as users run reports and ad hoc queries but are problematic when data is being loaded into the warehouse overnight, it is a common practice to drop the indexes before data is loaded and then re-create them before the warehouse opens for business.

In general, you should strive to have neither too many indexes nor too few. If you aren't sure how many indexes you should have, you can use this strategy as a default:

- Make sure all primary key columns are indexed (most servers automatically create unique indexes when you create primary key constraints). For multicolumn primary keys, consider building additional indexes on a subset of the primary key columns or on all the primary key columns but in a different order than the primary key constraint definition.
- Build indexes on all columns that are referenced in foreign key constraints. Keep in mind that the server checks to make sure there are no child rows when a parent is deleted, so it must issue a query to search for a particular value in the column. If there's no index on the column, the entire table must be scanned.
- Index any columns that will frequently be used to retrieve data. Most date columns are good candidates, along with short (2- to 50-character) string columns.

After you have built your initial set of indexes, try to capture actual queries against your tables, look at the server's execution plan, and modify your indexing strategy to fit the most common access paths.

## Constraints

A constraint is simply a restriction placed on one or more columns of a table. There are several different types of constraints, including:

### *Primary key constraints*

Identify the column or columns that guarantee uniqueness within a table

### *Foreign key constraints*

Restrict one or more columns to contain only values found in another table's primary key columns (may also restrict the allowable values in other tables if update cascade or delete cascade rules are established)

### *Unique constraints*

Restrict one or more columns to contain unique values within a table (primary key constraints are a special type of unique constraint)

### *Check constraints*

Restrict the allowable values for a column

Without constraints, a database's consistency is suspect. For example, if the server allows you to change a customer's ID in the `customer` table without changing the same customer ID in the `rental` table, then you will end up with rental data that no longer points to valid customer records (known as *orphaned rows*). With primary and foreign key constraints in place, however, the server will either raise an error if an attempt is made to modify or delete data that is referenced by other tables or propagate the changes to other tables for you (more on this shortly).



If you want to use foreign key constraints with the MySQL server, you must use the InnoDB storage engine for your tables.

## Constraint Creation

Constraints are generally created at the same time as the associated table via the `create table` statement. To illustrate, here's an example from the schema generation script for the Sakila sample database:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
    customer_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,
    store_id TINYINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL,
    first_name VARCHAR(45) NOT NULL,
    last_name VARCHAR(45) NOT NULL,
    email VARCHAR(50) DEFAULT NULL,
    address_id SMALLINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL,
    active BOOLEAN NOT NULL DEFAULT TRUE,
    create_date DATETIME NOT NULL,
    last_update TIMESTAMP DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
        ON UPDATE CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
    PRIMARY KEY (customer_id),
    KEY idx_fk_store_id (store_id),
    KEY idx_fk_address_id (address_id),
    KEY idx_last_name (last_name),
    CONSTRAINT fk_customer_address FOREIGN KEY (address_id)
        REFERENCES address (address_id) ON DELETE RESTRICT ON UPDATE CASCADE,
    CONSTRAINT fk_customer_store FOREIGN KEY (store_id)
        REFERENCES store (store_id) ON DELETE RESTRICT ON UPDATE CASCADE
)ENGINE=InnoDB DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8;
```

The `customer` table includes three constraints: one to specify that the `customer_id` column serves as the primary key for the table, and two more to specify that the `address_id` and `store_id` columns serve as foreign keys to the `address` and `store` table. Alternatively, you could create the `customer` table without foreign key constraints and add the foreign key constraints later via `alter table` statements:

```
ALTER TABLE customer
ADD CONSTRAINT fk_customer_address FOREIGN KEY (address_id)
REFERENCES address (address_id) ON DELETE RESTRICT ON UPDATE CASCADE;

ALTER TABLE customer
ADD CONSTRAINT fk_customer_store FOREIGN KEY (store_id)
REFERENCES store (store_id) ON DELETE RESTRICT ON UPDATE CASCADE;
```

Both of these statements include several `on` clauses:

- `on delete restrict`, which will cause the server to raise an error if a row is deleted in the parent table (`address` or `store`) that is referenced in the child table (`customer`)
- `on update cascade`, which will cause the server to propagate a change to the primary key value of a parent table (`address` or `store`) to the child table (`customer`)

The `on delete restrict` clause protects against orphaned records when rows are deleted from the parent table. To illustrate, let's pick a row in the `address` table and show the data from both the `address` and `customer` tables that share this value:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, c.address_id, a.address
   -> FROM customer c
   -> INNER JOIN address a
   -> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
   -> WHERE a.address_id = 123;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address_id | address
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| SHERRY     | MARSHALL  |      123 | 1987 Coacalco de Berriozbal Loop |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

The results show that there is a single `customer` row (for Sherry Marshall) whose `address_id` column contains the value 123.

Here's what happens if you try to remove this row from the parent (`address`) table:

```
mysql> DELETE FROM address WHERE address_id = 123;
ERROR 1451 (23000): Cannot delete or update a parent row:
a foreign key constraint fails (`sakila`.`customer`,
CONSTRAINT `fk_customer_address` FOREIGN KEY (`address_id`)
REFERENCES `address` (`address_id`)
ON DELETE RESTRICT ON UPDATE CASCADE)
```

Because at least one row in the child table contains the value 123 in the `address_id` column, the `on delete restrict` clause of the foreign key constraint caused the statement to fail.

The `on update cascade` clause also protects against orphaned records when a primary key value is updated in the parent table using a different strategy. Here's what happens if you modify a value in the `address.address_id` column:

```
mysql> UPDATE address
      -> SET address_id = 9999
      -> WHERE address_id = 123;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.37 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

The statement executed without error, and one row was modified. But what happened to Sherry Marshall's row in the `customer` table? Does it still point to address ID 123, which no longer exists? To find out, let's run the last query again, but substitute the new value 9999 for the previous value of 123:

```
mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, c.address_id, a.address
      -> FROM customer c
      -> INNER JOIN address a
      -> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
      -> WHERE a.address_id = 9999;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address_id | address
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| SHERRY     | MARSHALL  |      9999 | 1987 Coacalco de Berriozbal Loop |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

As you can see, the same results are returned as before (other than the new address ID value), which means that the value 9999 was automatically updated in the `customer` table. This is known as a *cascade*, and it's the second mechanism used to protect against orphaned rows.

Along with `restrict` and `cascade`, you can also choose `set null`, which will set the foreign key value to `null` in the child table when a row is deleted or updated in the parent table. Altogether, there are six different options to choose from when defining foreign key constraints:

- `on delete restrict`
- `on update cascade`
- `on delete set null`
- `on update restrict`
- `on update cascade`

- `on update set null`

These are optional, so you can choose zero, one, or two (one `on delete` and one `on update`) of these when defining your foreign key constraints.

Finally, if you want to remove a primary or foreign key constraint, you can use the `alter table` statement again, except that you specify `drop` instead of `add`. While it is unusual to drop a primary key constraint, foreign key constraints are sometimes dropped during certain maintenance operations and then reestablished.

## Test Your Knowledge

Work through the following exercises to test your knowledge of indexes and constraints. When you're done, compare your solutions with those in [Appendix B](#).

### Exercise 13-1

Generate an `alter table` statement for the `rental` table so that an error will be raised if a row having a value found in the `rental.customer_id` column is deleted from the `customer` table.

### Exercise 13-2

Generate a multicolumn index on the `payment` table that could be used by both of the following queries:

```
SELECT customer_id, payment_date, amount
FROM payment
WHERE payment_date > cast('2019-12-31 23:59:59' as datetime);

SELECT customer_id, payment_date, amount
FROM payment
WHERE payment_date > cast('2019-12-31 23:59:59' as datetime)
AND amount < 5;
```



# CHAPTER 14

---

# Views

Well-designed applications generally expose a public interface while keeping implementation details private, thereby enabling future design changes without impacting end users. When designing your database, you can achieve a similar result by keeping your tables private and allowing your users to access data only through a set of *views*. This chapter strives to define what views are, how they are created, and when and how you might want to use them.

## What Are Views?

A view is simply a mechanism for querying data. Unlike tables, views do not involve data storage; you won't need to worry about views filling up your disk space. You create a view by assigning a name to a `select` statement and then storing the query for others to use. Other users can then use your view to access data just as though they were querying tables directly (in fact, they may not even know they are using a view).

As a simple example, let's say that you want to partially obscure the email address in the `customer` table. The marketing department, for example, may need access to email addresses in order to advertise promotions, but otherwise your company's privacy policy dictates that this data be kept secure. Therefore, instead of allowing direct access to the `customer` table, you define a view called `customer_vw` and mandate that all nonmarketing personnel use it to access customer data. Here's the view definition:

```
CREATE VIEW customer_vw
  (customer_id,
   first_name,
   last_name,
   email
  )
AS
SELECT
```

```

customer_id,
first_name,
last_name,
concat(substr(email,1,2), '*****', substr(email, -4)) email
FROM customer;

```

The first part of the statement lists the view's column names, which may be different from those of the underlying table. The second part of the statement is a `select` statement, which must contain one expression for each column in the view. The `email` column is generated by taking the first two characters of the `email` address, concatenated with '\*\*\*\*\*', and then concatenated with the last four characters of the `email` address.

When the `create view` statement is executed, the database server simply stores the view definition for future use; the query is not executed, and no data is retrieved or stored. Once the view has been created, users can query it just like they would a table, as in:

```

mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name, email
    -> FROM customer_vw;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | email      |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY       | SMITH     | MA*****.org |
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON   | PA*****.org |
| LINDA      | WILLIAMS  | LT*****.org |
| BARBARA    | JONES     | BA*****.org |
| ELIZABETH  | BROWN     | EL*****.org |
...
| ENRIQUE    | FORSYTHE  | EN*****.org |
| FREDDIE    | DUGGAN    | FR*****.org |
| WADE       | DELVALLE  | WA*****.org |
| AUSTIN     | CINTRON   | AU*****.org |
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Even though the `customer_vw` view definition includes four columns of the `customer` table, the previous query retrieves only three of the four. As you'll see later in the chapter, this is an important distinction if some of the columns in your view are attached to functions or subqueries.

From the user's standpoint, a view looks exactly like a table. If you want to know what columns are available in a view, you can use MySQL's (or Oracle's) `describe` command to examine it:

```

mysql> describe customer_vw;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field      | Type           | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | smallint(5) unsigned | NO   |    | 0       |      |

```

```

| first_name | varchar(45)      | NO   |     | NULL    |     |
| last_name  | varchar(45)      | NO   |     | NULL    |     |
| email      | varchar(11)       | YES  |     | NULL    |     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

You are free to use any clauses of the `select` statement when querying through a view, including `group by`, `having`, and `order by`. Here's an example:

```

mysql> SELECT first_name, count(*), min(last_name), max(last_name)
-> FROM customer_vw
-> WHERE first_name LIKE 'J%'
-> GROUP BY first_name
-> HAVING count(*) > 1
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | count(*) | min(last_name) | max(last_name) |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| JAMIE      |        2 | RICE          | WAUGH         |
| JESSIE     |        2 | BANKS         | MILAM         |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

In addition, you can join views to other tables (or even to other views) within a query, as in:

```

mysql> SELECT cv.first_name, cv.last_name, p.amount
-> FROM customer_vw cv
-> INNER JOIN payment p
-> ON cv.customer_id = p.customer_id
-> WHERE p.amount >= 11;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | amount |
+-----+-----+-----+
| KAREN      | JACKSON   | 11.99 |
| VICTORIA   | GIBSON    | 11.99 |
| VANESSA    | SIMS      | 11.99 |
| ALMA       | AUSTIN    | 11.99 |
| ROSEMARY   | SCHMIDT   | 11.99 |
| TANYA      | GILBERT   | 11.99 |
| RICHARD    | MCCRARY   | 11.99 |
| NICHOLAS   | BARFIELD  | 11.99 |
| KENT       | ARSENAULT | 11.99 |
| TERRANCE   | ROUSH     | 11.99 |
+-----+-----+-----+
10 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

This query joins the `customer_vw` view to the `payment` table in order to find customers who have paid \$11 or more for a film rental.

# Why Use Views?

In the previous section, I demonstrated a simple view whose sole purpose was to mask the contents of the `customer.email` column. While views are often employed for this purpose, there are many reasons for using views, as detailed in the following subsections.

## Data Security

If you create a table and allow users to query it, they will be able to access every column and every row in the table. As I pointed out earlier, however, your table may include some columns that contain sensitive data, such as identification numbers or credit card numbers; not only is it a bad idea to expose such data to all users, but also it might violate your company's privacy policies, or even state or federal laws, to do so.

The best approach for these situations is to keep the table private (i.e., don't grant `select` permission to any users) and then to create one or more views that either omit or obscure (such as the '\*\*\*\*\*' approach taken with the `customer_vw.email` column) the sensitive columns. You may also constrain which *rows* a set of users may access by adding a `where` clause to your view definition. For example, the next view definition excludes inactive customers:

```
CREATE VIEW active_customer_vw
  (customer_id,
   first_name,
   last_name,
   email
  )
AS
SELECT
  customer_id,
  first_name,
  last_name,
  concat(substr(email,1,2), '*****', substr(email, -4)) email
FROM customer
WHERE active = 1;
```

If you provide this view to your marketing department, they will be able to avoid sending information to inactive customers, because the condition in the view's `where` clause will always be included in their queries.



Oracle Database users have another option for securing both rows and columns of a table: Virtual Private Database (VPD). VPD allows you to attach policies to your tables, after which the server will modify a user's query as necessary to enforce the policies. For example, if you enact a policy that members of the sales and marketing departments can see only active customers, then the condition `active = 1` will be added to all of their queries against the `customer` table.

## Data Aggregation

Reporting applications generally require aggregated data, and views are a great way to make it appear as though data is being preaggregated and stored in the database. As an example, let's say that an application generates a report each month showing the total sales for each film category so that the managers can decide what new films to add to inventory. Rather than allowing the application developers to write queries against the base tables, you could provide them with the following view:<sup>1</sup>

```
CREATE VIEW sales_by_film_category
AS
SELECT
    c.name AS category,
    SUM(p.amount) AS total_sales
FROM payment AS p
    INNER JOIN rental AS r ON p.rental_id = r.rental_id
    INNER JOIN inventory AS i ON r.inventory_id = i.inventory_id
    INNER JOIN film AS f ON i.film_id = f.film_id
    INNER JOIN film_category AS fc ON f.film_id = fc.film_id
    INNER JOIN category AS c ON fc.category_id = c.category_id
GROUP BY c.name
ORDER BY total_sales DESC;
```

Using this approach gives you a great deal of flexibility as a database designer. If you decide at some point in the future that query performance would improve dramatically if the data were preaggregated in a table rather than summed using a view, you could create a `film_category_sales` table, load it with aggregated data, and modify the `sales_by_film_category` view definition to retrieve data from this table. Afterward, all queries that use the `sales_by_film_category` view will retrieve data from the new `film_category_sales` table, meaning that users will see a performance improvement without needing to modify their queries.

---

<sup>1</sup> This view definition is included in the Sakila sample database, along with six others, several of which will be used in upcoming examples.

## Hiding Complexity

One of the most common reasons for deploying views is to shield end users from complexity. For example, let's say that a report is created each month showing information about all of the films, along with the film category, the number of actors appearing in the film, the total number of copies in inventory, and the number of rentals for each film. Rather than expecting the report designer to navigate six different tables to gather the necessary data, you could provide a view that looks as follows:

```
CREATE VIEW film_stats
AS
SELECT f.film_id, f.title, f.description, f.rating,
(SELECT c.name
  FROM category c
  INNER JOIN film_category fc
    ON c.category_id = fc.category_id
   WHERE fc.film_id = f.film_id) category_name,
(SELECT count(*)
  FROM film_actor fa
 WHERE fa.film_id = f.film_id
) num_actors,
(SELECT count(*)
  FROM inventory i
 WHERE i.film_id = f.film_id
) inventory_cnt,
(SELECT count(*)
  FROM inventory i
  INNER JOIN rental r
    ON i.inventory_id = r.inventory_id
   WHERE i.film_id = f.film_id
) num_rentals
FROM film f;
```

This view definition is interesting because even though data from six different tables can be retrieved through the view, the `from` clause of the query has only one table (`film`). Data from the other five tables is generated using scalar subqueries. If someone uses this view but does *not* reference the `category_name`, `num_actors`, `inventory_cnt`, or `num_rentals` column, then none of the subqueries will be executed. This approach allows the view to be used for supplying descriptive information from the `film` table without unnecessarily joining five other tables.

## Joining Partitioned Data

Some database designs break large tables into multiple pieces in order to improve performance. For example, if the `payment` table became large, the designers may decide to break it into two tables: `payment_current`, which holds the latest six months of data, and `payment_historic`, which holds all data up to six months ago. If a customer wants to see all the payments for a particular customer, you would need to

query both tables. By creating a view that queries both tables and combines the results together, however, you can make it look like all payment data is stored in a single table. Here's the view definition:

```
CREATE VIEW payment_all
(payment_id,
 customer_id,
 staff_id,
 rental_id,
 amount,
 payment_date,
 last_update
)
AS
SELECT payment_id, customer_id, staff_id, rental_id,
       amount, payment_date, last_update
FROM payment_historic
UNION ALL
SELECT payment_id, customer_id, staff_id, rental_id,
       amount, payment_date, last_update
FROM payment_current;
```

Using a view in this case is a good idea because it allows the designers to change the structure of the underlying data without the need to force all database users to modify their queries.

## Updatable Views

If you provide users with a set of views to use for data retrieval, what should you do if the users also need to modify the same data? It might seem a bit strange, for example, to force the users to retrieve data using a view but then allow them to directly modify the underlying table using `update` or `insert` statements. For this purpose, MySQL, Oracle Database, and SQL Server all allow you to modify data through a view, as long as you abide by certain restrictions. In the case of MySQL, a view is updatable if the following conditions are met:

- No aggregate functions are used (`max()`, `min()`, `avg()`, etc.).
- The view does not employ `group by` or `having` clauses.
- No subqueries exist in the `select` or `from` clause, and any subqueries in the `where` clause do not refer to tables in the `from` clause.
- The view does not utilize `union`, `union all`, or `distinct`.
- The `from` clause includes at least one table or updatable view.
- The `from` clause uses only inner joins if there is more than one table or view.

To demonstrate the utility of updatable views, it might be best to start with a simple view definition and then to move to a more complex view.

## Updating Simple Views

The view at the beginning of the chapter is about as simple as it gets, so let's start there:

```
CREATE VIEW customer_vw
  (customer_id,
   first_name,
   last_name,
   email
  )
AS
SELECT
  customer_id,
  first_name,
  last_name,
  concat(substr(email,1,2), '*****', substr(email, -4)) email
FROM customer;
```

The `customer_vw` view queries a single table, and only one of the four columns is derived via an expression. This view definition doesn't violate any of the restrictions listed earlier, so you can use it to modify data in the `customer` table. Let's use the view to update Mary Smith's last name to Smith-Allen:

```
mysql> UPDATE customer_vw
    -> SET last_name = 'SMITH-ALLEN'
    -> WHERE customer_id = 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.11 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

As you can see, the statement claims to have modified one row, but let's check the underlying `customer` table just to be sure:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name, email
    -> FROM customer
    -> WHERE customer_id = 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | email          |
+-----+-----+-----+
| MARY      | SMITH-ALLEN | MARY.SMITH@sakilacustomer.org |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

While you can modify most of the columns in the view in this fashion, you will not be able to modify the `email` column, since it is derived from an expression:

```
mysql> UPDATE customer_vw
      -> SET email = 'MARY.SMITH-ALLEN@sakilacustomer.org'
      -> WHERE customer_id = 1;
ERROR 1348 (HY000): Column 'email' is not updatable
```

In this case, it may not be a bad thing, since the main reason for creating the view was to obscure the email addresses.

If you want to insert data using the `customer_vw` view, you are out of luck; views that contain derived columns cannot be used for inserting data, even if the derived columns are not included in the statement. For example, the next statement attempts to populate only the `customer_id`, `first_name`, and `last_name` columns using the `customer_vw` view:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO customer_vw
      -> (customer_id,
      -> first_name,
      -> last_name)
      -> VALUES (99999,'ROBERT','SIMPSON');
ERROR 1471 (HY000): The target table customer_vw of the INSERT
is not insertable-into
```

Now that you have seen the limitations of simple views, the next section will demonstrate the use of a view that joins multiple tables.

## Updating Complex Views

While single-table views are certainly common, many of the views that you come across will include multiple tables in the `from` clause of the underlying query. The next view, for example, joins the `customer`, `address`, `city`, and `country` tables so that all the data for customers can be easily queried:

```
CREATE VIEW customer_details
AS
SELECT c.customer_id,
       c.store_id,
       c.first_name,
       c.last_name,
       c.address_id,
       c.active,
       c.create_date,
       a.address,
       ct.city,
       cn.country,
       a.postal_code
  FROM customer c
 INNER JOIN address a
    ON c.address_id = a.address_id
 INNER JOIN city ct
    ON a.city_id = ct.city_id
```

```
INNER JOIN country cn
ON ct.country_id = cn.country_id;
```

You may use this view to update data in either the `customer` or `address` table, as the following statements demonstrate:

```
mysql> UPDATE customer_details
-> SET last_name = 'SMITH-ALLEN', active = 0
-> WHERE customer_id = 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.10 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

```
mysql> UPDATE customer_details
-> SET address = '999 Mockingbird Lane'
-> WHERE customer_id = 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.06 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0
```

The first statement modifies the `customer.last_name` and `customer.active` columns, whereas the second statement modifies the `address.address` column. You might be wondering what happens if you try to update columns from *both* tables in a single statement, so let's find out:

```
mysql> UPDATE customer_details
-> SET last_name = 'SMITH-ALLEN',
->     active = 0,
->     address = '999 Mockingbird Lane'
-> WHERE customer_id = 1;
ERROR 1393 (HY000): Can not modify more than one base table
through a join view 'sakila.customer_details'
```

As you can see, you are allowed to modify both of the underlying tables separately, but not within a single statement. Next, let's try to *insert* data into both tables for some new customers (`customer_id = 9998` and `9999`):

```
mysql> INSERT INTO customer_details
->   (customer_id, store_id, first_name, last_name,
->    address_id, active, create_date)
-> VALUES (9998, 1, 'BRIAN', 'SALAZAR', 5, 1, now());
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.23 sec)
```

This statement, which only populates columns from the `customer` table, works fine. Let's see what happens if we expand the column list to also include a column from the `address` table:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO customer_details
->   (customer_id, store_id, first_name, last_name,
->    address_id, active, create_date, address)
-> VALUES (9999, 2, 'THOMAS', 'BISHOP', 7, 1, now(),
->          '999 Mockingbird Lane');
ERROR 1393 (HY000): Can not modify more than one base table
through a join view 'sakila.customer_details'
```

This version, which includes columns spanning two different tables, raises an exception. In order to insert data through a complex view, you would need to know from where each column is sourced. Since many views are created to hide complexity from end users, this seems to defeat the purpose if the users need to have explicit knowledge of the view definition.



Oracle Database and SQL Server also allow data to be inserted and updated through views, but, like MySQL, there are many restrictions. If you are willing to write some PL/SQL or Transact-SQL, however, you can use a feature called *instead-of triggers*, which allows you to essentially intercept `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements against a view and write custom code to incorporate the changes. Without this type of feature, there are usually too many restrictions to make updating through views a feasible strategy for nontrivial applications.

## Test Your Knowledge

Test your understanding of views by working through the following exercises. When you're done, compare your solutions with those in [Appendix B](#).

### Exercise 14-1

Create a view definition that can be used by the following query to generate the given results:

```
SELECT title, category_name, first_name, last_name
FROM film_ctgry_actor
WHERE last_name = 'FAWCETT';
```

title	category_name	first_name	last_name
ACE GOLDFINGER	Horror	BOB	FAWCETT
ADAPTATION HOLES	Documentary	BOB	FAWCETT
CHINATOWN GLADIATOR	New	BOB	FAWCETT
CIRCUS YOUTH	Children	BOB	FAWCETT
CONTROL ANTHEM	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
DARES PLUTO	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
DARN FORRESTER	Action	BOB	FAWCETT
DAZED PUNK	Games	BOB	FAWCETT
DYNAMITE TARZAN	Classics	BOB	FAWCETT
HATE HANDICAP	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
HOMICIDE PEACH	Family	BOB	FAWCETT
JACKET FRISCO	Drama	BOB	FAWCETT
JUMANJI BLADE	New	BOB	FAWCETT
LAWLESS VISION	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
LEATHERNECKS DWARFS	Travel	BOB	FAWCETT

OSCAR GOLD	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
PELICAN COMFORTS	Documentary	BOB	FAWCETT
PERSONAL LADYBUGS	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
RAGING AIRPLANE	Sci-Fi	BOB	FAWCETT
RUN PACIFIC	New	BOB	FAWCETT
RUNNER MADIGAN	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
SADDLE ANTITRUST	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
SCORPION APOLLO	Drama	BOB	FAWCETT
SHAWSHANK BUBBLE	Travel	BOB	FAWCETT
TAXI KICK	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
BERETS AGENT	Action	JULIA	FAWCETT
BOILED DARES	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
CHISUM BEHAVIOR	Family	JULIA	FAWCETT
CLOSER BANG	Comedy	JULIA	FAWCETT
DAY UNFAITHFUL	New	JULIA	FAWCETT
HOPE TOTSIE	Classics	JULIA	FAWCETT
LUKE MUMMY	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT
MULAN MOON	Comedy	JULIA	FAWCETT
OPUS ICE	Foreign	JULIA	FAWCETT
POLLOCK DELIVERANCE	Foreign	JULIA	FAWCETT
RIDGEMONT SUBMARINE	New	JULIA	FAWCETT
SHANGHAI TYCOON	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
SHAWSHANK BUBBLE	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
THEORY MERMAID	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT
WAIT CIDER	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT

+-----+-----+-----+-----+

40 rows in set (0.00 sec)

## Exercise 14-2

The film rental company manager would like to have a report that includes the name of every country, along with the total payments for all customers who live in each country. Generate a view definition that queries the `country` table and uses a scalar subquery to calculate a value for a column named `tot_payments`.

Along with storing all of the data that various users insert into a database, a database server also needs to store information about all of the database objects (tables, views, indexes, etc.) that were created to store this data. The database server stores this information, not surprisingly, in a database. This chapter discusses how and where this information, known as *metadata*, is stored, how you can access it, and how you can use it to build flexible systems.

## Data About Data

Metadata is essentially data about data. Every time you create a database object, the database server needs to record various pieces of information. For example, if you were to create a table with multiple columns, a primary key constraint, three indexes, and a foreign key constraint, the database server would need to store all the following information:

- Table name
- Table storage information (tablespace, initial size, etc.)
- Storage engine
- Column names
- Column data types
- Default column values
- `not null` column constraints
- Primary key columns
- Primary key name
- Name of primary key index

- Index names
- Index types (B-tree, bitmap)
- Indexed columns
- Index column sort order (ascending or descending)
- Index storage information
- Foreign key name
- Foreign key columns
- Associated table/columns for foreign keys

This data is collectively known as the *data dictionary* or *system catalog*. The database server needs to store this data persistently, and it needs to be able to quickly retrieve this data in order to verify and execute SQL statements. Additionally, the database server must safeguard this data so that it can be modified only via an appropriate mechanism, such as the `alter table` statement.

While standards exist for the exchange of metadata between different servers, every database server uses a different mechanism to publish metadata, such as:

- A set of views, such as Oracle Database's `user_tables` and `all_constraints` views
- A set of system-stored procedures, such as SQL Server's `sp_tables` procedure or Oracle Database's `dbms_metadata` package
- A special database, such as MySQL's `information_schema` database

Along with SQL Server's system-stored procedures, which are a vestige of its Sybase lineage, SQL Server also includes a special schema called `information_schema` that is provided automatically within each database. Both MySQL and SQL Server provide this interface to conform with the ANSI SQL:2003 standard. The remainder of this chapter discusses the `information_schema` objects that are available in MySQL and SQL Server.

## **information\_schema**

All of the objects available within the `information_schema` database (or schema, in the case of SQL Server) are views. Unlike the `describe` utility, which I used in several chapters of this book as a way to show the structure of various tables and views, the views within `information_schema` can be queried and, thus, used programmatically (more on this later in the chapter). Here's an example that demonstrates how to retrieve the names of all of the tables in the Sakila database:

```

mysql> SELECT table_name, table_type
      -> FROM information_schema.tables
      -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila'
      -> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+
| TABLE_NAME          | TABLE_TYPE |
+-----+-----+
| actor               | BASE TABLE |
| actor_info          | VIEW        |
| address              | BASE TABLE |
| category             | BASE TABLE |
| city                 | BASE TABLE |
| country              | BASE TABLE |
| customer             | BASE TABLE |
| customer_list        | VIEW        |
| film                | BASE TABLE |
| film_actor           | BASE TABLE |
| film_category        | BASE TABLE |
| film_list            | VIEW        |
| film_text            | BASE TABLE |
| inventory            | BASE TABLE |
| language              | BASE TABLE |
| nicer_but_slower_film_list | VIEW |
| payment              | BASE TABLE |
| rental               | BASE TABLE |
| sales_by_film_category | VIEW |
| sales_by_store        | VIEW        |
| staff                | BASE TABLE |
| staff_list            | VIEW        |
| store                | BASE TABLE |
+-----+-----+
23 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

As you can see, the `information_schema.tables` view includes both tables and views; if you want to exclude the views, simply add another condition to the `where` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT table_name, table_type
      -> FROM information_schema.tables
      -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila'
      -> AND table_type = 'BASE TABLE'
      -> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+
| TABLE_NAME          | TABLE_TYPE |
+-----+-----+
| actor               | BASE TABLE |
| address              | BASE TABLE |
| category             | BASE TABLE |
| city                 | BASE TABLE |
| country              | BASE TABLE |
| customer             | BASE TABLE |
| film                | BASE TABLE |

```

```

| film_actor    | BASE TABLE |
| film_category | BASE TABLE |
| film_text     | BASE TABLE |
| inventory     | BASE TABLE |
| language      | BASE TABLE |
| payment       | BASE TABLE |
| rental         | BASE TABLE |
| staff          | BASE TABLE |
| store          | BASE TABLE |
+-----+
16 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

If you are only interested in information about views, you can query `information_schema.views`. Along with the view names, you can retrieve additional information, such as a flag that shows whether a view is updatable:

```

mysql> SELECT table_name, is_updatable
    -> FROM information_schema.views
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila'
    -> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+
| TABLE_NAME           | IS_UPDATABLE |
+-----+-----+
| actor_info           | NO          |
| customer_list        | YES         |
| film_list            | NO          |
| nicer_but_slower_film_list | NO          |
| sales_by_film_category | NO          |
| sales_by_store        | NO          |
| staff_list            | YES         |
+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Column information for both tables and views is available via the `columns` view. The following query shows column information for the `film` table:

```

mysql> SELECT column_name, data_type,
    -> character_maximum_length char_max_len,
    -> numeric_precision num_prcsn, numeric_scale num_scale
    -> FROM information_schema.columns
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'film'
    -> ORDER BY ordinal_position;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| COLUMN_NAME           | DATA_TYPE | char_max_len | num_prcsn | num_scale |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| film_id               | smallint  |      NULL   |       5 |       0 |
| title                 | varchar   |      255    |    NULL |    NULL |
| description            | text      |    65535    |    NULL |    NULL |
| release_year           | year      |      NULL   |    NULL |    NULL |
| language_id            | tinyint   |      NULL   |       3 |       0 |
| original_language_id  | tinyint   |      NULL   |       3 |       0 |
| rental_duration         | tinyint   |      NULL   |       3 |       0 |
| rental_rate             | decimal   |      NULL   |       4 |       2 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

| length          | smallint   |      NULL |      5 |      0 |
| replacement_cost | decimal    |      NULL |      5 |      2 |
| rating          | enum       |      5 |  NULL |  NULL |
| special_features | set        |      54 |  NULL |  NULL |
| last_update     | timestamp  |      NULL |  NULL |  NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
13 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The `ordinal_position` column is included merely as a means to retrieve the columns in the order in which they were added to the table.

You can retrieve information about a table's indexes via the `information_schema.statistics` view as demonstrated by the following query, which retrieves information for the indexes built on the `rental` table:

```

mysql> SELECT index_name, non_unique, seq_in_index, column_name
    -> FROM information_schema.statistics
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'rental'
    -> ORDER BY 1, 3;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| INDEX_NAME      | NON_UNIQUE | SEQ_IN_INDEX | COLUMN_NAME |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| idx_fk_customer_id |      1 |      1 | customer_id |
| idx_fk_inventory_id |      1 |      1 | inventory_id |
| idx_fk_staff_id |      1 |      1 | staff_id    |
| PRIMARY |      0 |      1 | rental_id   |
| rental_date |      0 |      1 | rental_date |
| rental_date |      0 |      2 | inventory_id |
| rental_date |      0 |      3 | customer_id |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

The `rental` table has a total of five indexes, one of which has three columns (`rental_date`) and one of which is a unique index (`PRIMARY`) used for the primary key constraint.

You can retrieve the different types of constraints (foreign key, primary key, unique) that have been created via the `information_schema.table_constraints` view. Here's a query that retrieves all of the constraints in the Sakila schema:

```

mysql> SELECT constraint_name, table_name, constraint_type
    -> FROM information_schema.table_constraints
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila'
    -> ORDER BY 3,1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| constraint_name | table_name | constraint_type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| fk_address_city | address    | FOREIGN KEY    |
| fk_city_country | city       | FOREIGN KEY    |
| fk_customer_address | customer | FOREIGN KEY    |
| fk_customer_store | customer  | FOREIGN KEY    |
| fk_film_actor_actor | film_actor | FOREIGN KEY    |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

fk_film_actor_film	film_actor	FOREIGN KEY
fk_film_category_category	film_category	FOREIGN KEY
fk_film_category_film	film_category	FOREIGN KEY
fk_film_language	film	FOREIGN KEY
fk_film_language_original	film	FOREIGN KEY
fk_inventory_film	inventory	FOREIGN KEY
fk_inventory_store	inventory	FOREIGN KEY
fk_payment_customer	payment	FOREIGN KEY
fk_payment_rental	payment	FOREIGN KEY
fk_payment_staff	payment	FOREIGN KEY
fk_rental_customer	rental	FOREIGN KEY
fk_rental_inventory	rental	FOREIGN KEY
fk_rental_staff	rental	FOREIGN KEY
fk_staff_address	staff	FOREIGN KEY
fk_staff_store	staff	FOREIGN KEY
fk_store_address	store	FOREIGN KEY
fk_store_staff	store	FOREIGN KEY
PRIMARY	film	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	film_actor	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	staff	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	film_category	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	store	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	actor	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	film_text	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	address	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	inventory	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	customer	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	category	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	language	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	city	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	payment	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	country	PRIMARY KEY
PRIMARY	rental	PRIMARY KEY
idx_email	customer	UNIQUE
idx_unique_manager	store	UNIQUE
rental_date	rental	UNIQUE

41 rows in set (0.02 sec)

Table 15-1 shows many of the `information_schema` views that are available in MySQL version 8.0.

Table 15-1. `information_schema` views

View name	Provides information about...
schemata	Databases
tables	Tables and views
columns	Columns of tables and views
statistics	Indexes
user_privileges	Who has privileges on which schema objects

View name	Provides information about...
schema_privileges	Who has privileges on which databases
table_privileges	Who has privileges on which tables
column_privileges	Who has privileges on which columns of which tables
character_sets	What character sets are available
collations	What collations are available for which character sets
collation_character_set_applicability	Which character sets are available for which collation
table_constraints	The unique, foreign key, and primary key constraints
key_column_usage	The constraints associated with each key column
routines	Stored routines (procedures and functions)
views	Views
triggers	Table triggers
plugins	Server plug-ins
engines	Available storage engines
partitions	Table partitions
events	Scheduled events
processlist	Running processes
referential_constraints	Foreign keys
parameters	Stored procedure and function parameters
profiling	User profiling information

While some of these views, such as `engines`, `events`, and `plugins`, are specific to MySQL, many of these views are available in SQL Server as well. If you are using Oracle Database, please consult the online [Oracle Database Reference Guide](#) for information about the `user_`, `all_`, and `dba_` views, as well as the `dbms_metadata` package.

## Working with Metadata

As I mentioned earlier, having the ability to retrieve information about your schema objects via SQL queries opens up some interesting possibilities. This section shows several ways in which you can make use of metadata in your applications.

### Schema Generation Scripts

While some project teams include a full-time database designer who oversees the design and implementation of the database, many projects take the “design-by-committee” approach, allowing multiple people to create database objects. After several weeks or months of development, you may need to generate a script that will create the various tables, indexes, views, and so on, that the team has deployed.

Although a variety of tools and utilities will generate these types of scripts for you, you can also query the `information_schema` views and generate the script yourself.

As an example, let's build a script that will create the `sakila.category` table. Here's the command used to build the table, which I extracted from the script used to build the example database:

```
CREATE TABLE category (
    category_id TINYINT UNSIGNED NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,
    name VARCHAR(25) NOT NULL,
    last_update TIMESTAMP NOT NULL DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
        ON UPDATE CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
    PRIMARY KEY  (category_id)
)ENGINE=InnoDB DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8;
```

Although it would certainly be easier to generate the script with the use of a procedural language (e.g., Transact-SQL or Java), since this is a book about SQL, I'm going to write a single query that will generate the `create table` statement. The first step is to query the `information_schema.columns` table to retrieve information about the columns in the table:

```
mysql> SELECT 'CREATE TABLE category (' create_table_statement
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT cols.txt
-> FROM
-> (SELECT concat(' ',column_name, ' ', column_type,
-> CASE
->     WHEN is_nullable = 'NO' THEN ' not null'
->     ELSE ''
-> END,
-> CASE
->     WHEN extra IS NOT NULL AND extra LIKE 'DEFAULT_GENERATED%'
->         THEN concat(' DEFAULT ',column_default,substr(extra,18))
->     WHEN extra IS NOT NULL THEN concat(' ', extra)
->     ELSE ''
-> END,
-> ',') txt
-> FROM information_schema.columns
-> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'category'
-> ORDER BY ordinal_position
-> ) cols
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT ')';
+-----+
| create_table_statement
+-----+
| CREATE TABLE category (
|   category_id tinyint(3) unsigned not null auto_increment,
|   name varchar(25) not null ,
|   last_update timestamp not null DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
|   on update CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
```

```

| )
+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)

Well, that got us pretty close; we just need to add queries against the table_constraints and key_column_usage views to retrieve information about the primary key constraint:

mysql> SELECT 'CREATE TABLE category (' create_table_statement
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT cols.txt
-> FROM
-> (SELECT concat(' ',column_name, ' ', column_type,
-> CASE
-> WHEN is_nullable = 'NO' THEN ' not null'
-> ELSE ''
-> END,
-> CASE
-> WHEN extra IS NOT NULL AND extra LIKE 'DEFAULT_GENERATED%'
-> THEN concat(' DEFAULT ',column_default,substr(extra,18))
-> WHEN extra IS NOT NULL THEN concat(' ', extra)
-> ELSE ''
-> END,
-> ',') txt
-> FROM information_schema.columns
-> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'category'
-> ORDER BY ordinal_position
-> ) cols
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat(' constraint primary key ()')
-> FROM information_schema.table_constraints
-> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'category'
-> AND constraint_type = 'PRIMARY KEY'
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT cols.txt
-> FROM
-> (SELECT concat(CASE WHEN ordinal_position > 1 THEN ' ,'
-> ELSE ' ' END, column_name) txt
-> FROM information_schema.key_column_usage
-> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'category'
-> AND constraint_name = 'PRIMARY'
-> ORDER BY ordinal_position
-> ) cols
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT ')';
-> UNION ALL
-> SELECT ')';

+-----+
| create_table_statement |
+-----+
| CREATE TABLE category ( |
|   category_id tinyint(3) unsigned not null auto_increment, |
| 
```

```
|   name varchar(25) not null ,
|   last_update timestamp not null DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
|     on update CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
| constraint primary key (
|   category_id
| )
| )
+
8 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

To see whether the statement is properly formed, I'll paste the query output into the `mysql` tool (I've changed the table name to `category2` so that it won't step on our existing table):

```
mysql> CREATE TABLE category2 (
->   category_id tinyint(3) unsigned not null auto_increment,
->   name varchar(25) not null ,
->   last_update timestamp not null DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
->     on update CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
-> constraint primary key (
->   category_id
-> )
-> );
```

Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.61 sec)

The statement executed without errors, and there is now a `category2` table in the Sakila database. For the query to generate a well-formed `create table` statement for *any* table, more work is required (such as handling indexes and foreign key constraints), but I'll leave that as an exercise.



If you are using a graphical development tool such as Toad, Oracle SQL Developer, or MySQL Workbench, you will be able to easily generate these types of scripts without writing your own queries. But, just in case you are stuck on a deserted island with only the MySQL command-line client...

## Deployment Verification

Many organizations allow for database maintenance windows, wherein existing database objects may be administered (such as adding/dropping partitions) and new schema objects and code can be deployed. After the deployment scripts have been run, it's a good idea to run a verification script to ensure that the new schema objects are in place with the appropriate columns, indexes, primary keys, and so forth. Here's a query that returns the number of columns, number of indexes, and number of primary key constraints (0 or 1) for each table in the Sakila schema:

```
mysql> SELECT tbl.table_name,
->   (SELECT count(*) FROM information_schema.columns clm
->   WHERE clm.table_schema = tbl.table_schema
```

```

->      AND clm.table_name = tbl.table_name) num_columns,
-> (SELECT count(*) FROM information_schema.statistics sta
-> WHERE sta.table_schema = tbl.table_schema
->      AND sta.table_name = tbl.table_name) num_indexes,
-> (SELECT count(*) FROM information_schema.table_constraints tc
-> WHERE tc.table_schema = tbl.table_schema
->      AND tc.table_name = tbl.table_name
->      AND tc.constraint_type = 'PRIMARY KEY') num_primary_keys
-> FROM information_schema.tables tbl
-> WHERE tbl.table_schema = 'sakila' AND tbl.table_type = 'BASE TABLE'
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| TABLE_NAME | num_columns | num_indexes | num_primary_keys |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| actor      |        4 |        2 |          1 |
| address    |        9 |        3 |          1 |
| category   |        3 |        1 |          1 |
| city       |        4 |        2 |          1 |
| country    |        3 |        1 |          1 |
| customer   |        9 |        7 |          1 |
| film       |       13 |        4 |          1 |
| film_actor |        3 |        3 |          1 |
| film_category |        3 |        3 |          1 |
| film_text  |        3 |        3 |          1 |
| inventory  |        4 |        4 |          1 |
| language   |        3 |        1 |          1 |
| payment    |        7 |        4 |          1 |
| rental     |        7 |        7 |          1 |
| staff      |       11 |        3 |          1 |
| store      |        4 |        3 |          1 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

You could execute this statement before and after the deployment and then verify any differences between the two sets of results before declaring the deployment a success.

## Dynamic SQL Generation

Some languages, such as Oracle’s PL/SQL and Microsoft’s Transact-SQL, are supersets of the SQL language, meaning that they include SQL statements in their grammar along with the usual procedural constructs, such as “if-then-else” and “while.” Other languages, such as Java, include the ability to interface with a relational database but do not include SQL statements in the grammar, meaning that all SQL statements must be contained within strings.

Therefore, most relational database servers, including SQL Server, Oracle Database, and MySQL, allow SQL statements to be submitted to the server as strings. Submitting strings to a database engine rather than utilizing its SQL interface is generally known as *dynamic SQL execution*. Oracle’s PL/SQL language, for example, includes an `execute immediate` command, which you can use to submit a string for execution,

while SQL Server includes a system stored procedure called `sp_executesql` for executing SQL statements dynamically.

MySQL provides the statements `prepare`, `execute`, and `deallocate` to allow for dynamic SQL execution. Here's a simple example:

```
mysql> SET @qry = 'SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name FROM customer';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> PREPARE dynsql1 FROM @qry;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
Statement prepared

mysql> EXECUTE dynsql1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      505 | RAFAEL    | ABNEY     |
|      504 | NATHANIEL | ADAM      |
|      36  | KATHLEEN   | ADAMS     |
|      96  | DIANA     | ALEXANDER |
|
|      ...  |           |           |
|      31  | BRENDA    | WRIGHT    |
|      318 | BRIAN     | WYMAN     |
|      402 | LUIS      | YANEZ     |
|      413 | MARVIN    | YEE       |
|      28  | CYNTHIA   | YOUNG     |
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.02 sec)

mysql> DEALLOCATE PREPARE dynsql1;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
```

The `set` statement simply assigns a string to the `qry` variable, which is then submitted to the database engine (for parsing, security checking, and optimization) using the `prepare` statement. After executing the statement by calling `execute`, the statement must be closed using `deallocate prepare`, which frees any database resources (e.g., cursors) that have been utilized during execution.

The next example shows how you could execute a query that includes placeholders so that conditions can be specified at runtime:

```
mysql> SET @qry = 'SELECT customer_id, first_name, last_name
   FROM customer WHERE customer_id = ?';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> PREPARE dynsql2 FROM @qry;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
Statement prepared

mysql> SET @custid = 9;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
```

```

mysql> EXECUTE dynsql2 USING @custid;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|         9 | MARGARET   | MOORE      |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SET @custid = 145;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> EXECUTE dynsql2 USING @custid;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       145 | LUCILLE    | HOLMES     |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> DEALLOCATE PREPARE dynsql2;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

```

In this sequence, the query contains a placeholder (the ? at the end of the statement) so that the customer ID value can be submitted at runtime. The statement is prepared once and then executed twice, once for customer ID 9 and again for customer ID 145, after which the statement is closed.

What, you may wonder, does this have to do with metadata? Well, if you are going to use dynamic SQL to query a table, why not build the query string using metadata rather than hardcoding the table definition? The following example generates the same dynamic SQL string as the previous example, but it retrieves the column names from the `information_schema.columns` view:

```

mysql> SELECT concat('SELECT ', 
->   concat_ws(',', cols.col1, cols.col2, cols.col3, cols.col4,
->   cols.col5, cols.col6, cols.col7, cols.col8, cols.col9),
->   ' FROM customer WHERE customer_id = ?')
-> INTO @qry
-> FROM
-> (SELECT
->   max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 1 THEN column_name
->           ELSE NULL END) col1,
->   max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 2 THEN column_name
->           ELSE NULL END) col2,
->   max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 3 THEN column_name
->           ELSE NULL END) col3,
->   max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 4 THEN column_name
->           ELSE NULL END) col4,
->   max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 5 THEN column_name
->           ELSE NULL END) col5,

```

```

->      max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 6 THEN column_name
->                ELSE NULL END) col6,
->      max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 7 THEN column_name
->                ELSE NULL END) col7,
->      max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 8 THEN column_name
->                ELSE NULL END) col8,
->      max(CASE WHEN ordinal_position = 9 THEN column_name
->                ELSE NULL END) col9
->  FROM information_schema.columns
-> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila' AND table_name = 'customer'
-> GROUP BY table_name
-> ) cols;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
mysql> SELECT @qry;
+-----+
| @qry |
+-----+
| SELECT customer_id,store_id(first_name,last_name,email,
   address_id,active,create_date,last_update
   FROM customer WHERE customer_id = ? |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> PREPARE dynsql3 FROM @qry;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
Statement prepared

mysql> SET @custid = 45;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> EXECUTE dynsql3 USING @custid;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | store_id | first_name | last_name
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|        45    |       1    | JANET     | PHILLIPS
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+
| email           | address_id | active
+-----+-----+-----+
| JANET.PHILLIPS@sakilacustomer.org | 49         |     1
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| create_date     | last_update
+-----+-----+
| 2006-02-14 22:04:36 | 2006-02-15 04:57:20 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> DEALLOCATE PREPARE dynsql3;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

```

The query pivots the first nine columns in the `customer` table, builds a query string using the `concat` and `concat_ws` functions, and assigns the string to the `qry` variable. The query string is then executed as before.



Generally, it would be better to generate the query using a procedural language that includes looping constructs, such as Java, PL/SQL, Transact-SQL, or MySQL's Stored Procedure Language. However, I wanted to demonstrate a pure SQL example, so I had to limit the number of columns retrieved to some reasonable number, which in this example is nine.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises are designed to test your understanding of metadata. When you're finished, see [Appendix B](#) for the solutions.

### Exercise 15-1

Write a query that lists all of the indexes in the Sakila schema. Include the table names.

### Exercise 15-2

Write a query that generates output that can be used to create all of the indexes on the `sakila.customer` table. Output should be of the form:

```
"ALTER TABLE <table_name> ADD INDEX <index_name> (<column_list>)"
```



# Analytic Functions

Data volumes have been growing at a staggering pace, and organizations are having difficulty storing all of it, not to mention trying to make sense of it. While data analysis has traditionally occurred outside of the database server, using specialized tools or languages such as Excel, R, and Python, the SQL language includes a robust set of functions useful for analytical processing. If you need to generate rankings to identify the top 10 salespeople in your company or if you are generating a financial report for your customer and need to calculate three-month rolling averages, you can use SQL's built-in analytic functions to perform these types of calculations.

## Analytic Function Concepts

After the database server has completed all of the steps necessary to evaluate a query, including joining, filtering, grouping, and sorting, the result set is complete and ready to be returned to the caller. Imagine if you could pause the query execution at this point and take a walk through the result set while it is still held in memory; what types of analysis might you want to do? If your result set contains sales data, perhaps you might want to generate rankings for salespeople or regions, or calculate percentage differences between one time period and another. If you are generating results for a financial report, perhaps you would like to calculate subtotals for each report section, and a grand total for the final section. Using analytic functions, you can do all of these things and more. Before diving into the details, the following subsections describe the mechanisms used by several of the most commonly used analytic functions.

## Data Windows

Let's say you have written a query that generates monthly sales totals for a given time period. For example, the following query sums up the total monthly payments for film rentals for the period May through August 2005:

```
mysql> SELECT quarter(payment_date) quarter,
->    monthname(payment_date) month_nm,
->    sum(amount) monthly_sales
->   FROM payment
->  WHERE year(payment_date) = 2005
->  GROUP BY quarter(payment_date), monthname(payment_date);
+-----+-----+
| quarter | month_nm | monthly_sales |
+-----+-----+
|      2 | May     |      4824.43 |
|      2 | June    |      9631.88 |
|      3 | July    |     28373.89 |
|      3 | August  |     24072.13 |
+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.13 sec)
```

Looking at the results, you can see that July had the highest monthly total across all four months and that June had the highest monthly total for quarter 2. In order to determine the highest values programmatically, however, you will need to add additional columns to each row showing the maximum values per quarter and over the entire time period. Here's the previous query but with two new columns to calculate these values:

```
mysql> SELECT quarter(payment_date) quarter,
->    monthname(payment_date) month_nm,
->    sum(amount) monthly_sales,
->    max(sum(amount))
->      over () max_overall_sales,
->    max(sum(amount))
->      over (partition by quarter(payment_date)) max_qrtr_sales
->   FROM payment
->  WHERE year(payment_date) = 2005
->  GROUP BY quarter(payment_date), monthname(payment_date);
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| quarter | month_nm | monthly_sales | max_overall_sales | max_qrtr_sales |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      2 | May     |      4824.43 |      28373.89 |      9631.88 |
|      2 | June    |      9631.88 |      28373.89 |      9631.88 |
|      3 | July    |     28373.89 |      28373.89 |      28373.89 |
|      3 | August  |     24072.13 |      28373.89 |      28373.89 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.09 sec)
```

The analytic functions used to generate these additional columns group rows into two different sets: one set containing all rows in the same quarter and another set

containing all of the rows. To accommodate this type of analysis, analytic functions include the ability to group rows into *windows*, which effectively partition the data for use by the analytic function without changing the overall result set. Windows are defined using the `over` clause combined with an optional `partition` by subclause. In the previous query, both analytic functions include an `over` clause, but the first one is empty, indicating that the window should include the entire result set, whereas the second one specifies that the window should include only rows within the same quarter. Data windows may contain anywhere from a single row to all of the rows in the result set, and different analytic functions can define different data windows.

## Localized Sorting

Along with partitioning your result set into data windows for your analytic functions, you may also specify a sort order. For example, if you want to define a ranking number for each month, where the value 1 is given to the month having the highest sales, you will need to specify which column (or columns) to use for the ranking:

```
mysql> SELECT quarter(payment_date) quarter,
->   monthname(payment_date) month_nm,
->   sum(amount) monthly_sales,
->   rank() over (order by sum(amount) desc) sales_rank
-> FROM payment
-> WHERE year(payment_date) = 2005
-> GROUP BY quarter(payment_date), monthname(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1, month(payment_date);
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| quarter | month_nm | monthly_sales | sales_rank |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      2 | May     |      4824.43 |        4 |
|      2 | June    |      9631.88 |        3 |
|      3 | July    |     28373.89 |        1 |
|      3 | August  |     24072.13 |        2 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query includes a call to the `rank` function, which will be covered in the next section, and specifies that the sum of the `amount` column be used to generate the rankings, with the values sorted in descending order. Thus, the month having the highest sales (July, in this case) will be given a ranking of 1.



## Multiple order by Clauses

The previous example contains two `order by` clauses, one at the end of the query to determine how the result set should be sorted and another within the `rank` function to determine how the rankings should be allocated. While it is unfortunate that the same clause is used for different purposes, keep in mind that even if you are using analytic functions with one or more `order by` clauses, you will still need an `order by` clause at the end of your query if you want the result set to be sorted in a particular way.

In some cases, you will want to use both the `partition by` and `order by` subclauses in the same analytic function call. For example, the previous example can be modified to provide a different set of rankings per quarter, rather than a single ranking across the entire result set:

```
mysql> SELECT quarter(payment_date) quarter,
->   monthname(payment_date) month_nm,
->   sum(amount) monthly_sales,
->   rank() over (partition by quarter(payment_date)
->     order by sum(amount) desc) qtr_sales_rank
-> FROM payment
-> WHERE year(payment_date) = 2005
-> GROUP BY quarter(payment_date), monthname(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1, month(payment_date);
+-----+-----+-----+
| quarter | month_nm | monthly_sales | qtr_sales_rank |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      2 | May      |      4824.43 |          2 |
|      2 | June     |      9631.88 |          1 |
|      3 | July     |     28373.89 |          1 |
|      3 | August   |     24072.13 |          2 |
+-----+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

While these examples were designed to illustrate the use of the `over` clause, the following sections will describe in detail the various analytic functions.

## Ranking

People love to rank things. If you visit your favorite news/sports/travel sites, you'll see headlines similar to the following:

- Top 10 Vacation Values
- Best Mutual Fund Returns
- Preseason College Football Rankings

- Top 100 Songs of All Time

Companies also like to generate rankings, but for more practical purposes. Knowing which products are the best/worst sellers or which geographic regions generate the least/most revenue helps organizations make strategic decisions.

## Ranking Functions

There are multiple ranking functions available in the SQL standard, with each one taking a different approach to how ties are handled:

### `row_number`

Returns a unique number for each row, with rankings arbitrarily assigned in case of a tie

### `rank`

Returns the same ranking in case of a tie, with gaps in the rankings

### `dense_rank`

Returns the same ranking in case of a tie, with no gaps in the rankings

Let's look at an example to help illustrate the differences. Say that the marketing department wants to identify the top 10 customers so they can be offered a free film rental. The following query determines the number of film rentals for each customer and sorts the results in descending order:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*) num_rentals
    -> FROM rental
    -> GROUP BY customer_id
    -> ORDER BY 2 desc;
+-----+-----+
| customer_id | num_rentals |
+-----+-----+
|      148 |       46 |
|      526 |       45 |
|     236 |       42 |
|     144 |       42 |
|       75 |       41 |
|     469 |       40 |
|     197 |       40 |
|     137 |       39 |
|     468 |       39 |
|     178 |       39 |
|     459 |       38 |
|     410 |       38 |
|       5 |       38 |
|    295 |       38 |
|    257 |       37 |
|    366 |       37 |
|    176 |       37 |
```

```

|      198 |      37 |
|     267 |      36 |
|     439 |      36 |
|     354 |      36 |
|     348 |      36 |
|     380 |      36 |
|      29 |      36 |
|     371 |      35 |
|     403 |      35 |
|      21 |      35 |
|
|     .. |
|     136 |      15 |
|     248 |      15 |
|     110 |      14 |
|     281 |      14 |
|      61 |      14 |
|     318 |      12 |
+-----+

```

599 rows in set (0.16 sec)

Looking at the results, the third and fourth customers in the result set both rented 42 films; should they both receive the same ranking of 3? And if so, should the customer with 41 rentals be given the ranking 4, or should we skip one and assign ranking 5? To see how each function handles ties when assigning rankings, the next query adds three more columns, each one employing a different ranking function:

```

mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*) num_rentals,
->    row_number() over (order by count(*) desc) row_number_rnk,
->    rank() over (order by count(*) desc) rank_rnk,
->    dense_rank() over (order by count(*) desc) dense_rank_rnk
->   FROM rental
->  GROUP BY customer_id
-> ORDER BY 2 desc;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | num_rentals | row_number_rnk | rank_rnk | dense_rank_rnk |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      148 |      46 |          1 |      1 |          1 |
|      526 |      45 |          2 |      2 |          2 |
|     144 |      42 |          3 |      3 |          3 |
|     236 |      42 |          4 |      3 |          3 |
|      75 |      41 |          5 |      5 |          4 |
|     197 |      40 |          6 |      6 |          5 |
|     469 |      40 |          7 |      6 |          5 |
|     468 |      39 |          10 |      8 |          6 |
|     137 |      39 |          8 |      8 |          6 |
|     178 |      39 |          9 |      8 |          6 |
|      5 |      38 |         11 |     11 |          7 |
|     295 |      38 |         12 |     11 |          7 |
|     410 |      38 |         13 |     11 |          7 |
|     459 |      38 |         14 |     11 |          7 |
|     198 |      37 |         16 |     15 |          8 |
|     257 |      37 |         17 |     15 |          8 |

```

	366	37	18	15	8
	176	37	15	15	8
	348	36	21	19	9
	354	36	22	19	9
	380	36	23	19	9
	439	36	24	19	9
	29	36	19	19	9
	267	36	20	19	9
	50	35	26	25	10
	506	35	37	25	10
	368	35	32	25	10
	91	35	27	25	10
	371	35	33	25	10
	196	35	28	25	10
	373	35	34	25	10
	204	35	29	25	10
	381	35	35	25	10
	273	35	30	25	10
	21	35	25	25	10
	403	35	36	25	10
	274	35	31	25	10
	66	34	42	38	11
	...				
	136	15	594	594	30
	248	15	595	594	30
	110	14	597	596	31
	281	14	598	596	31
	61	14	596	596	31
	318	12	599	599	32

599 rows in set (0.01 sec)

The third column uses the `row_number` function to assign a unique ranking to each row, without regard to ties. Each of the 599 rows is assigned a number from 1 to 599, with the ranking value arbitrarily assigned for customers who have the same number of film rentals. The next two columns, however, assign the same ranking in case of a tie, but the difference lies in whether or not a gap is left in the ranking values *after* a tie. Looking at row 5 of the result set, you can see that the `rank` function skips the value 4 and assigns the value 5, whereas the `dense_rank` function assigns the value 4.

To get back to the original request, how would you identify the top 10 customers? There are three possible solutions:

- Use the `row_number` function to identify customers ranked from 1 to 10, which results in exactly 10 customers in this example, but in other cases might exclude customers having the same number of rentals as the 10th ranked customer.
- Use the `rank` function to identify customers ranked 10 or less, which also results in exactly 10 customers.

- Use the `dense_rank` function to identify customers ranked 10 or less, which yields a list of 37 customers.

If there are no ties in your result set, then any of these functions will suffice, but for many situations the `rank` function may be the best option.

## Generating Multiple Rankings

The example in the previous section generates a single ranking across the entire set of customers, but what if you want to generate multiple sets of rankings within the same result set? To extend the prior example, let's say the marketing department decides to offer free film rentals to the top five customers every month. To generate the data, the `rental_month` column can be added to the previous query:

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id,
   --> monthname(rental_date) rental_month,
   --> count(*) num_rentals
   --> FROM rental
   --> GROUP BY customer_id, monthname(rental_date)
   --> ORDER BY 2, 3 desc;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | rental_month | num_rentals |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      119 | August      |      18 |
|       15 | August      |      18 |
|      569 | August      |      18 |
|     148 | August      |      18 |
|     141 | August      |      17 |
|      21 | August      |      17 |
|     266 | August      |      17 |
|     418 | August      |      17 |
|     410 | August      |      17 |
|     342 | August      |      17 |
|     274 | August      |      16 |
...
|     281 | August      |       2 |
|     318 | August      |       1 |
|      75 | February    |       3 |
|     155 | February    |       2 |
|     175 | February    |       2 |
|     516 | February    |       2 |
|     361 | February    |       2 |
|     269 | February    |       2 |
|     208 | February    |       2 |
|      53 | February    |       2 |
...
|      22 | February    |       1 |
|     472 | February    |       1 |
|     148 | July        |      22 |
|     102 | July        |      21 |
```

```

|      236 | July      |      20 |
|      75  | July      |      20 |
|      91  | July      |      19 |
|      30  | July      |      19 |
|      64  | July      |      19 |
|     137  | July      |      19 |
|
|     ...  |          |          |
|      339 | May       |      1 |
|     485  | May       |      1 |
|     116  | May       |      1 |
|     497  | May       |      1 |
|     180  | May       |      1 |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

2466 rows in set (0.02 sec)

In order to create a new set of rankings for each month, you will need to add something to the `rank` function to describe how to divide the result set into different data windows (months, in this case). This is done using the `partition by` clause, which is added to the `over` clause:

```

mysql> SELECT customer_id,
    ->   monthname(rental_date) rental_month,
    ->   count(*) num_rentals,
    ->   rank() over (partition by monthname(rental_date)
    ->                 order by count(*) desc) rank_rnk
    -> FROM rental
    -> GROUP BY customer_id, monthname(rental_date)
    -> ORDER BY 2, 3 desc;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | rental_month | num_rentals | rank_rnk |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      569 | August      |      18 |      1 |
|      119 | August      |      18 |      1 |
|      148 | August      |      18 |      1 |
|      15  | August      |      18 |      1 |
|     141 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|     410 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|     418 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|      21 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|     266 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|     342 | August      |      17 |      5 |
|     144 | August      |      16 |     11 |
|     274 | August      |      16 |     11 |
|
|     ...  |          |          | |
|     164 | August      |      2 |      596 |
|     318 | August      |      1 |      599 |
|      75 | February    |      3 |      1 |
|     457 | February    |      2 |      2 |
|      53 | February    |      2 |      2 |
|     354 | February    |      2 |      2 |
|
|     352 | February    |      1 |     24 |

```

373	February	1	24
148	<b>July</b>	22	<b>1</b>
102	July	21	2
236	July	20	3
75	July	20	3
91	July	19	5
354	July	19	5
30	July	19	5
64	July	19	5
137	July	19	5
526	July	19	5
366	July	19	5
595	July	19	5
469	July	18	13
...			
457	May	1	347
356	May	1	347
481	May	1	347
10	May	1	347

2466 rows in set (0.03 sec)

Looking at the results, you can see that the rankings are reset to 1 for each month. In order to generate the desired results for the marketing department (top five customers from each month), you can simply wrap the previous query in a subquery and add a filter condition to exclude any rows with a ranking higher than five:

```

SELECT customer_id, rental_month, num_rentals,
       rank_rnk ranking
  FROM
    (SELECT customer_id,
           monthname(rental_date) rental_month,
           count(*) num_rentals,
           rank() over (partition by monthname(rental_date)
                         order by count(*) desc) rank_rnk
   FROM rental
  GROUP BY customer_id, monthname(rental_date)
  ) cust_rankings
 WHERE rank_rnk <= 5
 ORDER BY rental_month, num_rentals desc, rank_rnk;

```

Since analytic functions can be used only in the `SELECT` clause, you will often need to nest queries if you need to do any filtering or grouping based on the results from the analytic function.

# Reporting Functions

Along with generating rankings, another common use for analytic functions is to find outliers (e.g., min or max values) or to generate sums or averages across an entire data set. For these types of uses, you will be using aggregate functions (`min`, `max`, `avg`, `sum`, `count`), but instead of using them with a `group by` clause, you will pair them with an `over` clause. Here's an example that generates monthly and grand totals for all payments of \$10 or higher:

```

| May           | 10.99 |      55.95 |    1262.86 |
| May           | 10.99 |      55.95 |    1262.86 |
| May           | 10.99 |      55.95 |    1262.86 |
| May           | 10.99 |      55.95 |    1262.86 |
| May           | 11.99 |      55.95 |    1262.86 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
114 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

The `grand_total` column contains the same value (\$1,262.86) for every row because the `over` clause is empty, which specifies that the summation be done over the entire result set. The `monthly_total` column, however, contains a different value for each month, since there is a `partition by` clause specifying that the result set be split into multiple data windows (one for each month).

While it may seem of little value to include a column such as `grand_total` with the same value for every row, these types of columns can also be used for calculations, as shown in the following query:

```

mysql> SELECT monthname(payment_date) payment_month,
->     sum(amount) month_total,
->     round(sum(amount) / sum(sum(amount)) over (),
->           * 100, 2) pct_of_total
->   FROM payment
->  GROUP BY monthname(payment_date);
+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_month | month_total | pct_of_total |
+-----+-----+-----+
| May           |    4824.43 |      7.16 |
| June          |    9631.88 |     14.29 |
| July           |   28373.89 |     42.09 |
| August         |   24072.13 |     35.71 |
| February       |     514.18 |      0.76 |
+-----+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.04 sec)

```

This query calculates the total payments for each month by summing the `amount` column, and then calculates the percentage of the total payments for each month by summing the monthly sums to use as the denominator in the calculation.

Reporting functions may also be used for comparisons, such as the next query, which uses a `case` expression to determine whether a monthly total is the max, min, or somewhere in the middle:

```

mysql> SELECT monthname(payment_date) payment_month,
->     sum(amount) month_total,
->     CASE sum(amount)
->       WHEN max(sum(amount)) over () THEN 'Highest'
->       WHEN min(sum(amount)) over () THEN 'Lowest'
->       ELSE 'Middle'
->     END descriptor
->   FROM payment

```

```

-> GROUP BY monthname(payment_date);
+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_month | month_total | descriptor |
+-----+-----+-----+
| May           |    4824.43 | Middle      |
| June          |   9631.88 | Middle      |
| July          | 28373.89 | Highest   |
| August         | 24072.13 | Middle      |
| February       |     514.18 | Lowest    |
+-----+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.04 sec)

```

The `descriptor` column acts as a quasi-ranking function, in that it helps identify the top/bottom values across a set of rows.

## Window Frames

As described earlier in the chapter, data windows for analytic functions are defined using the `partition by` clause, which allows you to group rows by common values. But what if you need even finer control over which rows to include in a data window? For example, perhaps you want to generate a running total starting from the beginning of the year up to the current row. For these types of calculations, you can include a “frame” subclause to define exactly which rows to include in the data window. Here’s a query that sums payments for each week and includes a reporting function to calculate the rolling sum:

```

mysql> SELECT yearweek(payment_date) payment_week,
->     sum(amount) week_total,
->     sum(sum(amount))
->     over (order by yearweek(payment_date)
->           rows unbounded preceding) rolling_sum
->   FROM payment
-> GROUP BY yearweek(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_week | week_total | rolling_sum |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 200521 | 2847.18 | 2847.18 |
| 200522 | 1977.25 | 4824.43 |
| 200524 | 5605.42 | 10429.85 |
| 200525 | 4026.46 | 14456.31 |
| 200527 | 8490.83 | 22947.14 |
| 200528 | 5983.63 | 28930.77 |
| 200530 | 11031.22 | 39961.99 |
| 200531 | 8412.07 | 48374.06 |
| 200533 | 10619.11 | 58993.17 |
| 200534 | 7909.16 | 66902.33 |
| 200607 |     514.18 | 67416.51 |
+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.04 sec)

```

The `rolling_sum` column expression includes the `rows unbounded preceding` sub-clause to define a data window from the beginning of the result set up to and including the current row. The data window consists of a single row for the first row in the result set, two rows for the second row, etc. The value for the last row is the summation of the entire result set.

Along with rolling sums, you can calculate rolling averages. Here's a query that calculates a three-week rolling average of total payments:

```
mysql> SELECT yearweek(payment_date) payment_week,
->     sum(amount) week_total,
->     avg(sum(amount))
->         over (order by yearweek(payment_date)
->             rows between 1 preceding and 1 following) rolling_3wk_avg
-> FROM payment
-> GROUP BY yearweek(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_week | week_total | rolling_3wk_avg |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 200521 | 2847.18 | 2412.215000 |
| 200522 | 1977.25 | 3476.616667 |
| 200524 | 5605.42 | 3869.710000 |
| 200525 | 4026.46 | 6040.903333 |
| 200527 | 8490.83 | 6166.973333 |
| 200528 | 5983.63 | 8501.893333 |
| 200530 | 11031.22 | 8475.640000 |
| 200531 | 8412.07 | 10020.800000 |
| 200533 | 10619.11 | 8980.113333 |
| 200534 | 7909.16 | 6347.483333 |
| 200607 | 514.18 | 4211.670000 |
+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

The `rolling_3wk_avg` column defines a data window consisting of the current row, the prior row, and the next row. The data window will therefore consist of three rows, except for the first and last rows, which will have a data window consisting of just two rows (since there is no prior row for the first row and no next row for the last row).

Specifying a number of rows for your data window works fine in many cases, but if there are gaps in your data, you might want to try a different approach. In the previous result set, for example, there is data for weeks 200521, 200522, and 200524, but no data for week 200523. If you want to specify a date interval rather than a number of rows, you can specify a *range* for your data window, as shown in the following query:

```
mysql> SELECT date(payment_date), sum(amount),
->     avg(sum(amount)) over (order by date(payment_date)
->         range between interval 3 day preceding
->             and interval 3 day following) 7_day_avg
```

```

-> FROM payment
-> WHERE payment_date BETWEEN '2005-07-01' AND '2005-09-01'
-> GROUP BY date(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| date(payment_date) | sum(amount) | 7_day_avg |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 2005-07-05 | 128.73 | 1603.740000 |
| 2005-07-06 | 2131.96 | 1698.166000 |
| 2005-07-07 | 1943.39 | 1738.338333 |
| 2005-07-08 | 2210.88 | 1766.917143 |
| 2005-07-09 | 2075.87 | 2049.390000 |
| 2005-07-10 | 1939.20 | 2035.628333 |
| 2005-07-11 | 1938.39 | 2054.076000 |
| 2005-07-12 | 2106.04 | 2014.875000 |
| 2005-07-26 | 160.67 | 2046.642500 |
| 2005-07-27 | 2726.51 | 2206.244000 |
| 2005-07-28 | 2577.80 | 2316.571667 |
| 2005-07-29 | 2721.59 | 2388.102857 |
| 2005-07-30 | 2844.65 | 2754.660000 |
| 2005-07-31 | 2868.21 | 2759.351667 |
| 2005-08-01 | 2817.29 | 2795.662000 |
| 2005-08-02 | 2726.57 | 2814.180000 |
| 2005-08-16 | 111.77 | 1973.837500 |
| 2005-08-17 | 2457.07 | 2123.822000 |
| 2005-08-18 | 2710.79 | 2238.086667 |
| 2005-08-19 | 2615.72 | 2286.465714 |
| 2005-08-20 | 2723.76 | 2630.928571 |
| 2005-08-21 | 2809.41 | 2659.905000 |
| 2005-08-22 | 2576.74 | 2649.728000 |
| 2005-08-23 | 2523.01 | 2658.230000 |
+-----+-----+-----+
24 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

The `7_day_avg` column specifies a range of +/-3 days and will include only those rows whose `payment_date` values fall within that range. For the 2005-08-16 calculation, for example, only the values for 08-16, 08-17, 08-18, and 08-19 are included, since there are no rows for the three prior dates (08-13 through 08-15).

## Lag and Lead

Along with computing sums and averages over a data window, another common reporting task involves comparing values from one row to another. For example, if you are generating monthly sales totals, you may be asked to create a column showing the percentage difference from the prior month, which will require a way to retrieve the monthly sales total from the previous row. This can be accomplished using the `lag` function, which will retrieve a column value from a prior row in the result set, or the `lead` function, which will retrieve a column value from a following row. Here's an example using both functions:

```

mysql> SELECT yearweek(payment_date) payment_week,
->   sum(amount) week_total,
->   lag(sum(amount), 1)
->     over (order by yearweek(payment_date)) prev_wk_tot,
->   lead(sum(amount), 1)
->     over (order by yearweek(payment_date)) next_wk_tot
-> FROM payment
-> GROUP BY yearweek(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_week | week_total | prev_wk_tot | next_wk_tot |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 200521 | 2847.18 | NULL | 1977.25 |
| 200522 | 1977.25 | 2847.18 | 5605.42 |
| 200524 | 5605.42 | 1977.25 | 4026.46 |
| 200525 | 4026.46 | 5605.42 | 8490.83 |
| 200527 | 8490.83 | 4026.46 | 5983.63 |
| 200528 | 5983.63 | 8490.83 | 11031.22 |
| 200530 | 11031.22 | 5983.63 | 8412.07 |
| 200531 | 8412.07 | 11031.22 | 10619.11 |
| 200533 | 10619.11 | 8412.07 | 7909.16 |
| 200534 | 7909.16 | 10619.11 | 514.18 |
| 200607 | 514.18 | 7909.16 | NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

Looking at the results, the weekly total of 8,490.43 for week 200527 also appears in the `next_wk_tot` column for week 200525, as well as in the `prev_wk_tot` column for week 200528. Since there is no row prior to 200521 in the result set, the value generated by the `lag` function is `null` for the first row; likewise, the value generated by the `lead` function is `null` for the last row in the result set. Both `lag` and `lead` allow for an optional second parameter (which defaults to 1) to describe the number of rows prior/following from which to retrieve the column value.

Here's how you could use the `lag` function to generate the percentage difference from the prior week:

```

mysql> SELECT yearweek(payment_date) payment_week,
->   sum(amount) week_total,
->   round((sum(amount) - lag(sum(amount), 1)
->     over (order by yearweek(payment_date)))
->   / lag(sum(amount), 1)
->     over (order by yearweek(payment_date)))
->   * 100, 1) pct_diff
-> FROM payment
-> GROUP BY yearweek(payment_date)
-> ORDER BY 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| payment_week | week_total | pct_diff |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 200521 | 2847.18 | NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+

```

```

| 200522 | 1977.25 | -30.6 |
| 200524 | 5605.42 | 183.5 |
| 200525 | 4026.46 | -28.2 |
| 200527 | 8490.83 | 110.9 |
| 200528 | 5983.63 | -29.5 |
| 200530 | 11031.22 | 84.4 |
| 200531 | 8412.07 | -23.7 |
| 200533 | 10619.11 | 26.2 |
| 200534 | 7909.16 | -25.5 |
| 200607 | 514.18 | -93.5 |
+-----+-----+-----+
11 rows in set (0.07 sec)

```

Comparing values from different rows in the same result set is a common practice in reporting systems, so you will likely find many uses for the `lag` and `lead` functions.

## Column Value Concatenation

Although not technically an analytic function, there is one more important function to demonstrate since it works with groups of rows within a data window. The `group_concat` function is used to pivot a set of column values into a single delimited string, which is a handy way to denormalize your result set for generating XML or JSON documents. Here's an example of how this function could be used to generate a comma-delimited list of actors for each film:

```

mysql> SELECT f.title,
    --> group_concat(a.last_name order by a.last_name
    --> separator ', ') actors
    --> FROM actor a
    --> INNER JOIN film_actor fa
    --> ON a.actor_id = fa.actor_id
    --> INNER JOIN film f
    --> ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
    --> GROUP BY f.title
    --> HAVING count(*) = 3;
+-----+-----+
| title | actors |
+-----+-----+
| ANNIE IDENTITY | GRANT, KEITEL, MCQUEEN |
| ANYTHING SAVANNAH | MONROE, SWANK, WEST |
| ARK RIDGEMONT | BAILEY, DEGENERES, GOLDBERG |
| ARSENIC INDEPENDENCE | ALLEN, KILMER, REYNOLDS |
...
| WHISPERER GIANT | BAILEY, PECK, WALKEN |
| WIND PHANTOM | BALL, DENCH, GUINNESS |
| ZORRO ARK | DEGENERES, MONROE, TANDY |
+-----+-----+
119 rows in set (0.04 sec)

```

This query groups rows by film title and only includes films in which exactly three actors appear. The `group_concat` function acts like a special type of aggregate

function that pivots all of the last names of all actors appearing in each film into a single string. If you are using SQL Server, you can use the `string_agg` function to generate this type of output, and Oracle users can use the `listagg` function.

## Test Your Knowledge

The following exercises are designed to test your understanding of analytic functions. When you're finished, see [Appendix B](#) for the solutions.

For all exercises in this section, use the following data set from the `Sales_Fact` table:

Sales_Fact		
year_no	month_no	tot_sales
2019	1	19228
2019	2	18554
2019	3	17325
2019	4	13221
2019	5	9964
2019	6	12658
2019	7	14233
2019	8	17342
2019	9	16853
2019	10	17121
2019	11	19095
2019	12	21436
2020	1	20347
2020	2	17434
2020	3	16225
2020	4	13853
2020	5	14589
2020	6	13248
2020	7	8728
2020	8	9378
2020	9	11467
2020	10	13842
2020	11	15742
2020	12	18636

### Exercise 16-1

Write a query that retrieves every row from `Sales_Fact`, and add a column to generate a ranking based on the `tot_sales` column values. The highest value should receive a ranking of 1, and the lowest a ranking of 24.

## **Exercise 16-2**

Modify the query from the previous exercise to generate two sets of rankings from 1 to 12, one for 2019 data and one for 2020.

## **Exercise 16-3**

Write a query that retrieves all 2020 data, and include a column that will contain the tot\_sales value from the previous month.



# Working with Large Databases

In the early days of relational databases, hard drive capacity was measured in megabytes, and databases were generally easy to administer simply because they couldn't get very large. Today, however, hard drive capacity has ballooned to 15 TB, a modern disk array can store more than 4 PB of data, and storage in the cloud is essentially limitless. While relational databases face various challenges as data volumes continue to grow, there are strategies such as partitioning, clustering, and sharding that allow companies to continue to utilize relational databases by spreading data across multiple storage tiers and servers. Other companies have decided to move to big data platforms such as Hadoop in order to handle huge data volumes. This chapter looks at some of these strategies, with an emphasis on techniques for scaling relational databases.

## Partitioning

When exactly does a database table become “too big”? If you ask this question to 10 different data architects/administrators/developers, you will likely get 10 different answers. Most people, however, would agree that the following tasks become more difficult and/or time consuming as a table grows past a few million rows:

- Query execution requiring full table scans
- Index creation/rebuild
- Data archival/deletion
- Generation of table/index statistics
- Table relocation (e.g., move to a different tablespace)
- Database backups

These tasks can start as routine when a database is small, then become time consuming as more data accumulates, and then become problematic/impossible due to limited administrative time windows. The best way to prevent administrative issues from occurring in the future is to break large tables into pieces, or *partitions*, when the table is first created (although tables can be partitioned later, it is easier to do so initially). Administrative tasks can be performed on individual partitions, often in parallel, and some tasks can skip one or more partitions entirely.

## Partitioning Concepts

Table partitioning was introduced in the late 1990s by Oracle, but since then every major database server has added the ability to partition tables and indexes. When a table is partitioned, two or more table partitions are created, each having the exact same definition but with nonoverlapping subsets of data. For example, a table containing sales data could be partitioned by month using the column containing the sale date, or it could be partitioned by geographic region using the state/province code.

Once a table has been partitioned, the table itself becomes a virtual concept; the partitions hold the data, and any indexes are built on the data in the partitions. However, the database users can still interact with the table without knowing that the table had been partitioned. This is similar in concept to a view, in that the users interact with schema objects that are interfaces rather than actual tables. While every partition must have the same schema definition (columns, column types, etc.), there are several administrative features that can differ for each partition:

- Partitions may be stored on different tablespaces, which can be on different physical storage tiers.
- Partitions can be compressed using different compression schemes.
- Local indexes (more on this shortly) can be dropped for some partitions.
- Table statistics can be frozen on some partitions, while being periodically refreshed on others.
- Individual partitions can be pinned into memory or stored in the database's flash storage tier.

Thus, table partitioning allows for flexibility with data storage and administration, while still presenting the simplicity of a single table to your user community.

## Table Partitioning

The partitioning scheme available in most relational databases is *horizontal partitioning*, which assigns entire rows to exactly one partition. Tables may also be partitioned *vertically*, which involves assigning sets of columns to different partitions, but this must be done manually. When partitioning a table horizontally, you must choose a

*partition key*, which is the column whose values are used to assign a row to a particular partition. In most cases, a table's partition key consists of a single column, and a *partitioning function* is applied to this column to determine in which partition each row should reside.

## Index Partitioning

If your partitioned table has indexes, you will get to choose whether a particular index should stay intact, known as a *global index*, or be broken into pieces such that each partition has its own index, which is called a *local index*. Global indexes span all partitions of the table and are useful for queries that do not specify a value for the partition key. For example, let's say your table is partitioned on the `sale_date` column, and a user executes the following query:

```
SELECT sum(amount) FROM sales WHERE geo_region_cd = 'US'
```

Since this query does not include a filter condition on the `sale_date` column, the server will need to search every partition in order to find the total US sales. If a global index is built on the `geo_region_cd` column, however, then the server could use this index to quickly find all of the rows containing US sales.

## Partitioning Methods

While each database server has its own unique partitioning features, the next three sections describe the common partitioning methods available across most servers.

### Range partitioning

Range partitioning was the first partitioning method to be implemented, and it is still one of the most widely used. While range partitioning can be used for several different column types, the most common usage is to break up tables by date ranges. For example, a table named `sales` could be partitioned using the `sale_date` column such that data for each week is stored in a different partition:

```
mysql> CREATE TABLE sales
->   (sale_id INT NOT NULL,
->    cust_id INT NOT NULL,
->    store_id INT NOT NULL,
->    sale_date DATE NOT NULL,
->    amount DECIMAL(9,2)
->  )
-> PARTITION BY RANGE (yearweek(sale_date))
-> (PARTITION s1 VALUES LESS THAN (202002),
->  PARTITION s2 VALUES LESS THAN (202003),
->  PARTITION s3 VALUES LESS THAN (202004),
->  PARTITION s4 VALUES LESS THAN (202005),
->  PARTITION s5 VALUES LESS THAN (202006),
->  PARTITION s999 VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
```

```
-> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (1.78 sec)
```

This statement creates six different partitions, one for each of the first five weeks of 2020 and a sixth partition named s999 to hold any rows beyond week five of year 2020. For this table, the `yearweek(sale_date)` expression is used as the partitioning function, and the `sale_date` column serves as the partitioning key. To see the metadata about your partitioned tables, you can use the `partitions` table in the `information_schema` database:

```
mysql> SELECT partition_name, partition_method, partition_expression
-> FROM information_schema.partitions
-> WHERE table_name = 'sales'
-> ORDER BY partition_ordinal_position;
+-----+-----+-----+
| PARTITION_NAME | PARTITION_METHOD | PARTITION_EXPRESSION |
+-----+-----+-----+
| s1             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s2             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s3             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s4             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s5             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s999           | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
+-----+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

One of the administrative tasks that will need to be performed on the `sales` table involves generating new partitions to hold future data (to keep data from being added to the `maxvalue` partition). Different databases handle this in different ways, but in MySQL you could use the `reorganize partition` clause of the `alter table` command to split the `s999` partition into three pieces:

```
ALTER TABLE sales REORGANIZE PARTITION s999 INTO
(PARTITION s6 VALUES LESS THAN (202007),
 PARTITION s7 VALUES LESS THAN (202008),
 PARTITION s999 VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
);
```

If you execute the previous metadata query again, you will now see eight partitions:

```
mysql> SELECT partition_name, partition_method, partition_expression
-> FROM information_schema.partitions
-> WHERE table_name = 'sales'
-> ORDER BY partition_ordinal_position;
+-----+-----+-----+
| PARTITION_NAME | PARTITION_METHOD | PARTITION_EXPRESSION |
+-----+-----+-----+
| s1             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s2             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s3             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s4             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s5             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s6             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s7             | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s999           | RANGE          | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

```

| s6          | RANGE           | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s7          | RANGE           | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
| s999        | RANGE           | yearweek(`sale_date`,0) |
+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Next, let's add a couple of rows to the table:

```

mysql> INSERT INTO sales
-> VALUES
-> (1, 1, 1, '2020-01-18', 2765.15),
-> (2, 3, 4, '2020-02-07', 5322.08);
Query OK, 2 rows affected (0.18 sec)
Records: 2  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

```

The table now has two rows, but into which partitions were they inserted? To find out, let's use the `partition` subclause of the `from` clause to count the number of rows in each partition:

```

mysql> SELECT concat('# of rows in S1 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s1) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S2 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s2) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S3 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s3) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S4 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s4) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S5 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s5) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S6 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s6) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S7 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s7) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in S999 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s999);
+-----+
| partitionRowCount |
+-----+
| # of rows in S1 = 0 |
| # of rows in S2 = 1 |
| # of rows in S3 = 0 |
| # of rows in S4 = 0 |
| # of rows in S5 = 1 |
| # of rows in S6 = 0 |
| # of rows in S7 = 0 |
| # of rows in S999 = 0 |
+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

The results show that one row was inserted into partition S2, and the other row was inserted into the S5 partition. The ability to query a specific partition involves knowing the partitioning scheme, so it is unlikely that your user community will be

executing these types of queries, but they are commonly used for administrative types of activities.

## List partitioning

If the column chosen as the partitioning key contains state codes (e.g., CA, TX, VA, etc.), currencies (e.g., USD, EUR, JPY, etc.), or some other enumerated set of values, you may want to utilize list partitioning, which allows you to specify which values will be assigned to each partition. For example, let's say that the `sales` table includes the column `geo_region_cd`, which contains the following values:

geo_region_cd	description
US_NE	United States North East
US_SE	United States South East
US_MW	United States Mid West
US_NW	United States North West
US_SW	United States South West
CAN	Canada
MEX	Mexico
EUR_E	Eastern Europe
EUR_W	Western Europe
CHN	China
JPN	Japan
IND	India
KOR	Korea

13 rows in set (0.00 sec)

You could group these values into geographic regions and create a partition for each one, as in:

```
mysql> CREATE TABLE sales
->   (sale_id INT NOT NULL,
->    cust_id INT NOT NULL,
->    store_id INT NOT NULL,
->    sale_date DATE NOT NULL,
->    geo_region_cd VARCHAR(6) NOT NULL,
->    amount DECIMAL(9,2)
->  )
-> PARTITION BY LIST COLUMNS (geo_region_cd)
->   (PARTITION NORTHAMERICA VALUES IN ('US_NE','US_SE','US_MW',
->                                         'US_NW','US_SW','CAN','MEX'),
->    PARTITION EUROPE VALUES IN ('EUR_E','EUR_W'),
->    PARTITION ASIA VALUES IN ('CHN','JPN','IND')
->  );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (1.13 sec)
```

The table has three partitions, where each partition includes a set of two or more `geo_region_cd` values. Next, let's add a few rows to the table:

```

mysql> INSERT INTO sales
    -> VALUES
    -> (1, 1, 1, '2020-01-18', 'US_NE', 2765.15),
    -> (2, 3, 4, '2020-02-07', 'CAN', 5322.08),
    -> (3, 6, 27, '2020-03-11', 'KOR', 4267.12);
ERROR 1526 (HY000): Table has no partition for value from column_list

```

It looks like there was a problem, and the error message indicates that one of the geographic region codes was not assigned to a partition. Looking at the `CREATE TABLE` statement, I see that I forgot to add Korea to the `ASIA` partition. This can be fixed using an `ALTER TABLE` statement:

```

mysql> ALTER TABLE sales REORGANIZE PARTITION ASIA INTO
    -> (PARTITION ASIA VALUES IN ('CHN','JPN','IND', 'KOR'));
Query OK, 0 rows affected (1.28 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

```

That seemed to do the trick, but let's check the metadata just to be sure:

```

mysql> SELECT partition_name, partition_expression,
    -> partition_description
    -> FROM information_schema.partitions
    -> WHERE table_name = 'sales'
    -> ORDER BY partition_ordinal_position;
+-----+-----+-----+
| PARTITION_NAME | PARTITION_EXPRESSION | PARTITION_DESCRIPTION |
+-----+-----+-----+
| NORTHAMERICA   | `geo_region_cd`      | 'US_NE','US_SE','US_MW','US_NW', |
|                 |                      | 'US_SW','CAN','MEX'               |
| EUROPE         | `geo_region_cd`      | 'EUR_E','EUR_W'                  |
| ASIA           | `geo_region_cd`      | 'CHN','JPN','IND','KOR'          |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Korea has indeed been added to the `ASIA` partition, and the data insertion will now proceed without any issues:

```

mysql> INSERT INTO sales
    -> VALUES
    -> (1, 1, 1, '2020-01-18', 'US_NE', 2765.15),
    -> (2, 3, 4, '2020-02-07', 'CAN', 5322.08),
    -> (3, 6, 27, '2020-03-11', 'KOR', 4267.12);
Query OK, 3 rows affected (0.26 sec)
Records: 3  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

```

While range partitioning allows for a `maxvalue` partition to catch any rows that don't map to any other partition, it's important to keep in mind that list partitioning doesn't provide for a spillover partition. Thus, any time you need to add another column value (e.g., the company starts selling products in Australia), you will need to modify the partitioning definition before rows with the new value can be added to the table.

## Hash partitioning

If your partition key column doesn't lend itself to range or list partitioning, there is a third option that endeavors to distribute rows evenly across a set of partitions. The server does this by applying a *hashing function* to the column value, and this type of partitioning is (not surprisingly) called *hash partitioning*. Unlike list partitioning, where the column chosen as the partitioning key should contain only a small number of values, hash partitioning works best when the partitioning key column contains a large number of distinct values. Here's another version of the `sales` table but with four hash partitions generated by hashing the values in the `cust_id` column:

```
mysql> CREATE TABLE sales
->   (sale_id INT NOT NULL,
->    cust_id INT NOT NULL,
->    store_id INT NOT NULL,
->    sale_date DATE NOT NULL,
->    amount DECIMAL(9,2)
->  )
-> PARTITION BY HASH (cust_id)
-> PARTITIONS 4
->   (PARTITION H1,
->    PARTITION H2,
->    PARTITION H3,
->    PARTITION H4
->  );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (1.50 sec)
```

When rows are added to the `sales` table, they will be evenly distributed across the four partitions, which I named H1, H2, H3, and H4. In order to see how good a job it does, let's add 16 rows, each with a different value for the `cust_id` column:

```
mysql> INSERT INTO sales
-> VALUES
->   (1, 1, 1, '2020-01-18', 1.1), (2, 3, 4, '2020-02-07', 1.2),
->   (3, 17, 5, '2020-01-19', 1.3), (4, 23, 2, '2020-02-08', 1.4),
->   (5, 56, 1, '2020-01-20', 1.6), (6, 77, 5, '2020-02-09', 1.7),
->   (7, 122, 4, '2020-01-21', 1.8), (8, 153, 1, '2020-02-10', 1.9),
->   (9, 179, 5, '2020-01-22', 2.0), (10, 244, 2, '2020-02-11', 2.1),
->   (11, 263, 1, '2020-01-23', 2.2), (12, 312, 4, '2020-02-12', 2.3),
->   (13, 346, 2, '2020-01-24', 2.4), (14, 389, 3, '2020-02-13', 2.5),
->   (15, 472, 1, '2020-01-25', 2.6), (16, 502, 1, '2020-02-14', 2.7);
Query OK, 16 rows affected (0.19 sec)
Records: 16  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0
```

If the hashing function does a good job of distributing the rows evenly, we should ideally see four rows in each of the four partitions:

```
mysql> SELECT concat('# of rows in H1 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (h1) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in H2 = ', count(*)) partitionRowCount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (h2) UNION ALL
```

```

-> SELECT concat('# of rows in H3 = ', count(*)) partition_rowcount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (h3) UNION ALL
-> SELECT concat('# of rows in H4 = ', count(*)) partition_rowcount
-> FROM sales PARTITION (h4);
+-----+
| partition_rowcount |
+-----+
| # of rows in H1 = 4 |
| # of rows in H2 = 5 |
| # of rows in H3 = 3 |
| # of rows in H4 = 4 |
+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Given that only 16 rows were inserted, this is a pretty good distribution, and as the number of rows increases, each partition should contain close to 25% of the rows as long as there are a reasonably large number of distinct values for the `cust_id` column.

## Composite partitioning

If you need finer-grained control of how data is allocated to your partitions, you can employ *composite partitioning*, which allows you to use two different types of partitioning for the same table. With composite partitioning, the first partitioning method defines the partitions, and the second partitioning method defines the *subpartitions*. Here's an example, again using the `sales` table, utilizing both range and hash partitioning:

```

mysql> CREATE TABLE sales
    ->   (sale_id INT NOT NULL,
    ->     cust_id INT NOT NULL,
    ->     store_id INT NOT NULL,
    ->     sale_date DATE NOT NULL,
    ->     amount DECIMAL(9,2)
    ->   )
    -> PARTITION BY RANGE (yearweek(sale_date))
    -> SUBPARTITION BY HASH (cust_id)
    ->   (PARTITION s1 VALUES LESS THAN (202002)
    ->     (SUBPARTITION s1_h1,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s1_h2,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s1_h3,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s1_h4),
    ->   PARTITION s2 VALUES LESS THAN (202003)
    ->     (SUBPARTITION s2_h1,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s2_h2,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s2_h3,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s2_h4),
    ->   PARTITION s3 VALUES LESS THAN (202004)
    ->     (SUBPARTITION s3_h1,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s3_h2,
    ->      SUBPARTITION s3_h3,

```

```

->      SUBPARTITION s3_h4),
-> PARTITION s4 VALUES LESS THAN (202005)
->      (SUBPARTITION s4_h1,
->      SUBPARTITION s4_h2,
->      SUBPARTITION s4_h3,
->      SUBPARTITION s4_h4),
-> PARTITION s5 VALUES LESS THAN (202006)
->      (SUBPARTITION s5_h1,
->      SUBPARTITION s5_h2,
->      SUBPARTITION s5_h3,
->      SUBPARTITION s5_h4),
-> PARTITION s999 VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
->      (SUBPARTITION s999_h1,
->      SUBPARTITION s999_h2,
->      SUBPARTITION s999_h3,
->      SUBPARTITION s999_h4)
-> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (9.72 sec)

```

There are 6 partitions, each having 4 subpartitions, for a total of 24 subpartitions. Next, let's reinsert the 16 rows from the earlier example for hash partitioning:

```

mysql> INSERT INTO sales
-> VALUES
-> (1, 1, 1, '2020-01-18', 1.1), (2, 3, 4, '2020-02-07', 1.2),
-> (3, 17, 5, '2020-01-19', 1.3), (4, 23, 2, '2020-02-08', 1.4),
-> (5, 56, 1, '2020-01-20', 1.6), (6, 77, 5, '2020-02-09', 1.7),
-> (7, 122, 4, '2020-01-21', 1.8), (8, 153, 1, '2020-02-10', 1.9),
-> (9, 179, 5, '2020-01-22', 2.0), (10, 244, 2, '2020-02-11', 2.1),
-> (11, 263, 1, '2020-01-23', 2.2), (12, 312, 4, '2020-02-12', 2.3),
-> (13, 346, 2, '2020-01-24', 2.4), (14, 389, 3, '2020-02-13', 2.5),
-> (15, 472, 1, '2020-01-25', 2.6), (16, 502, 1, '2020-02-14', 2.7);
Query OK, 16 rows affected (0.22 sec)
Records: 16  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

```

When you query the `sales` table, you can retrieve data from one of the partitions, in which case you retrieve data from the four subpartitions associated with the partition:

```

mysql> SELECT *
-> FROM sales PARTITION (s3);
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| sale_id | cust_id | store_id | sale_date | amount |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      5 |     56 |       1 | 2020-01-20 |   1.60 |
|     15 |    472 |       1 | 2020-01-25 |   2.60 |
|      3 |     17 |       5 | 2020-01-19 |   1.30 |
|      7 |    122 |       4 | 2020-01-21 |   1.80 |
|     13 |    346 |       2 | 2020-01-24 |   2.40 |
|      9 |    179 |       5 | 2020-01-22 |   2.00 |
|     11 |    263 |       1 | 2020-01-23 |   2.20 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

Because the table is subpartitioned, you may also retrieve data from a single subpartition:

```
mysql> SELECT *  
    -> FROM sales PARTITION (s3_h3);  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| sale_id | cust_id | store_id | sale_date | amount |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
|      7 |     122 |        4 | 2020-01-21 |   1.80 |  
|     13 |     346 |        2 | 2020-01-24 |   2.40 |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

This query retrieves data only from the s3\_h3 subpartition of the s3 partition.

## Partitioning Benefits

One major advantage to partitioning is that you may only need to interact with as few as one partition, rather than the entire table. For example, if your table is range-partitioned on the sales\_date column and you execute a query that includes a filter condition such as `WHERE sales_date BETWEEN '2019-12-01' AND '2020-01-15'`, the server will check the table's metadata to determine which partitions actually need to be included. This concept is called *partition pruning*, and it is one of the biggest advantages of table partitioning.

Similarly, if you execute a query that includes a join to a partitioned table and the query includes a condition on the partitioning column, the server can exclude any partitions that do not contain data pertinent to the query. This is known as *partition-wise joins*, and it is similar to partition pruning in that only those partitions that contain data needed by the query will be included.

From an administrative standpoint, one of the main benefits to partitioning is the ability to quickly delete data that is no longer needed. For example, financial data may need to be kept online for seven years; if a table has been partitioned based on transaction dates, any partitions holding data greater than seven years old can be dropped. Another administrative advantage to partitioned tables is the ability to perform updates on multiple partitions simultaneously, which can greatly reduce the time needed to touch every row in a table.

## Clustering

With enough storage combined with a reasonable partitioning strategy, you can store a great deal of data in a single relational database. But what happens if you need to handle thousands of concurrent users or generate tens of thousands of reports during a nightly cycle? Even if you have sufficient data storage, you may not have enough

CPU, memory, or network bandwidth within a single server. One potential answer is *clustering*, which allows multiple servers to act as a single database.

Although there are several different clustering architectures, for the purposes of this discussion I am referring to shared-disk/shared-cache configurations, where every server in the cluster has access to all disks, and data cached in one server can be accessed by any other server in the cluster. With this type of architecture, an application server could attach to any one of the database servers in the cluster, with connections automatically failing over to another server in the cluster in case of failure. With an eight-server cluster, you should be able to handle a very large number of concurrent users and associated queries/reports/jobs.

Of the commercial database vendors, Oracle is the leader in this space, with many of the world's biggest companies using the Oracle Exadata platform to host extremely large databases accessed by thousands of concurrent users. However, even this platform fails to meet the needs of the biggest companies, which led Google, Facebook, Amazon, and other companies to blaze new trails.

## Sharding

Let's say you have been hired as the data architect for a new social media company. You are told to expect approximately one billion users, each of whom will generate 3.7 messages per day on average, and the data must be available indefinitely. After performing a few calculations, you determine that you would exhaust the biggest available relational database platform in less than a year. One possibility would be to partition not just individual tables but the entire database. Known as *sharding*, this approach partitions the data across multiple databases (called *shards*), so it is similar to table partitioning but on a larger scale and with far more complexity. If you were to employ this strategy for the social media company, you might decide to implement 100 separate databases, each one hosting the data for approximately 10 million users.

Sharding is a complex topic, and since this is an introductory book, I will refrain from going into detail, but here are a few of the issues that would need to be addressed:

- You will need to choose a *sharding key*, which is the value used to determine to which database to connect.
- While large tables will be divided into pieces, with individual rows assigned to a single shard, smaller reference tables may need to be replicated to all shards, and a strategy needs to be defined for how reference data can be modified and changes propagated to all shards.

- If individual shards become too large (e.g., the social media company now has two billion users), you will need a plan for adding more shards and redistributing data across the shards.
- When you need to make schema changes, you will need to have a strategy for deploying the changes across all of the shards so that all schemas stay in sync.
- If application logic needs to access data stored in two or more shards, you need to have a strategy for how to query across multiple databases and also how to implement transactions across multiple databases.

If this seems complicated, that's because it is, and by the late 2000s many companies began looking for new approaches. The next section looks at other strategies for handling very large data sets completely outside the realm of relational databases.

## Big Data

After spending some time weighing the pros and cons of sharding, let's say that you (the data architect of the social media company) decide to investigate other approaches. Rather than attempting to forge your own path, you might benefit from reviewing the work done by other companies that deal with massive amounts of data: companies like Amazon, Google, Facebook, and Twitter. Together, the set of technologies pioneered by these companies (and others) has been branded as *big data*, which has become an industry buzzword but has several possible definitions. One way to define the boundaries of big data is with the “3 Vs”:

### *Volume*

In this context, volume generally means billions or trillions of data points.

### *Velocity*

This is a measure of how quickly data arrives.

### *Variety*

This means that data is not always structured (as in rows and columns in a relational database) but can also be unstructured (e.g., emails, videos, photos, audio files, etc.).

So, one way to characterize big data is any system designed to handle a huge amount of data of various formats arriving at a rapid pace. The following sections offer a quick description of some of the big data technologies that have evolved over the past 15 years or so.

## Hadoop

Hadoop is best described as an *ecosystem*, or a set of technologies and tools that work together. Some of the major components of Hadoop include:

### *Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS)*

Like the name implies, HDFS enables file management across a large number of servers.

### *MapReduce*

This technology processes large amounts of structured and unstructured data by breaking a task into many small pieces that can be run in parallel across many servers.

### *YARN*

This is a resource manager and job scheduler for HDFS.

Together, these technologies allow for the storage and processing of files across hundreds or even thousands of servers acting as a single logical system. While Hadoop is widely used, querying the data using MapReduce generally requires a programmer, which has led to the development of several SQL interfaces, including Hive, Impala, and Drill.

## **NoSQL and Document Databases**

In a relational database, data must generally conform to a predefined schema consisting of tables made up of columns holding numbers, strings, dates, etc. What happens, however, if the structure of the data isn't known beforehand or if the structure is known but changes frequently? The answer for many companies is to combine both the data and schema definition into documents using a format such as XML or JSON and then store the documents in a database. By doing so, various types of data can be stored in the same database without the need to make schema modifications, which makes storage easier but puts the burden on query and analytic tools to make sense of the data stored in the documents.

Document databases are a subset of what are called NoSQL databases, which typically store data using a simple key-value mechanism. For example, using a document database such as MongoDB, you could utilize the customer ID as the key to store a JSON document containing all of the customer's data, and other users can read the schema stored within the document to make sense of the data stored within.

## **Cloud Computing**

Prior to the advent of big data, most companies had to build their own data centers to house the database, web, and application servers used across the enterprise. With the advent of cloud computing, you can choose to essentially outsource your data center to platforms such as Amazon Web Services (AWS), Microsoft Azure, or Google Cloud. One of the biggest benefits to hosting your services in the cloud is instant scalability, which allows you to quickly dial up or down the amount of computing power needed to run your services. Startups love these platforms because they can start

writing code without spending any money up front for servers, storage, networks, or software licenses.

As far as databases are concerned, a quick look at AWS's database and analytics offerings yields the following options:

- Relational databases (MySQL, Aurora, PostgreSQL, MariaDB, Oracle, and SQL Server)
- In-memory database (ElastiCache)
- Data warehousing database (Redshift)
- NoSQL database (DynamoDB)
- Document database (DocumentDB)
- Graph database (Neptune)
- Time-series database (TimeStream)
- Hadoop (EMR)
- Data lakes (Lake Formation)

While relational databases dominated the landscape up until the mid-2000s, it's pretty easy to see that companies are now mixing and matching various platforms and that relational databases may become less popular over time.

## Conclusion

Databases are getting larger, but at the same time storage, clustering, and partitioning technologies are becoming more robust. Working with huge amounts of data can be quite challenging, regardless of the technology stack. Whether you use relational databases, big data platforms, or a variety of database servers, SQL is evolving to facilitate data retrieval from various technologies. This will be the subject of the last chapter in this book, where I will demonstrate the use of a SQL engine to query data stored in multiple formats.



# SQL and Big Data

While most of the content in this book covers the various features of the SQL language when using a relational database such as MySQL, the data landscape has changed quite a bit over the past decade, and SQL is changing to meet the needs of today's rapidly evolving environments. Many organizations that had used relational databases exclusively just a few years ago are now also housing data in Hadoop clusters, data lakes, and NoSQL databases. At the same time, companies are struggling to find ways to gain insights from the ever-growing volumes of data, and the fact that this data is now spread across multiple data stores, perhaps both on-site and in the cloud, makes this a daunting task.

Because SQL is used by millions of people and has been integrated into thousands of applications, it makes sense to leverage SQL to harness this data and make it actionable. Over the past several years, a new breed of tools has emerged to enable SQL access to structured, semi-structured, and unstructured data: tools such as Presto, Apache Drill, and Toad Data Point. This chapter explores one of these tools, Apache Drill, to demonstrate how data in different formats and stored on different servers can be brought together for reporting and analysis.

## Introduction to Apache Drill

There have been numerous tools and interfaces developed to allow SQL access to data stored in Hadoop, NoSQL, Spark, and cloud-based distributed filesystems. Examples include Hive, which was one of the first attempts to allow users to query data stored in Hadoop, and Spark SQL, which is a library used to query data stored in various formats from within Spark. One relative newcomer is the open source Apache Drill, which first hit the scene in 2015 and has the following compelling features:

- Facilitates queries across multiple data formats, including delimited data, JSON, Parquet, and log files
- Connects to relational databases, Hadoop, NoSQL, HBase, and Kafka, as well as specialized data formats such as PCAP, BlockChain, and others
- Allows creation of custom plug-ins to connect to most any other data store
- Requires no up-front schema definitions
- Supports the SQL:2003 standard
- Works with popular business intelligence (BI) tools like Tableau and Apache Superset

Using Drill, you can connect to any number of data sources and begin querying, without the need to first set up a metadata repository. While it is beyond the scope of this book to discuss the installation and configuration options for Apache Drill, if you are interested in learning more, I highly recommend *Learning Apache Drill* by Charles Givre and Paul Rogers (O'Reilly).

## Querying Files Using Drill

Let's start by using Drill to query data in a file. Drill understands how to read several different file formats, including packet capture (PCAP) files, which are in binary format and contain information about packets traveling over a network. All I have to do when I want to query a PCAP file is to configure Drill's `dfs` (distributed filesystem) plug-in to include the path to the directory containing my files, and I'm ready to write queries.

The first thing I'd like to do is find out what columns are available in the file I will be querying. Drill includes partial support for `information_schema` (covered in [Chapter 15](#)), so you can find out high-level information about the data files in your workspace:

```
apache drill> SELECT file_name, is_directory, is_file, permission
. . . . . > FROM information_schema.`files`
. . . . . > WHERE schema_name = 'dfs.data';
+-----+-----+-----+
|   file_name    | is_directory | is_file | permission |
+-----+-----+-----+
| attack-trace.pcap | false      | true    | rwxrwx--- |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row selected (0.238 seconds)
```

The results show that I have a single file named `attack-trace.pcap` in my data workspace, which is useful information, but I can't query `information_schema.columns` to

find out what columns are available in the file. However, executing a query that returns no rows against the file will show the set of available columns:<sup>1</sup>

```
apache drill> SELECT * FROM dfs.data.`attack-trace.pcap`  
 . . . . . > WHERE 1=2;  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| type | network | timestamp | timestamp_micro | src_ip | dst_ip |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| src_port | dst_port | src_mac_address | dst_mac_address | tcp_session |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| tcp_ack | tcp_flags | tcp_flags_ns | tcp_flags_cwr | tcp_flags_ece |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| tcp_flags_ece_ecn_capable | tcp_flags_ece_congestion_experienced |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| tcp_flags_urg | tcp_flags_ack | tcp_flags_psh | tcp_flags_RST |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| tcp_flags_syn | tcp_flags_fin | tcp_parsed_flags | packet_length |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| is_corrupt | data |  
+-----+-----+
```

No rows selected (0.285 seconds)

Now that I know the names of the columns in a PCAP file, I'm ready to write queries. Here's a query that counts the number of packets sent from each IP address to each destination port:

```
apache drill> SELECT src_ip, dst_port,  
 . . . . . > count(*) AS packet_count  
 . . . . . > FROM dfs.data.`attack-trace.pcap`  
 . . . . . > GROUP BY src_ip, dst_port;  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| src_ip | dst_port | packet_count |  
+-----+-----+-----+  
| 98.114.205.102 | 445 | 18 |  
| 192.150.11.111 | 1821 | 3 |  
| 192.150.11.111 | 1828 | 17 |  
| 98.114.205.102 | 1957 | 6 |  
| 192.150.11.111 | 1924 | 6 |  
| 192.150.11.111 | 8884 | 15 |  
| 98.114.205.102 | 36296 | 12 |
```

---

<sup>1</sup> These results show the columns in the file based on Drill's understanding of the PCAP file structure. If you query a file whose format is not known to Drill, the result set will contain an array of strings with a single column named `columns`.

```
| 98.114.205.102 | 1080      | 159          |
| 192.150.11.111 | 2152      | 112          |
+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows selected (0.254 seconds)
```

Here's another query that aggregates packet information for each second:

```
apache drill> SELECT trunc(extract(second from `timestamp`)) as packet_time,
...     . . . > count(*) AS num_packets,
...     . . . > sum(packet_length) AS tot_volume
...     . . . > FROM dfs.data. attack-trace.pcap
...     . . . > GROUP BY trunc(extract(second from `timestamp`));
+-----+-----+-----+
| packet_time | num_packets | tot_volume |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 28.0        | 15          | 1260        |
| 29.0        | 12          | 1809        |
| 30.0        | 13          | 4292        |
| 31.0        | 3           | 286         |
| 32.0        | 2           | 118         |
| 33.0        | 15          | 1054        |
| 34.0        | 35          | 14446       |
| 35.0        | 29          | 16926       |
| 36.0        | 25          | 16710       |
| 37.0        | 25          | 16710       |
| 38.0        | 26          | 17788       |
| 39.0        | 23          | 15578       |
| 40.0        | 25          | 16710       |
| 41.0        | 23          | 15578       |
| 42.0        | 30          | 20052       |
| 43.0        | 25          | 16710       |
| 44.0        | 22          | 7484        |
+-----+-----+-----+
17 rows selected (0.422 seconds)
```

In this query, I needed to put backticks (`) around `timestamp` because it is a reserved word.

You can query files stored locally, on your network, in a distributed filesystem, or in the cloud. Drill has built-in support for many file types, but you can also build your own plug-in to allow Drill to query any type of file. The next two sections will explore querying data stored in a database.

## Querying MySQL Using Drill

Drill can connect to any relational database via a JDBC driver, so the next logical step is to show how Drill can query the Sakila sample database used for the examples in this book. All you need to do to get started is to load the JDBC driver for MySQL and configure Drill to connect to the MySQL database.



At this point, you may be wondering, “Why would I use Drill to query MySQL?” One reason is that (as you will see at the end of this chapter) you can write queries using Drill that combine data from different sources, so you might write a query that joins data from MySQL, Hadoop, and comma-delimited files, for example.

The first step is to choose a database:

```
apache drill (information_schema)> use mysql.sakila;
+-----+-----+
|   ok |           summary          |
+-----+-----+
| true | Default schema changed to [mysql.sakila] |
+-----+-----+
1 row selected (0.062 seconds)
```

After choosing the database, you can issue the `show tables` command to see all of the tables available in the chosen schema:

```
apache drill (mysql.sakila)> show tables;
+-----+-----+
| TABLE_SCHEMA |      TABLE_NAME      |
+-----+-----+
| mysql.sakila | actor           |
| mysql.sakila | address          |
| mysql.sakila | category         |
| mysql.sakila | city             |
| mysql.sakila | country          |
| mysql.sakila | customer         |
| mysql.sakila | film             |
| mysql.sakila | film_actor       |
| mysql.sakila | film_category    |
| mysql.sakila | film_text         |
| mysql.sakila | inventory        |
| mysql.sakila | language          |
| mysql.sakila | payment          |
| mysql.sakila | rental            |
| mysql.sakila | sales             |
| mysql.sakila | staff             |
| mysql.sakila | store             |
| mysql.sakila | actor_info        |
| mysql.sakila | customer_list     |
| mysql.sakila | film_list         |
| mysql.sakila | nicer_but_slower_film_list |
| mysql.sakila | sales_by_film_category |
| mysql.sakila | sales_by_store      |
| mysql.sakila | staff_list        |
+-----+-----+
24 rows selected (0.147 seconds)
```

I will start by executing a few queries demonstrated in earlier chapters. Here’s a simple two-table join from [Chapter 5](#):

The next query comes from Chapter 8 and includes both a `group by` clause and a `having` clause:

Finally, here is a query from [Chapter 16](#) that includes three different ranking functions:

These few examples demonstrate Drill's ability to execute reasonably complex queries against MySQL, but you will need to keep in mind that Drill works with many relational databases, not just MySQL, so some features of the language may differ (e.g., data conversion functions). For more information, read [Drill's documentation about their SQL implementation](#).

# Querying MongoDB Using Drill

After using Drill to query the sample Sakila data in MySQL, the next logical step is to convert the Sakila data to another commonly used format, store it in a nonrelational database, and use Drill to query the data. I decided to convert the data to JSON and store it in MongoDB, which is one of the more popular NoSQL platforms for document storage. Drill includes a plug-in for MongoDB and also understands how to read JSON documents, so it was relatively easy to load the JSON files into Mongo and begin writing queries.

Before diving into the queries, let's take a look at the structure of the JSON files, since they aren't in normalized form. The first of the two JSON files is *films.json*:

```
{"_id":1,
  "Actors":[
    {"First name":"PENELOPE","Last name":"GUINNESS","actorId":1},
    {"First name":"CHRISTIAN","Last name":"GABLE","actorId":10},
    {"First name":"LUCILLE","Last name":"TRACY","actorId":20},
    {"First name":"SANDRA","Last name":"PECK","actorId":30},
    {"First name":"JOHNNY","Last name":"CAGE","actorId":40},
    {"First name":"MENA","Last name":"TEMPLE","actorId":53},
    {"First name":"WARREN","Last name":"NOLTE","actorId":108},
    {"First name":"OPRAH","Last name":"KILMER","actorId":162},
    {"First name":"ROCK","Last name":"DUKAKIS","actorId":188},
    {"First name":"MARY","Last name":"KEITEL","actorId":198}],
  "Category":"Documentary",
  "Description":"A Epic Drama of a Feminist And a Mad Scientist
    who must Battle a Teacher in The Canadian Rockies",
  "Length":"86",
  "Rating":"PG",
  "Rental Duration":"6",
  "Replacement Cost":"20.99",
  "Special Features":"Deleted Scenes,Behind the Scenes",
  "Title":"ACADEMY DINOSAUR"},

  {"_id":2,
    "Actors":[
      {"First name":"BOB","Last name":"FAWCETT","actorId":19},
      {"First name":"MINNIE","Last name":"ZELLWEGER","actorId":85},
      {"First name":"SEAN","Last name":"GUINNESS","actorId":90},
      {"First name":"CHRIS","Last name":"DEPP","actorId":160}],
    "Category":"Horror",
    "Description":"A Astounding Epistle of a Database Administrator
      And a Explorer who must Find a Car in Ancient China",
    "Length":"48",
    "Rating":"G",
    "Rental Duration":"3",
    "Replacement Cost":"12.99",
    "Special Features":"Trailers,Deleted Scenes",
    "Title":"ACE GOLDFINGER"},

  ...
  {"_id":999,
    "Actors":[
      {"First name":"CARMEN","Last name":"HUNT","actorId":52},
      {"First name":"MARY","Last name":"TANDY","actorId":66},
      {"First name":"PENELOPE","Last name":"CRONYN","actorId":104},
      {"First name":"WHOOPIE","Last name":"HURT","actorId":140},
      {"First name":"JADA","Last name":"RYDER","actorId":142}],
    "Category":"Children",
    "Description":"A Fateful Reflection of a Waitress And a Boat
      who must Discover a Sumo Wrestler in Ancient China",
    "Length":"101",
    "Rating":"R",}
```

```

    "Rental Duration":"5",
    "Replacement Cost":"28.99",
    "Special Features":"Trailers,Deleted Scenes",
    "Title":"ZOOLANDER FICTION"}
{"_id":1000,
 "Actors":[
    {"First name":"IAN","Last name":"TANDY","actorId":155},
    {"First name":"NICK","Last name":"DEGENERES","actorId":166},
    {"First name":"LISA","Last name":"MONROE","actorId":178}],
 "Category":"Comedy",
 "Description":"A Intrepid Panorama of a Mad Scientist And a Boy
    who must Redeem a Boy in A Monastery",
 "Length":"50",
 "Rating":"NC-17",
 "Rental Duration":"3",
 "Replacement Cost":"18.99",
 "Special Features":
    "Trailers,Commentaries,Behind the Scenes",
 "Title":"ZORRO ARK"}

```

There are 1,000 documents in this collection, and each document contains a number of scalar attributes (`Title`, `Rating`, `_id`) but also includes a list called `Actors`, which contains 1 to  $N$  elements consisting of the actor ID, first name, and last name attributes for every actor appearing in the film. Therefore, this file contains all of the data found in the `actor`, `film`, and `film_actor` tables within the MySQL Sakila database.

The second file is `customer.json`, which combines data from the `customer`, `address`, `city`, `country`, `rental`, and `payment` tables from the MySQL Sakila database:

```

{"_id":1,
 "Address":"1913 Hanoi Way",
 "City":"Sasebo",
 "Country":"Japan",
 "District":"Nagasaki",
 "First Name":"MARY",
 "Last Name":"SMITH",
 "Phone":"28303384290",
 "Rentals":[
    {"rentalId":1185,
     "filmId":611,
     "staffId":2,
     "Film Title":"MUSKeteers WAIT",
     "Payments":[
        {"Payment Id":3,"Amount":5.99,"Payment Date":"2005-06-15 00:54:12"}],
     "Rental Date":"2005-06-15 00:54:12.0",
     "Return Date":"2005-06-23 02:42:12.0"},
    {"rentalId":1476,
     "filmId":308,
     "staffId":1,
     "Film Title":"FERRIS MOTHER",
     "Payments":[
        {"Payment Id":1,"Amount":3.99,"Payment Date":"2005-06-15 00:54:12"}],
     "Rental Date":"2005-06-15 00:54:12.0",
     "Return Date":"2005-06-23 02:42:12.0"}]
}
```

```
"Payments": [
    {"Payment Id":5,"Amount":9.99,"Payment Date":"2005-06-15 21:08:46"}],
"Rental Date":"2005-06-15 21:08:46.0",
"Return Date":"2005-06-25 02:26:46.0"},

...
{"rentalId":14825,
"filmId":317,
"staffId":2,
"Film Title":"FIREBALL PHILADELPHIA",
"Payments": [
    {"Payment Id":30,"Amount":1.99,"Payment Date":"2005-08-22 01:27:57"}],
"Rental Date":"2005-08-22 01:27:57.0",
"Return Date":"2005-08-27 07:01:57.0"}
]
}
```

This file contains 599 entries (only one was shown here), which are loaded into Mongo as 599 documents in the `customers` collection. Each document contains the information about a single customer, along with all of the rentals and associated payments made by that customer. Furthermore, the documents contain nested lists, since each rental in the `Rentals` list also contains a list of `Payments`.

After the JSON files have been loaded, the Mongo database contains two collections (`films` and `customers`), and the data in these collections spans nine different tables from the MySQL Sakila database. This is a fairly typical scenario, since application programmers typically work with collections and generally prefer not to deconstruct their data for storage into normalized relational tables. The challenge from an SQL perspective is to determine how to flatten this data so that it behaves as if it were stored in multiple tables.

To illustrate, let's construct the following query against the `films` collection: find all actors who have appeared in 10 or more films rated either G or PG. Here's what the raw data looks like:

```
...  
| G    [{"First name": "CAMERON", "Last name": "STREEP", "actorId": "24"},  
|     {"First name": "CARMEN", "Last name": "HUNT", "actorId": "52"},  
|     {"First name": "JANE", "Last name": "JACKMAN", "actorId": "131"},  
|     {"First name": "BELA", "Last name": "WALKEN", "actorId": "196"}] |  
  
| [ {"First name": "ED", "Last name": "CHASE", "actorId": "3"},  
|   {"First name": "JULIA", "Last name": "MCQUEEN", "actorId": "27"},  
|   {"First name": "JAMES", "Last name": "PITT", "actorId": "84"},  
|   {"First name": "CHRISTOPHER", "Last name": "WEST", "actorId": "163"},  
|   {"First name": "MENA", "Last name": "HOPPER", "actorId": "170"}] |  
+-----+  
372 rows selected (0.432 seconds)
```

The `Actors` field is a list of one or more actor documents. In order to interact with this data as if it were a table, the `flatten` command can be used to turn the list into a nested table containing three fields:

This query returns 2,119 rows, rather than the 372 rows returned by the previous query, which indicates that on average 5.7 actors appear in each G or PG film. This query can then be wrapped in a subquery and used to group the data by rating and actor, as in:

The inner query uses the `flatten` command to create one row for every actor who has appeared in a G or PG movie, and the outer query simply performs a grouping on this data set.

Next, let's write a query against the `customers` collection in Mongo. This is a bit more challenging since each document contains a list of film rentals, each of which contains a list of payments. To make it a little more interesting, let's also join to the `films` collection in order to see how Drill handles joins. The query should return all customers who have spent more than \$80 to rent films rated either G or PG. Here's what it looks like:

```

        . . . . . )> FROM
        . . . . . )>   (SELECT cust_data.first_name,
        . . . . . )>     cust_data.last_name,
        . . . . . )>     f.Rating,
        . . . . . )>     flatten(cust_data.rental_data.Payments)
        . . . . . )>     payment_data
        . . . . . )>   FROM films f
        . . . . . )>   INNER JOIN
        . . . . . )>     (SELECT c.`First Name` first_name,
        . . . . . )>       c.`Last Name` last_name,
        . . . . . )>       flatten(c.Rentals) rental_data
        . . . . . )>     FROM customers c
        . . . . . )>   ) cust_data
        . . . . . )>   ON f._id = cust_data.rental_data.filmID
        . . . . . )>   WHERE f.Rating IN ('G','PG')
        . . . . . )> ) cust_payments
        . . . . . )> GROUP BY first_name, last_name
        . . . . . )> HAVING
        . . . . . )>   sum(cast(cust_payments.payment_data.Amount
        . . . . . )>           as decimal(4,2))) > 80;
+
+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | tot_payments |
+-----+-----+-----+
| ELEANOR    | HUNT      | 85.80       |
| GORDON     | ALLARD    | 85.86       |
| CLARA      | SHAW      | 86.83       |
| JACQUELINE | LONG      | 86.82       |
| KARL       | SEAL      | 89.83       |
| PRISCILLA  | LOWE      | 95.80       |
| MONICA     | HICKS     | 85.82       |
| LOUIS      | LEONE     | 95.82       |
| JUNE       | CARROLL   | 88.83       |
| ALICE      | STEWART   | 81.82       |
+-----+-----+-----+
10 rows selected (1.658 seconds)

```

The innermost query, which I named `cust_data`, flattens the `Rentals` list so that the `cust_payments` query can join to the `films` collection and also flatten the `Payments` list. The outermost query groups the data by customer name and applies a `having` clause to filter out customers who spent \$80 or less on films rated G or PG.

# Drill with Multiple Data Sources

So far, I have used Drill to join multiple tables stored in the same database, but what if the data is stored in different databases? For example, let's say the customer/rental/payment data is stored in MongoDB but the catalog of film/actor data is stored in MySQL. As long as Drill is configured to connect to both databases, you just need to describe where to find the data. Here's the query from the previous section, but

instead of joining to the films collection stored in MongoDB, the join specifies the film table stored in MySQL:

Since I'm using multiple databases in the same query, I specified the full path to each table/collection to make it clear as to where the data is being sourced. This is where Drill really shines, since I can combine data from multiple sources in the same query without having to transform and load the data from one source to another.

## Future of SQL

The future of relational databases is somewhat unclear. It is possible that the big data technologies of the past decade will continue to mature and gain market share. It's also possible that a new set of technologies will emerge, overtaking Hadoop and NoSQL, and taking additional market share from relational databases. However, most companies still run their core business functions using relational databases, and it should take a long time for this to change.

The future of SQL seems a bit clearer, however. While the SQL language started out as a mechanism for interacting with data in relational databases, tools like Apache Drill act more like an abstraction layer, facilitating the analysis of data across various database platforms. In this author's opinion, this trend will continue, and SQL will remain a critical tool for data analysis and reporting for many years.



## APPENDIX A

# ER Diagram for Example Database

Figure A-1 is an entity-relationship (ER) diagram for the example database used in this book. As the name suggests, the diagram depicts the entities, or tables, in the database along with the foreign-key relationships between the tables. Here are a few tips to help you understand the notation:

- Each rectangle represents a table, with the table name above the upper-left corner of the rectangle. The primary-key column(s) are listed first, followed by nonkey columns.
- Lines between tables represent foreign key relationships. The markings at either end of the lines represent the allowable quantity, which can be zero (0), one (1), or many (<). For example, if you look at the relationship between the `customer` and `rental` tables, you would say that a rental is associated with exactly one customer, but a customer may have zero, one, or many rentals.

For more information on entity-relationship modeling, please see [the Wikipedia entry on this topic](#).

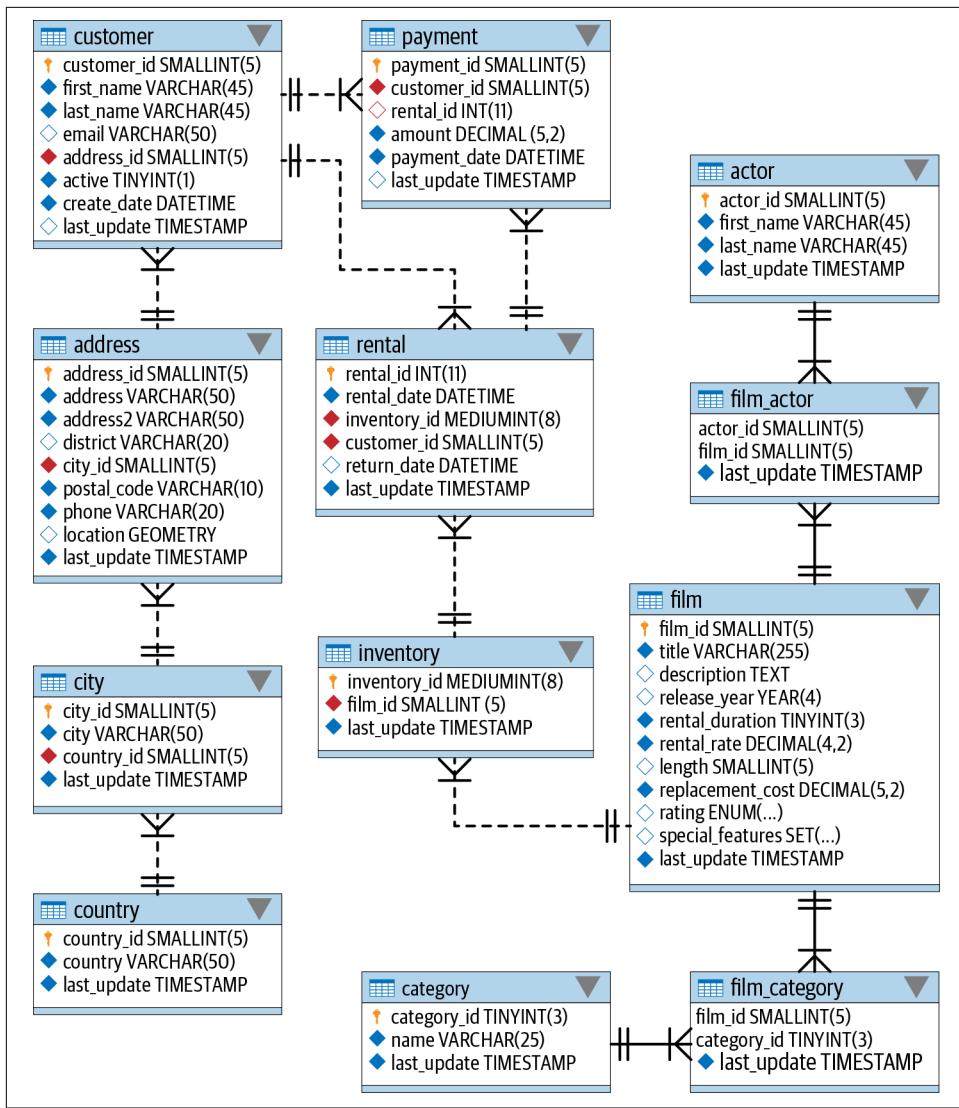


Figure A-1. ER diagram

---

# Solutions to Exercises

## Chapter 3

### Exercise 3-1

Retrieve the actor ID, first name, and last name for all actors. Sort by last name and then by first name.

```
mysql> SELECT actor_id, first_name, last_name
-> FROM actor
-> ORDER BY 3,2;
+-----+-----+
| actor_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
|      58 | CHRISTIAN | AKROYD   |
|    182 | DEBBIE    | AKROYD   |
|     92 | KIRSTEN   | AKROYD   |
|   118 | CUBA      | ALLEN    |
|   145 | KIM       | ALLEN    |
|   194 | MERYL     | ALLEN    |
...
|     13 | UMA       | WOOD     |
|     63 | CAMERON  | WRAY     |
|   111 | CAMERON  | ZELLWEGER|
|   186 | JULIA     | ZELLWEGER|
|     85 | MINNIE   | ZELLWEGER|
+-----+-----+
200 rows in set (0.02 sec)
```

### Exercise 3-2

Retrieve the actor ID, first name, and last name for all actors whose last name equals 'WILLIAMS' or 'DAVIS'.

```
mysql> SELECT actor_id, first_name, last_name
      -> FROM actor
      -> WHERE last_name IN ('WILLIAMS','DAVIS');
+-----+-----+-----+
| actor_id | first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       4 | JENNIFER   | DAVIS      |
|    101 | SUSAN       | DAVIS      |
|   110 | SUSAN       | DAVIS      |
|    72 | SEAN        | WILLIAMS   |
|   137 | MORGAN     | WILLIAMS   |
|   172 | GROUCHO    | WILLIAMS   |
+-----+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

## Exercise 3-3

Write a query against the `rental` table that returns the IDs of the customers who rented a film on July 5, 2005 (use the `rental.rental_date` column, and you can use the `date()` function to ignore the time component). Include a single row for each distinct customer ID.

```
mysql> SELECT DISTINCT customer_id
      -> FROM rental
      -> WHERE date(rental_date) = '2005-07-05';
+-----+
| customer_id |
+-----+
|      8 |
|     37 |
|     60 |
|    111 |
|    114 |
|    138 |
|    142 |
|    169 |
|    242 |
|    295 |
|    296 |
|    298 |
|    322 |
|    348 |
|    349 |
|    369 |
|    382 |
|    397 |
|    421 |
|    476 |
|    490 |
|    520 |
|    536 |
+-----+
```

```
|      553 |
|      565 |
|      586 |
|      594 |
+-----+
27 rows in set (0.22 sec)
```

## Exercise 3-4

Fill in the blanks (denoted by <#>) for this multitable query to achieve the following results:

```
mysql> SELECT c.email, r.return_date
    -> FROM customer c
    -> INNER JOIN rental <1>
    -> ON c.customer_id = <2>
    -> WHERE date(r.rental_date) = '2005-06-14'
    -> ORDER BY <3> <4>;
+-----+-----+
| email                      | return_date   |
+-----+-----+
| DANIEL.CABRAL@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-23 22:00:38 |
| TERRANCE.ROUSH@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-23 21:53:46 |
| MIRIAM.MCKINNEY@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-21 17:12:08 |
| GWENDOLYN.MAY@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-20 02:40:27 |
| JEANETTE.GREENE@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-19 23:26:46 |
| HERMAN.DEVORE@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-19 03:20:09 |
| JEFFERY.PINSON@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-18 21:37:33 |
| MATTHEW.MAHAN@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-18 05:18:58 |
| MINNIE.ROMERO@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-18 01:58:34 |
| SONIA.GREGORY@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-17 21:44:11 |
| TERRENCE.GUNDERSON@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-17 05:28:35 |
| ELMER.NOE@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-17 02:11:13 |
| JOYCE.EDWARDS@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-16 21:00:26 |
| AMBER.DIXON@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-16 04:02:56 |
| CHARLES.KOWALSKI@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-16 02:26:34 |
| CATHERINE.CAMPBELL@sakilacustomer.org | 2005-06-15 20:43:03 |
+-----+-----+
16 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

<1> is replaced by r.

<2> is replaced by r.customer\_id.

<3> is replaced by 2.

<4> is replaced by desc.

# Chapter 4

The following subset of rows from the payment table are used as an example for the first two exercises:

payment_id	customer_id	amount	date(payment_date)
101	4	8.99	2005-08-18
102	4	1.99	2005-08-19
103	4	2.99	2005-08-20
104	4	6.99	2005-08-20
105	4	4.99	2005-08-21
106	4	2.99	2005-08-22
107	4	1.99	2005-08-23
108	5	0.99	2005-05-29
109	5	6.99	2005-05-31
110	5	1.99	2005-05-31
111	5	3.99	2005-06-15
112	5	2.99	2005-06-16
113	5	4.99	2005-06-17
114	5	2.99	2005-06-19
115	5	4.99	2005-06-20
116	5	4.99	2005-07-06
117	5	2.99	2005-07-08
118	5	4.99	2005-07-09
119	5	5.99	2005-07-09
120	5	1.99	2005-07-09

## Exercise 4-1

Which of the payment IDs would be returned by the following filter conditions?

```
customer_id <> 5 AND (amount > 8 OR date(payment_date) = '2005-08-23')
```

Payment IDs 101 and 107.

## Exercise 4-2

Which of the payment IDs would be returned by the following filter conditions?

```
customer_id = 5 AND NOT (amount > 6 OR date(payment_date) = '2005-06-19')
```

Payment IDs 108, 110, 111, 112, 113, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, and 120.

## Exercise 4-3

Construct a query that retrieves all rows from the payment table where the amount is either 1.98, 7.98, or 9.98.

```

mysql> SELECT amount
      -> FROM payment
      -> WHERE amount IN (1.98, 7.98, 9.98);
+-----+
| amount |
+-----+
| 7.98 |
| 9.98 |
| 1.98 |
| 7.98 |
| 7.98 |
| 7.98 |
| 7.98 |
+-----+
7 rows in set (0.01 sec)

```

## Exercise 4-4

Construct a query that finds all customers whose last name contains an *A* in the second position and a *W* anywhere after the *A*.

```

mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
      -> FROM customer
      -> WHERE last_name LIKE '_A%W%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| KAY        | CALDWELL   |
| JOHN       | FARNSWORTH |
| JILL       | HAWKINS    |
| LEE         | HAWKS      |
| LAURIE     | LAWRENCE   |
| JEANNE     | LAWSON     |
| LAWRENCE   | LAWTON     |
| SAMUEL     | MARLOW     |
| ERICA       | MATTHEWS   |
+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

## Chapter 5

### Exercise 5-1

Fill in the blanks (denoted by <#>) for the following query to obtain the results that follow:

```

mysql> SELECT c.first_name, c.last_name, a.address, ct.city
      -> FROM customer c
      -> INNER JOIN address <1>
      -> ON c.address_id = a.address_id
      -> INNER JOIN city ct

```

```

-> ON a.city_id = <2>
-> WHERE a.district = 'California';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name | address           | city      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| PATRICIA   | JOHNSON    | 1121 Loja Avenue     | San Bernardino |
| BETTY       | WHITE       | 770 Bydgoszcz Avenue | Citrus Heights  |
| ALICE       | STEWART     | 1135 Izumisano Parkway | Fontana      |
| ROSA        | REYNOLDS    | 793 Cam Ranh Avenue  | Lancaster    |
| RENEE       | LANE        | 533 al-Ayn Boulevard | Compton      |
| KRISTIN     | JOHNSTON   | 226 Brest Manor     | Sunnyvale   |
| CASSANDRA   | WALTERS     | 920 Kumbakonam Loop  | Salinas     |
| JACOB        | LANCE        | 1866 al-Qatif Avenue | El Monte    |
| RENE        | MCALISTER   | 1895 Zhezqazghan Drive | Garden Grove |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

<1> is replaced by a.

<2> is replaced by ct.city\_id.

## Exercise 5-2

Write a query that returns the title of every film in which an actor with the first name JOHN appeared.

```

mysql> SELECT f.title
-> FROM film f
-> INNER JOIN film_actor fa
-> ON f.film_id = fa.film_id
-> INNER JOIN actor a
-> ON fa.actor_id = a.actor_id
-> WHERE a.first_name = 'JOHN';
+-----+
| title          |
+-----+
| ALLEY EVOLUTION |
| BEVERLY OUTLAW |
| CANDLES GRAPES |
| CLEOPATRA DEVIL |
| COLOR PHILADELPHIA |
| CONQUERER NUTS |
| DAUGHTER MADIGAN |
| GLEAMING JAWBREAKER |
| GOLDMINE TYCOON |
| HOME PITY |
| INTERVIEW LIAISONS |
| ISHTAR ROCKETEER |
| JAPANESE RUN |
| JERSEY SASSY |
| LUKE MUMMY |
| MILLION ACE |

```

```

| MONSTER SPARTACUS      |
| NAME DETECTIVE        |
| NECKLACE OUTBREAK      |
| NEWSIES STORY          |
| PET HAUNTING          |
| PIANIST OUTFIELD       |
| PINOCCHIO SIMON        |
| PITTSBURGH HUNCHBACK   |
| QUILLS BULL            |
| RAGING AIRPLANE         |
| ROXANNE REBEL          |
| SATISFACTION CONFIDENTIAL |
| SONG HEDWIG            |
+-----+
29 rows in set (0.07 sec)

```

## Exercise 5-3

Construct a query that returns all addresses that are in the same city. You will need to join the address table to itself, and each row should include two different addresses.

```

mysql> SELECT a1.address addr1, a2.address addr2, a1.city_id
    -> FROM address a1
    -> INNER JOIN address a2
    -> WHERE a1.city_id = a2.city_id
    -> AND a1.address_id >> a2.address_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| addr1      | addr2      | city_id |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 47 MySakila Drive | 23 Workhaven Lane | 300 |
| 28 MySQL Boulevard | 1411 Lillydale Drive | 576 |
| 23 Workhaven Lane | 47 MySakila Drive | 300 |
| 1411 Lillydale Drive | 28 MySQL Boulevard | 576 |
| 1497 Yuzhou Drive | 548 Uruapan Street | 312 |
| 587 Benguela Manor | 43 Vilnius Manor | 42 |
| 548 Uruapan Street | 1497 Yuzhou Drive | 312 |
| 43 Vilnius Manor | 587 Benguela Manor | 42 |
+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

## Chapter 6

### Exercise 6-1

If set A = {L M N O P} and set B = {P Q R S T}, what sets are generated by the following operations?

- A union B
- A union all B

- A intersect B
  - A except B
1. A union B = {L M N O P Q R S T}
  2. A union all B = {L M N O P P Q R S T}
  3. A intersect B = {P}
  4. A except B = {L M N O}

## Exercise 6-2

Write a compound query that finds the first and last names of all actors and customers whose last name starts with L.

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
->   FROM actor
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'L%'
-> UNION
-> SELECT first_name, last_name
->   FROM customer
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'L%';
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| MATTHEW    | LEIGH      |
| JOHNNY     | LOLLOBRIGIDA |
| MISTY      | LAMBERT    |
| JACOB      | LANCE      |
| RENEE      | LANE       |
| HEIDI      | LARSON    |
| DARYL      | LARUE      |
| LAURIE     | LAWRENCE   |
| JEANNE     | LAWSON    |
| LAWRENCE   | LAWTON    |
| KIMBERLY   | LEE        |
| LOUIS      | LEONE      |
| SARAH      | LEWIS      |
| GEORGE     | LINTON    |
| MAUREEN    | LITTLE     |
| DWIGHT     | LOMBARDI  |
| JACQUELINE | LONG       |
| AMY         | LOPEZ      |
| BARRY      | LOVELACE   |
| PRISCILLA  | LOWE       |
| VELMA      | LUCAS      |
| WILLARD    | LUMPKIN   |
| LEWIS      | LYMAN      |
| JACKIE     | LYNCH      |
+-----+-----+
24 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

## Exercise 6-3

Sort the results from Exercise 6-2 by the `last_name` column.

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name
-> FROM actor
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'L%'
-> UNION
-> SELECT first_name, last_name
-> FROM customer
-> WHERE last_name LIKE 'L%'
-> ORDER BY last_name;
+-----+-----+
| first_name | last_name |
+-----+-----+
| MISTY      | LAMBERT   |
| JACOB      | LANCE     |
| RENEE      | LANE      |
| HEIDI      | LARSON    |
| DARYL      | LARUE     |
| LAURIE     | LAWRENCE  |
| JEANNE     | LAWSON    |
| LAWRENCE   | LAWTON    |
| KIMBERLY   | LEE       |
| MATTHEW    | LEIGH     |
| LOUIS      | LEONE     |
| SARAH      | LEWIS     |
| GEORGE     | LINTON    |
| MAUREEN    | LITTLE    |
| JOHNNY     | LOLLOBRIGIDA |
| DWIGHT     | LOMBARDI |
| JACQUELINE | LONG     |
| AMY        | LOPEZ     |
| BARRY      | LOVELACE  |
| PRISCILLA  | LOWE     |
| VELMA      | LUCAS     |
| WILLARD    | LUMPKIN   |
| LEWIS      | LYMAN     |
| JACKIE     | LYNCH     |
+-----+-----+
24 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

# Chapter 7

## Exercise 7-1

Write a query that returns the 17th through 25th characters of the string 'Please find the substring in this string'.

```
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING('Please find the substring in this string',17,9);
+-----+
| SUBSTRING('Please find the substring in this string',17,9) |
+-----+
| substring |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

## Exercise 7-2

Write a query that returns the absolute value and sign (-1, 0, or 1) of the number -25.76823. Also return the number rounded to the nearest hundredth.

```
mysql> SELECT ABS(-25.76823), SIGN(-25.76823), ROUND(-25.76823, 2);
+-----+-----+-----+
| ABS(-25.76823) | SIGN(-25.76823) | ROUND(-25.76823, 2) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      25.76823 |          -1 |        -25.77 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

## Exercise 7-3

Write a query to return just the month portion of the current date.

```
mysql> SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM CURRENT_DATE());
+-----+
| EXTRACT(MONTH FROM CURRENT_DATE) |
+-----+
|          12 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
```

(Your result will most likely be different, unless it happens to be December when you try this exercise.)

# Chapter 8

## Exercise 8-1

Construct a query that counts the number of rows in the payment table.

```
mysql> SELECT count(*) FROM payment;
+-----+
| count(*) |
+-----+
|    16049 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
```

## Exercise 8-2

Modify your query from Exercise 8-1 to count the number of payments made by each customer. Show the customer ID and the total amount paid for each customer.

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*), sum(amount)
->   FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) | sum(amount) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 |      32 |     118.68 |
|      2 |      27 |     128.73 |
|      3 |      26 |     135.74 |
|      4 |      22 |      81.78 |
|      5 |      38 |     144.62 |
...
|    595 |      30 |     117.70 |
|    596 |      28 |      96.72 |
|    597 |      25 |      99.75 |
|    598 |      22 |      83.78 |
|    599 |      19 |      83.81 |
+-----+-----+-----+
599 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

## Exercise 8-3

Modify your query from Exercise 8-2 to include only those customers who have made at least 40 payments.

```
mysql> SELECT customer_id, count(*), sum(amount)
->   FROM payment
->   GROUP BY customer_id
->   HAVING count(*) >= 40;
+-----+-----+-----+
| customer_id | count(*) | sum(amount) |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      75 |      41 |     155.59 |
|     144 |      42 |     195.58 |
|     148 |      46 |     216.54 |
|     197 |      40 |     154.60 |
|     236 |      42 |     175.58 |
|     469 |      40 |     177.60 |
|     526 |      45 |     221.55 |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.03 sec)
```

## Chapter 9

### Exercise 9-1

Construct a query against the `film` table that uses a filter condition with a noncorrelated subquery against the `category` table to find all action films (`category.name = 'Action'`).

```
mysql> SELECT title
    ->   FROM film
    ->  WHERE film_id IN
    ->    (SELECT fc.film_id
    ->      FROM film_category fc INNER JOIN category c
    ->        ON fc.category_id = c.category_id
    ->       WHERE c.name = 'Action');
+-----+
| title           |
+-----+
| AMADEUS HOLY   |
| AMERICAN CIRCUS|
| ANTITRUST TOMATOES|
| ARK RIDGEMONT  |
| BAREFOOT MANCHURIAN|
| BERETS AGENT    |
| BRIDE INTRIGUE  |
| BULL SHAWSHANK  |
| CADDYSHACK JEDI  |
| CAMPUS REMEMBER |
| CASUALTIES ENCINO|
| CELEBRITY HORN   |
| CLUELESS BUCKET  |
| CROW GREASE     |
| DANCES NONE     |
| DARKO DORADO    |
| DARN FORRESTER  |
| DEVIL DESIRE    |
| DRAGON SQUAD    |
| DREAM PICKUP    |
| DRIFTER COMMANDMENTS|
| EASY GLADIATOR  |
| ENTRAPMENT SATISFACTION|
| EXCITEMENT EVE   |
| FANTASY TROOPERS|
| FIREHOUSE VIETNAM|
| FOOL MOCKINGBIRD|
| FORREST SONS    |
| GLASS DYING     |
| GOSFORD DONNIE  |
```

```

| GRAIL FRANKENSTEIN      |
| HANDICAP BOONDOCK       |
| HILLS NEIGHBORS         |
| KISSING DOLLS          |
| LAWRENCE LOVE           |
| LORD ARIZONA            |
| LUST LOCK                |
| MAGNOLIA FORRESTER      |
| MIDNIGHT WESTWARD       |
| MINDS TRUMAN             |
| MOCKINGBIRD HOLLYWOOD   |
| MONTEZUMA COMMAND        |
| PARK CITIZEN             |
| PATRIOT ROMAN            |
| PRIMARY GLASS            |
| QUEST MUSSOLINI          |
| REAR TRADING              |
| RINGS HEARTBREAKERS       |
| RUGRATS SHAKESPEARE       |
| SHRUNK DIVINE             |
| SIDE ARK                  |
| SKY MIRACLE                |
| SOUTH WAIT                 |
| SPEAKEASY DATE             |
| STAGECOACH ARMAGEDDON     |
| STORY SIDE                  |
| SUSPECTS QUILLS            |
| TRIP NEWTON                |
| TRUMAN CRAZY               |
| UPRISING UPTOWN             |
| WATERFRONT DELIVERANCE      |
| WEREWOLF LOLA               |
| WOMEN DORADO                |
| WORST BANGER                |
+-----+

```

64 rows in set (0.06 sec)

## Exercise 9-2

Rework the query from Exercise 9-1 using a *correlated* subquery against the `category` and `film_category` tables to achieve the same results.

```

mysql> SELECT f.title
-> FROM film f
-> WHERE EXISTS
-> (SELECT 1
->   FROM film_category fc INNER JOIN category c
->     ON fc.category_id = c.category_id
->   WHERE c.name = 'Action'
->     AND fc.film_id = f.film_id);
+-----+
| title      |
+-----+

```

AMADEUS HOLY	
AMERICAN CIRCUS	
ANTITRUST TOMATOES	
ARK RIDGEMONT	
BAREFOOT MANCHURIAN	
BERETS AGENT	
BRIDE INTRIGUE	
BULL SHAWSHANK	
CADDYSHACK JEDI	
CAMPUS REMEMBER	
CASUALTIES ENCINO	
CELEBRITY HORN	
CLUELESS BUCKET	
CROW GREASE	
DANCES NONE	
DARKO DORADO	
DARN FORRESTER	
DEVIL DESIRE	
DRAGON SQUAD	
DREAM PICKUP	
DRIFTER COMMANDMENTS	
EASY GLADIATOR	
ENTRAPMENT SATISFACTION	
EXCITEMENT EVE	
FANTASY TROOPERS	
FIREHOUSE VIETNAM	
FOOL MOCKINGBIRD	
FORREST SONS	
GLASS DYING	
GOSFORD DONNIE	
GRAIL FRANKENSTEIN	
HANDICAP BOONDOCK	
HILLS NEIGHBORS	
KISSING DOLLS	
LAWRENCE LOVE	
LORD ARIZONA	
LUST LOCK	
MAGNOLIA FORRESTER	
MIDNIGHT WESTWARD	
MINDS TRUMAN	
MOCKINGBIRD HOLLYWOOD	
MONTEZUMA COMMAND	
PARK CITIZEN	
PATRIOT ROMAN	
PRIMARY GLASS	
QUEST MUSSOLINI	
REAR TRADING	
RINGS HEARTBREAKERS	
RUGRATS SHAKESPEARE	
SHRUNK DIVINE	
SIDE ARK	

```

| SKY MIRACLE          |
| SOUTH WAIT           |
| SPEAKEASY DATE       |
| STAGECOACH ARMAGEDDON|
| STORY SIDE           |
| SUSPECTS QUILLS     |
| TRIP NEWTON          |
| TRUMAN CRAZY         |
| UPRISING UPTOWN      |
| WATERFRONT DELIVERANCE|
| WEREWOLF LOLA        |
| WOMEN DORADO          |
| WORST BANGER          |
+-----+
64 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

## Exercise 9-3

Join the following query to a subquery against the `film_actor` table to show the level of each actor:

```

SELECT 'Hollywood Star' level, 30 min_roles, 99999 max_roles
UNION ALL
SELECT 'Prolific Actor' level, 20 min_roles, 29 max_roles
UNION ALL
SELECT 'Newcomer' level, 1 min_roles, 19 max_roles

```

The subquery against the `film_actor` table should count the number of rows for each actor using `group by actor_id`, and the count should be compared to the `min_roles/max_roles` columns to determine which level each actor belongs to.

```

mysql> SELECT actr.actor_id, grps.level
-> FROM
-> (SELECT actor_id, count(*) num_roles
->   FROM film_actor
->   GROUP BY actor_id
-> ) actr
-> INNER JOIN
-> (SELECT 'Hollywood Star' level, 30 min_roles, 99999 max_roles
-> UNION ALL
->   SELECT 'Prolific Actor' level, 20 min_roles, 29 max_roles
-> UNION ALL
->   SELECT 'Newcomer' level, 1 min_roles, 19 max_roles
-> ) grps
->   ON actr.num_roles BETWEEN grps.min_roles AND grps.max_roles;
+-----+-----+
| actor_id | level      |
+-----+-----+
|      1 | Newcomer   |
|      2 | Prolific Actor |
|      3 | Prolific Actor |
|      4 | Prolific Actor |

```

```

|      5 | Prolific Actor |
|      6 | Prolific Actor |
|      7 | Hollywood Star |
...
| 195 | Prolific Actor |
| 196 | Hollywood Star |
| 197 | Hollywood Star |
| 198 | Hollywood Star |
| 199 | Newcomer      |
| 200 | Prolific Actor |
+-----+-----+
200 rows in set (0.03 sec)

```

## Chapter 10

### Exercise 10-1

Using the following table definitions and data, write a query that returns each customer name along with their total payments:

Customer:	
Customer_id	Name
1	John Smith
2	Kathy Jones
3	Greg Oliver

Payment:		
Payment_id	Customer_id	Amount
101	1	8.99
102	3	4.99
103	1	7.99

Include all customers, even if no payment records exist for that customer.

```

mysql> SELECT c.name, sum(p.amount)
    -> FROM customer c LEFT OUTER JOIN payment p
    ->   ON c.customer_id = p.customer_id
    -> GROUP BY c.name;
+-----+-----+
| name      | sum(p.amount) |
+-----+-----+
| John Smith |      16.98 |
| Kathy Jones |        NULL |
| Greg Oliver |       4.99 |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

## Exercise 10-2

Reformulate your query from Exercise 10-1 to use the other outer join type (e.g., if you used a left outer join in Exercise 10-1, use a right outer join this time) such that the results are identical to Exercise 10-1.

```
MySQL> SELECT c.name, sum(p.amount)
-> FROM payment p RIGHT OUTER JOIN customer c
-> ON c.customer_id = p.customer_id
-> GROUP BY c.name;
+-----+-----+
| name | sum(p.amount) |
+-----+-----+
| John Smith | 16.98 |
| Kathy Jones | NULL |
| Greg Oliver | 4.99 |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

## Exercise 10-3 (Extra Credit)

Devise a query that will generate the set {1, 2, 3, ..., 99, 100}. (Hint: use a cross join with at least two `FROM` clause subqueries.)

```
SELECT ones.x + tens.x + 1
FROM
(SELECT 0 x UNION ALL
SELECT 1 x UNION ALL
SELECT 2 x UNION ALL
SELECT 3 x UNION ALL
SELECT 4 x UNION ALL
SELECT 5 x UNION ALL
SELECT 6 x UNION ALL
SELECT 7 x UNION ALL
SELECT 8 x UNION ALL
SELECT 9 x
) ones
CROSS JOIN
(SELECT 0 x UNION ALL
SELECT 10 x UNION ALL
SELECT 20 x UNION ALL
SELECT 30 x UNION ALL
SELECT 40 x UNION ALL
SELECT 50 x UNION ALL
SELECT 60 x UNION ALL
SELECT 70 x UNION ALL
SELECT 80 x UNION ALL
SELECT 90 x
) tens;
```

# Chapter 11

## Exercise 11-1

Rewrite the following query, which uses a simple `CASE` expression, so that the same results are achieved using a searched `CASE` expression. Try to use as few `when` clauses as possible.

```
SELECT name,
CASE name
    WHEN 'English' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'Italian' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'French' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'German' THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN 'Japanese' THEN 'utf8'
    WHEN 'Mandarin' THEN 'utf8'
    ELSE 'Unknown'
END character_set
FROM language;

SELECT name,
CASE
    WHEN name IN ('English','Italian','French','German')
        THEN 'latin1'
    WHEN name IN ('Japanese','Mandarin')
        THEN 'utf8'
    ELSE 'Unknown'
END character_set
FROM language;
```

## Exercise 11-2

Rewrite the following query so that the result set contains a single row with five columns (one for each rating). Name the five columns `G`, `PG`, `PG_13`, `R`, and `NC_17`.

```
mysql> SELECT rating, count(*)
-> FROM film
-> GROUP BY rating;
+-----+-----+
| rating | count(*) |
+-----+-----+
| PG     |      194 |
| G      |      178 |
| NC-17  |      210 |
| PG-13  |      223 |
| R      |      195 |
+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT
->     sum(CASE WHEN rating = 'G' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) g,
```

```

-> sum(CASE WHEN rating = 'PG' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) pg,
-> sum(CASE WHEN rating = 'PG-13' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) pg_13,
-> sum(CASE WHEN rating = 'R' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) r,
-> sum(CASE WHEN rating = 'NC-17' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) nc_17
-> FROM film;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| g    | pg   | pg_13 | r    | nc_17 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 178 | 194  | 223  | 195 | 210 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

```

## Chapter 12

### Exercise 12-1

Generate a unit of work to transfer \$50 from account 123 to account 789. You will need to insert two rows into the transaction table and update two rows in the account table. Use the following table definitions/data:

Account:				
account_id	avail_balance	last_activity_date		
123	500	2019-07-10 20:53:27		
789	75	2019-06-22 15:18:35		

Transaction:				
txn_id	txn_date	account_id	txn_type_cd	amount
1001	2019-05-15	123	C	500
1002	2019-06-01	789	C	75

Use `txn_type_cd = 'C'` to indicate a credit (addition), and use `txn_type_cd = 'D'` to indicate a debit (subtraction).

```

START TRANSACTION;

INSERT INTO transaction
  (txn_id, txn_date, account_id, txn_type_cd, amount)
VALUES
  (1003, now(), 123, 'D', 50);

INSERT INTO transaction
  (txn_id, txn_date, account_id, txn_type_cd, amount)
VALUES
  (1004, now(), 789, 'C', 50);

UPDATE account
SET avail_balance = available_balance - 50,
last_activity_date = now()

```

```
WHERE account_id = 123;

UPDATE account
SET avail_balance = available_balance + 50,
    last_activity_date = now()
WHERE account_id = 789;

COMMIT;
```

## Chapter 13

### Exercise 13-1

Generate an `alter table` statement for the `rental` table so that an error will be raised if a row having a value found in the `rental.customer_id` column is deleted from the `customer` table.

```
ALTER TABLE rental
ADD CONSTRAINT fk_rental_customer_id FOREIGN KEY (customer_id)
REFERENCES customer (customer_id) ON DELETE RESTRICT;
```

### Exercise 13-2

Generate a multicolumn index on the `payment` table that could be used by both of the following queries:

```
SELECT customer_id, payment_date, amount
FROM payment
WHERE payment_date > cast('2019-12-31 23:59:59' as datetime);

SELECT customer_id, payment_date, amount
FROM payment
WHERE payment_date > cast('2019-12-31 23:59:59' as datetime)
    AND amount < 5;

CREATE INDEX idx_payment01
ON payment (payment_date, amount);
```

## Chapter 14

### Exercise 14-1

Create a view definition that can be used by the following query to generate the given results:

```
SELECT title, category_name, first_name, last_name
FROM film_ctgry_actor
WHERE last_name = 'FAWCETT';
```

title	category_name	first_name	last_name
ACE GOLDFINGER	Horror	BOB	FAWCETT
ADAPTATION HOLES	Documentary	BOB	FAWCETT
CHINATOWN GLADIATOR	New	BOB	FAWCETT
CIRCUS YOUTH	Children	BOB	FAWCETT
CONTROL ANTHEM	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
DARES PLUTO	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
DARN FORRESTER	Action	BOB	FAWCETT
DAZED PUNK	Games	BOB	FAWCETT
DYNAMITE TARZAN	Classics	BOB	FAWCETT
HATE HANDICAP	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
HOMICIDE PEACH	Family	BOB	FAWCETT
JACKET FRISCO	Drama	BOB	FAWCETT
JUMANJI BLADE	New	BOB	FAWCETT
LAWLESS VISION	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
LEATHERNECKS DWARFS	Travel	BOB	FAWCETT
OSCAR GOLD	Animation	BOB	FAWCETT
PELICAN COMFORTS	Documentary	BOB	FAWCETT
PERSONAL LADYBUGS	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
RAGING AIRPLANE	Sci-Fi	BOB	FAWCETT
RUN PACIFIC	New	BOB	FAWCETT
RUNNER MADIGAN	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
SADDLE ANTITRUST	Comedy	BOB	FAWCETT
SCORPION APOLLO	Drama	BOB	FAWCETT
SHAWSHANK BUBBLE	Travel	BOB	FAWCETT
TAXI KICK	Music	BOB	FAWCETT
BERETS AGENT	Action	JULIA	FAWCETT
BOILED DARES	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
CHISUM BEHAVIOR	Family	JULIA	FAWCETT
CLOSER BANG	Comedy	JULIA	FAWCETT
DAY UNFAITHFUL	New	JULIA	FAWCETT
HOPE TOOTSIE	Classics	JULIA	FAWCETT
LUKE MUMMY	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT
MULAN MOON	Comedy	JULIA	FAWCETT
OPUS ICE	Foreign	JULIA	FAWCETT
POLLOCK DELIVERANCE	Foreign	JULIA	FAWCETT
RIDGEMONT SUBMARINE	New	JULIA	FAWCETT
SHANGHAI TYCOON	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
SHAWSHANK BUBBLE	Travel	JULIA	FAWCETT
THEORY MERMAID	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT
WAIT CIDER	Animation	JULIA	FAWCETT

40 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```
CREATE VIEW film_ctgry_actor
AS
SELECT f.title,
       c.name category_name,
       a.first_name,
       a.last_name
```

```

FROM film f
INNER JOIN film_category fc
ON f.film_id = fc.film_id
INNER JOIN category c
ON fc.category_id = c.category_id
INNER JOIN film_actor fa
ON fa.film_id = f.film_id
INNER JOIN actor a
ON fa.actor_id = a.actor_id;

```

## Exercise 14-2

The film rental company manager would like to have a report that includes the name of every country, along with the total payments for all customers who live in each country. Generate a view definition that queries the country table and uses a scalar subquery to calculate a value for a column named tot\_payments.

```

CREATE VIEW country_payments
AS
SELECT c.country,
       (SELECT sum(p.amount)
        FROM city ct
        INNER JOIN address a
        ON ct.city_id = a.city_id
        INNER JOIN customer cst
        ON a.address_id = cst.address_id
        INNER JOIN payment p
        ON cst.customer_id = p.customer_id
        WHERE ct.country_id = c.country_id
      ) tot_payments
  FROM country c

```

## Chapter 15

### Exercise 15-1

Write a query that lists all of the indexes in the Sakila schema. Include the table names.

```

mysql> SELECT DISTINCT table_name, index_name
    ->   FROM information_schema.statistics
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila';
+-----+-----+
| TABLE_NAME | INDEX_NAME |
+-----+-----+
| actor      | PRIMARY    |
| actor      | idx_actor_last_name |
| address    | PRIMARY    |
| address    | idx_fk_city_id  |
| address    | idx_location |
+-----+-----+

```

category	PRIMARY
city	PRIMARY
city	idx_fk_country_id
country	PRIMARY
film	PRIMARY
film	idx_title
film	idx_fk_language_id
film	idx_fk_original_language_id
film_actor	PRIMARY
film_actor	idx_fk_film_id
film_category	PRIMARY
film_category	fk_film_category_category
film_text	PRIMARY
film_text	idx_title_description
inventory	PRIMARY
inventory	idx_fk_film_id
inventory	idx_store_id_film_id
language	PRIMARY
staff	PRIMARY
staff	idx_fk_store_id
staff	idx_fk_address_id
store	PRIMARY
store	idx_unique_manager
store	idx_fk_address_id
customer	PRIMARY
customer	idx_email
customer	idx_fk_store_id
customer	idx_fk_address_id
customer	idx_last_name
customer	idx_full_name
rental	PRIMARY
rental	rental_date
rental	idx_fk_inventory_id
rental	idx_fk_customer_id
rental	idx_fk_staff_id
payment	PRIMARY
payment	idx_fk_staff_id
payment	idx_fk_customer_id
payment	fk_payment_rental
payment	idx_payment01

+-----+-----+

45 rows in set (0.00 sec)

## Exercise 15-2

Write a query that generates output that can be used to create all of the indexes on the sakila.customer table. Output should be of the form:

```
"ALTER TABLE <table_name> ADD INDEX <index_name> (<column_list>)"
```

Here's one solution utilizing a with clause:

```

mysql> WITH idx_info AS
    -> (SELECT s1.table_name, s1.index_name,
    ->     s1.column_name, s1.seq_in_index,
    ->     (SELECT max(s2.seq_in_index)
    ->      FROM information_schema.statistics s2
    ->      WHERE s2.table_schema = s1.table_schema
    ->        AND s2.table_name = s1.table_name
    ->        AND s2.index_name = s1.index_name) num_columns
    ->   FROM information_schema.statistics s1
    ->  WHERE s1.table_schema = 'sakila'
    ->    AND s1.table_name = 'customer'
    -> )
    -> SELECT concat(
    -> CASE
    -> WHEN seq_in_index = 1 THEN
    ->     concat('ALTER TABLE ', table_name, ' ADD INDEX ',
    ->             index_name, '(', column_name)
    -> ELSE concat(' ', ', ', column_name)
    -> END,
    -> CASE
    -> WHEN seq_in_index = num_columns THEN ''
    -> ELSE ''
    -> END
    -> ) index_creation_statement
    -> FROM idx_info
    -> ORDER BY index_name, seq_in_index;
+-----+
| index_creation_statement |
+-----+
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_email (email); |
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_fk_address_id (address_id); |
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_fk_store_id (store_id); |
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_full_name (last_name |
| , first_name); |
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_last_name (last_name); |
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX PRIMARY (customer_id); |
+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

After reading Chapter 16, however, you could use the following:

```

mysql> SELECT concat('ALTER TABLE ', table_name, ' ADD INDEX ',
    ->     index_name, '(', ,
    ->     group_concat(column_name order by seq_in_index separator ', '),
    ->     ')');
    -> ) index_creation_statement
    -> FROM information_schema.statistics
    -> WHERE table_schema = 'sakila'
    -> AND table_name = 'customer'
    -> GROUP BY table_name, index_name;
+-----+
| index_creation_statement |
+-----+

```

```

| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_email (email);
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_fk_address_id (address_id);
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_fk_store_id (store_id);
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_full_name (last_name, first_name);
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX idx_last_name (last_name);
| ALTER TABLE customer ADD INDEX PRIMARY (customer_id);
+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

## Chapter 16

For all exercises in this section, use the following data set from the `Sales_Fact` table:

<code>Sales_Fact</code>		
<code>year_no</code>	<code>month_no</code>	<code>tot_sales</code>
2019	1	19228
2019	2	18554
2019	3	17325
2019	4	13221
2019	5	9964
2019	6	12658
2019	7	14233
2019	8	17342
2019	9	16853
2019	10	17121
2019	11	19095
2019	12	21436
2020	1	20347
2020	2	17434
2020	3	16225
2020	4	13853
2020	5	14589
2020	6	13248
2020	7	8728
2020	8	9378
2020	9	11467
2020	10	13842
2020	11	15742
2020	12	18636

24 rows in set (0.00 sec)

### Exercise 16-1

Write a query that retrieves every row from `Sales_Fact`, and add a column to generate a ranking based on the `tot_sales` column values. The highest value should receive a ranking of 1, and the lowest a ranking of 24.

```

mysql> SELECT year_no, month_no, tot_sales,
->   rank() over (order by tot_sales desc) sales_rank
->   FROM sales_fact;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| year_no | month_no | tot_sales | sales_rank |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 2019 | 12 | 21436 | 1 |
| 2020 | 1 | 20347 | 2 |
| 2019 | 1 | 19228 | 3 |
| 2019 | 11 | 19095 | 4 |
| 2020 | 12 | 18636 | 5 |
| 2019 | 2 | 18554 | 6 |
| 2020 | 2 | 17434 | 7 |
| 2019 | 8 | 17342 | 8 |
| 2019 | 3 | 17325 | 9 |
| 2019 | 10 | 17121 | 10 |
| 2019 | 9 | 16853 | 11 |
| 2020 | 3 | 16225 | 12 |
| 2020 | 11 | 15742 | 13 |
| 2020 | 5 | 14589 | 14 |
| 2019 | 7 | 14233 | 15 |
| 2020 | 4 | 13853 | 16 |
| 2020 | 10 | 13842 | 17 |
| 2020 | 6 | 13248 | 18 |
| 2019 | 4 | 13221 | 19 |
| 2019 | 6 | 12658 | 20 |
| 2020 | 9 | 11467 | 21 |
| 2019 | 5 | 9964 | 22 |
| 2020 | 8 | 9378 | 23 |
| 2020 | 7 | 8728 | 24 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
24 rows in set (0.02 sec)

```

## Exercise 16-2

Modify the query from the previous exercise to generate two sets of rankings from 1 to 12, one for 2019 data and one for 2020.

```

mysql> SELECT year_no, month_no, tot_sales,
->   rank() over (partition by year_no
->                 order by tot_sales desc) sales_rank
->   FROM sales_fact;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| year_no | month_no | tot_sales | sales_rank |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 2019 | 12 | 21436 | 1 |
| 2019 | 1 | 19228 | 2 |
| 2019 | 11 | 19095 | 3 |
| 2019 | 2 | 18554 | 4 |
| 2019 | 8 | 17342 | 5 |
| 2019 | 3 | 17325 | 6 |
| 2019 | 10 | 17121 | 7 |

```

```

| 2019 | 9 | 16853 | 8 |
| 2019 | 7 | 14233 | 9 |
| 2019 | 4 | 13221 | 10 |
| 2019 | 6 | 12658 | 11 |
| 2019 | 5 | 9964 | 12 |
| 2020 | 1 | 20347 | 1 |
| 2020 | 12 | 18636 | 2 |
| 2020 | 2 | 17434 | 3 |
| 2020 | 3 | 16225 | 4 |
| 2020 | 11 | 15742 | 5 |
| 2020 | 5 | 14589 | 6 |
| 2020 | 4 | 13853 | 7 |
| 2020 | 10 | 13842 | 8 |
| 2020 | 6 | 13248 | 9 |
| 2020 | 9 | 11467 | 10 |
| 2020 | 8 | 9378 | 11 |
| 2020 | 7 | 8728 | 12 |
+-----+
24 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```

## Exercise 16-3

Write a query that retrieves all 2020 data, and include a column that will contain the `tot_sales` value from the previous month.

```

mysql> SELECT year_no, month_no, tot_sales,
    ->     lag(tot_sales) over (order by month_no) prev_month_sales
    -> FROM sales_fact
    -> WHERE year_no = 2020;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| year_no | month_no | tot_sales | prev_month_sales |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 2020 | 1 | 20347 | NULL |
| 2020 | 2 | 17434 | 20347 |
| 2020 | 3 | 16225 | 17434 |
| 2020 | 4 | 13853 | 16225 |
| 2020 | 5 | 14589 | 13853 |
| 2020 | 6 | 13248 | 14589 |
| 2020 | 7 | 8728 | 13248 |
| 2020 | 8 | 9378 | 8728 |
| 2020 | 9 | 11467 | 9378 |
| 2020 | 10 | 13842 | 11467 |
| 2020 | 11 | 15742 | 13842 |
| 2020 | 12 | 18636 | 15742 |
+-----+-----+-----+
12 rows in set (0.00 sec)

```



---

# Index

## Symbols

- \* (asterisk)
  - in aggregate functions, 149, 154
  - in select clause, 48
- \ (backslash), as escape character, 118
- ( ) (parentheses)
  - enclosing subqueries, 53
  - grouping arithmetic operations, 129
  - grouping compound queries, 113
  - grouping filter conditions, 60, 68
- % (percent sign), modulo operator, 131
- + (plus sign), concatenation operator, SQL Server, 121
  - (see also arithmetic operators)
- ' (quotes, single)
  - enclosing strings, 116
  - escape sequence for, 118-119
- || (vertical bar, double), concatenation operator, Oracle, 121

## A

- abs() function, 134
- acos() function, 130
- add constraint keywords, 235
- add index keywords, 224
- add unique keywords, 227
- add\_months() function, 141
- ADO.NET, 11
- aggregate functions, 148-155, 277-281
  - expressions in, 153
  - filtering based on, 149-150
  - list of, 150-151
  - null values with, 153-155
- aggregated data, views for, 243

- aliases
  - for columns, 50
  - for tables, 97, 99
- all keyword, 52
- all operator, 167-168
- alter table statement, 34
  - adding constraints in, 235
  - adding indexes in, 224, 227
  - removing constraints in, 237
  - removing indexes in, 227
  - specifying storage engine, 221
- Amazon Web Services (AWS), 300
- analytic functions, 267-270
  - column value concatenation with, 283
  - data windows used by, 268-269, 275, 278, 279
  - localized sorting using, 269-270
  - ranking functions, 270-276
  - reporting functions, 277-284
- and operator, 59, 67
- ANSI mode, 117
- ANSI SQL92 join syntax, 91-92
- any operator, 168-169
- Apache Drill, 15, 303-304
  - df (distributed filesystem) plug-in, 304
  - querying files, 304-306
  - querying MongoDB, 309-315
  - querying multiple databases, 315-316
  - querying MySQL, 306-309
- Archive storage engine, 220
- arithmetic functions, 129-131
- arithmetic operators, 70, 129
- as keyword, 51, 57
- asc keyword, 63

ascii() function, 121  
asin() function, 130  
asterisk (\*)  
    in aggregate functions, 149, 154  
    in select clause, 48  
atan() function, 130  
atomicity, 215  
autocommit mode, 217  
auto\_increment keyword, 34  
avg() function, 150, 277-281  
AWS (Amazon Web Services), 300

## B

B-tree (balanced-tree) indexes, 229  
backslash (\), as escape character, 118  
begin transaction command, 217  
between operator, 74-76, 172  
big data, 299-301  
    Apache Drill for, 303-304  
        (see also Apache Drill)  
    cloud computing, 300-301  
    future of, 317  
    Hadoop, 14, 299, 303  
    NoSQL and document databases, 14, 300,  
        303  
bigint type, 24  
bitmap indexes, 230  
books and publications  
    Database in Depth (O'Reilly), 15  
    The Database Relational Model (Addison-Wesley), 15  
    High Performance MySQL (O'Reilly), 46  
    An Introduction to Database Systems (Addison-Wesley), 15  
    Learning Apache Drill (O'Reilly), 304  
    Mastering Regular Expressions (O'Reilly), 81  
    A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks" (Codd), 5  
    SQL in a Nutshell (O'Reilly), 129  
    Unicode Explained (O'Reilly), 22  
branch nodes, 229

## C

C#, SQL integration toolkit for, 11  
Cartesian product, 88-89, 192-198  
    (see also cross joins)  
case expressions, 201-202  
    conditional updates using, 209-210

division-by-zero checks using, 208-209  
existence checks using, 206-208  
handling null values using, 210-211  
result set transformations using, 205-206  
searched case expressions, 202-204  
simple case expressions, 204-205  
subqueries in, 203-204, 210  
cast() function, 137-138, 144-145  
ceil() function, 131  
char type, 20, 115  
char() function, 119  
character data (see strings; text types)  
character sets, 21-22, 119  
charindex() function, 123  
check constraints, 30, 40, 233  
chr() function, 119  
clob type, 23, 116  
cloud computing, 300-301  
clustering, 297  
coalesce() function, 202  
Codd, E. F. (author), "A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks", 5  
code examples (see examples)  
columns, 6, 8  
    aliases for, in select clause, 50  
    concatenating values of, 283  
    numeric placeholders for, 64  
    viewing information about, 254  
commit command, 218  
common table expressions (CTEs), 181-182  
comparison operators, 70  
    (see also conditions)  
composite partitioning, 295-297  
compound keys, 6  
compound queries, 105, 113  
    (see also sets)  
concat() function, 120-121, 126-127  
concatenation operator  
    || (for Oracle Database), 121, 127  
    + (for SQL Server), 121, 127  
conditional logic, 201-202  
    (see also case expressions)  
conditions, 70  
    (see also operators)  
    equality conditions, 71-73  
    evaluation of, 67-70  
    filter conditions, 59, 67  
    grouping with parentheses, 60, 68  
    join conditions, 56, 71, 91

matching conditions, 79-82, 124  
membership conditions, 77-79, 165-169  
with multicolumn subqueries, 169-171  
multiple, 59, 67-70  
with null values, 82-85  
range conditions, 73-77, 172  
regular expressions in, 81-82  
with scalar subqueries, 163-164

connection ID, 45  
consistency, 234  
constraint clause, 30, 33  
constraints, 233  
check constraints, 30, 40  
creating, 234-237  
foreign key constraints, 33, 40, 88  
on subclauses for, 235-237  
primary key constraints, 30  
removing, 237  
types of, 233-234  
viewing information about, 255

containing query or statement, 54, 161  
conventions used in this book, xiii  
conversion functions, 40, 137-139, 144-145  
convert() function, 139  
Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), 135  
correlated subqueries, 171-175  
cos() function, 130  
cot() function, 130  
count() function, 149, 150, 152-153, 189, 277  
create index statement, 225  
create table statement, 30-33, 234  
create view statement, 55, 239  
cross joins, 89, 192-198  
CSV storage engine, 220  
CTEs (common table expressions), 181-182  
current\_date() function, 139  
current\_time() function, 139  
current\_timestamp() function, 139

**D**

data dictionary, 9, 252  
(see also metadata)  
data security (see security)  
data statements, 9, 10  
(see also delete statement; insert statement;  
select statement; update statement)

data types, 20-27  
numeric, 23-25  
strings, 20, 115-116

temporal, 25-27, 137  
text, 22-23

data windows, 268-269, 275, 278, 279  
database connection, 45  
Database in Depth (Date), 15  
The Database Relational Model (Date), 15  
database servers, 13-14  
(see also DB2 Universal Database; MySQL;  
Oracle Database; SQL Server)

database systems, 2  
databases, 1-7  
big data, 299-301, 303-304, 317  
clustering, 297  
consistency of, 234  
data types for, 20-27  
hierarchical, 2-3  
history of, 2-5  
listing in MySQL, 18  
metadata for (see metadata)  
multiuser (see multiuser databases)  
network, 3-5  
new technologies for, 14  
partitioning (see partitioning databases)  
querying (see queries; SQL)  
relational (see relational databases)  
sharding, 298-299  
specifying in MySQL, 19

date type, 25, 136, 137  
Date, C. J. (author)  
Database in Depth (O'Reilly), 15  
The Database Relational Model (Addison-Wesley), 15  
An Introduction to Database Systems (Addison-Wesley), 15  
dateadd() function, 141  
datediff() function, 143-144, 153  
datepart() function, 143  
dates (see temporal data)  
datetime type, 25, 136, 137  
date\_add() function, 140-141  
daylight saving time, 135  
dayname() function, 142  
DB2 Universal Database, 13  
blob type, 23  
except all implemented, 110  
intersect all implemented, 109  
deadlock detection, 219  
deallocate statement, 262  
decode() function, 202

delete statement, 39, 175  
dense\_rank() function, 271-274  
deployment verification, 260  
derived tables, 53  
desc keyword, 63  
describe command, 31, 43, 240  
distinct keyword, 51, 152  
division-by-zero error checking, 208-209  
document databases, 300  
double type, 24  
drop constraint keywords, 237  
drop index keywords (MySQL), 227  
drop index statement (Oracle Database and SQL Server), 227  
drop table statement, 43  
DSL/Alpha language, 8  
dual table, 19  
durability, 216  
dynamic SQL execution, 261  
dynamic SQL generation, 261-265

## E

engine keyword, 221  
(see also storage engines)  
entities, 8  
enum type, 30  
equality conditions, 71-73  
ER (entity-relationship) diagram for Sakila database, 319  
errors  
column value, invalid, 40  
date value, formatted incorrectly, 40  
division-by-zero, checking for, 208-209  
foreign key, nonexistent, 40  
primary key, nonunique, 39  
examples  
MySQL used for, 14  
Sakila database for, xv, 17, 18, 41-43  
except and except all operators, 102, 109-111  
execute immediate command, 262  
execute statement, 262  
execution plan, 46  
exists operator, 173-174, 206-208  
exit command, 20  
exp() function, 130  
explain statement, 231  
explicit groups, 151-152  
exponentiation, 131  
expressions

arithmetic (see arithmetic functions; arithmetic operators)  
in conditions, 70  
(see also conditions)  
extract() function, 142

## F

files  
querying with Apache Drill, 304-306  
text types for, 22-23  
filter conditions, 59, 67  
(see also conditions; having clause; where clause)  
fixed-length strings, 20  
float type, 24  
floating-point numbers, 24, 131-133  
floor() function, 131  
for xml clause, 38  
foreign key constraints, 33, 40, 88, 233  
foreign keys, 7, 8  
joins using, 88  
nonexistent, error from, 40  
self-referencing, 98  
Friedl, Jeffrey E. F. (author), Mastering Regular Expressions (O'Reilly), 81  
from clause, 48, 53-57  
older join syntax in, 91  
omitting, 19, 49  
subqueries in, 176-181  
table aliases in, 57  
table names in, 53-56  
full-text indexes, 230  
functions  
aggregate (see aggregate functions)  
analytic (see analytic functions)  
arithmetic, 129-131  
conversion, 40, 137-139, 144-145  
string, 121-129

## G

getutcdate() function, 135  
Givre, Charles (author), Learning Apache Drill, 304  
global index, 289  
global.time\_zone value, 135  
GMT (Greenwich Mean Time), 135  
Go, SQL integration toolkit for, 11  
group by clause, 60-61, 148, 151-152  
grouping, 147-150

- (see also parentheses (( )))  
aggregate functions with, 148-155  
based on expressions, 157-157  
explicit groups, 151-152  
filtering results of, 149-150, 159-160  
implicit groups, 151  
multicolumn grouping, 156  
rollups with, 157-158  
single-column grouping, 155  
sorting results of, 149  
group\_concat() function, 283
- H**
- Hadoop, 14, 299, 303  
hash partitioning, 294-295  
hashing function, 294  
having clause, 60-61, 150, 159-160, 168  
(see also conditions)  
HDFS (Hadoop Distributed File System), 299  
hierarchical database systems, 2-3  
High Performance MySQL (Schwartz, et al.), 46  
Hive, 303  
horizontal partitioning, 288
- I**
- IBM DB2 Universal Database (see DB2 Universal Database)  
ID, connection, 45  
if() function, 202  
implicit groups, 151  
in operator, 78-79, 165-166  
index partitioning, 289  
indexes, 223-224  
    B-tree indexes, 229  
    bitmap indexes, 230  
    creating, 224-228  
    default type of, 229  
    disadvantages of, 232-233  
    displaying, 225  
    ideal number of, 233  
    multicolumn indexes, 228  
    query optimizer using, 224, 231-232  
    removing, 227  
    text indexes, 230  
    unique indexes, 227-228  
    viewing information about, 255  
information\_schema database, 252-257  
(see also schema statements)  
Apache Drill access to, 304
- querying, 252-256  
inner join keywords, 56-57, 90  
inner joins, 89-91  
InnoDB storage engine, 40, 220, 234  
insert statement, 35-37, 184  
insert() function, 127-128  
instr() function, 123  
int type, 24  
integers, 24  
intersect and intersect all operators, 102,  
    108-109  
An Introduction to Database Systems (Date),  
    15  
is not null operator, 83  
is null operator, 83-85
- J**
- Java, SQL integration toolkit for, 11  
JDBC (Java Database Connectivity), 11  
JDBC driver for MySQL, 306  
join keyword, 88, 89  
(see also on subclause; using subclause)  
joins, 7, 56-57, 87-92  
    ANSI SQL92 syntax for, 91-92  
    conditions for, 56, 71, 91  
    cross joins, 89, 192-198  
    default type of, 90  
    inner joins, 89-91  
    multiple, constructing, 93-98  
    multiple, order of, 94  
    natural joins, 198-199  
    older syntax for, 91  
    outer joins, 90, 187-192  
    partition-wise joins, 297  
    same table joined multiple times in, 96-98  
    self-joins, 98-99  
    subqueries as tables in, 95-96  
    views using, 241, 244-245  
JSON files  
    document databases using, 300  
    loading into MongoDB, 309-312
- K**
- keys (see foreign keys; primary keys)  
Korpela, Jukka (author), Unicode Explained  
    (O'Reilly), 22

## L

lag() function, 281-283  
last\_day() function, 141  
lead() function, 281-283  
leaf nodes, 229  
Learning Apache Drill (O'Reilly), 304  
left outer joins, 188-190  
len() function, 121  
length() function, 121  
like operator, 80, 124  
list partitioning, 292-293  
ln() function, 130  
local index, 289  
locate() function, 122  
locking, 214-215  
    granularities of, 214-215  
    read lock, 214  
    storage engine determining, 219-221  
    versioning approach, 214  
    write lock, 214  
logical operators  
    and operator, 59, 67  
    not operator, 69  
    or operator, 59, 68  
longtext type, 22  
low-cardinality data, 230

## M

MapReduce, 299  
Mastering Regular Expressions (O'Reilly), 81  
matching conditions, 79-82, 124  
max() function, 150, 277-279  
mediumint type, 24  
mediumtext type, 22  
membership conditions, 77-79, 165-169  
MEMORY storage engine, 220  
Merge storage engine, 220  
metadata, 251-252  
    about partitioned tables, 290  
    Apache Drill access to, 304  
    deployment verification using, 260  
    dynamic SQL generation using, 261-265  
    in information\_schema database, 252-257  
    querying, 252-256  
    schema generation scripts from, 257-260  
Microsoft SQL Server (see SQL Server)  
min() function, 150, 277-279  
minus operator, 109  
mod() function, 130

## MongoDB

    document databases using, 300  
    querying with Apache Drill, 309-315  
multi-parent hierarchy, 4  
multibyte character sets, 21  
multicolumn grouping, 156  
multicolumn indexes, 228  
multicolumn subqueries, 169-171  
multiple-row, single-column subqueries, 164-169  
multiuser databases, 213  
    locking for, 214-215, 219-221  
    transactions for, 215-221  
MyISAM storage engine, 220  
MySQL, 14  
    auto\_increment keyword, 34  
    data types, 20-27  
    databases in, listing, 18  
    databases in, specifying, 19  
    date formats, 41  
    date ranges allowed, 26  
    default index type, 229  
    dual table in, 19  
    except operator not implemented, 109  
    full-text indexes, 230  
    if() function, 202  
    installing, 17  
    intersect operator not implemented, 108  
    JDBC driver for, 306  
    locking granularities, 215  
    metadata access, 252  
    parentheses not allowed in compound queries, 113  
    query execution by, 45-47  
    querying with Apache Drill, 306-309  
    silent truncation of strings, 116-118  
    storage engines, 219-221  
    transaction approach, 217  
    updatable view restrictions, 245  
    utc\_timestamp() function, 135  
mysql command, 11, 18-20  
    feedback from, 13  
    query execution by, 45-47  
    --xml option, 37  
MySQL stored procedure language, 10  
MySQL Workbench, 260

## N

natural joins, 198-199

natural keys, 6  
network database systems, 3-5  
NewSQL, 14  
noncorrelated subqueries, 163-171  
nonprocedural languages, 10  
nonrelational databases, 2-5  
normalization, 7, 28-29  
NoSQL, 14, 300, 303  
not in operator, 79, 165-166  
not null keywords, 32  
not operator, 69  
now() function, 19  
null values, 32  
    aggregate functions handling, 153-155  
    all operator handling, 168  
    case expressions handling, 210-211  
    comparisons with, 82-85  
    disallowing for a table column, 32  
    not in operator handling, 168  
    outer joins resulting in, 190  
numeric data  
    arithmetic functions for, 129-131  
    arithmetic operators for, 70, 129  
    precision of, controlling, 131-133  
    signed, functions for, 133-134  
numeric data types, 23-25

**O**

on delete clause, 235-237  
on subclause, 56, 71, 89  
on update clause, 235-237  
online resources  
    Apache Drill's SQL implementation, 309  
    database management systems, 15  
    for this book, xv  
    MySQL, 17  
    Oracle Database Reference Guide, 257  
    Sakila database, xv, 17, 18  
operators  
    between conditions (see logical operators)  
    for null values, 82-85  
    for sets (see set operators)  
    within conditions (see arithmetic operators;  
        comparison operators)  
optimizer, 10  
optimizer hints, 10  
or operator, 59, 68  
Oracle Database, 13  
    add\_months() function, 141

bitmap indexes, 230  
char, varchar2 and clob sizes, 23  
chr() function, 119  
clob type, 23, 116  
concatenation operator (||), 121, 127  
create index statement, 225  
current date and time functions, 140  
date ranges allowed, 26  
decode() function, 202  
default index type, 229  
drop index statement, 227  
execute immediate command, 262  
from clause required in, 19  
instr() function, 123  
locking approach, 214  
locking granularities, 215  
metadata access, 252, 257  
minus operator, 109  
pivot clause, 206  
plan\_table table, 232  
replace() function, 128  
rollups, generating, 158  
sequence object, 34  
session time zone setting, 136  
substr() function, 128  
subtracting dates, 144  
temporary tables, duration of, 55  
to\_date() function, 139  
transaction approach, 217  
unique keyword, 228  
updatable view restrictions, 249  
varchar2 data type, 21  
VPD (Virtual Private Database), 243  
Oracle Exadata platform, 298  
Oracle SQL Developer, 260  
Oracle Text, 230  
order by clause, 61-65  
    in compound queries, 111-112  
    with grouping, 149  
    localized, 269-270  
    subqueries in, 183  
outer joins, 90, 187-192  
    left outer joins, 188-190  
    right outer joins, 190-191  
    three-way outer joins, 191-192  
over clause, 268, 275, 277

**P**

Package database/sql, 11

packet capture (PCAP) files, 304-306  
page locks, 214  
parentheses (( ))  
    enclosing subqueries, 53  
    grouping arithmetic operations, 129  
    grouping compound queries, 113  
    grouping filter conditions, 60, 68  
partition by clause, 268, 270, 275, 278  
partition by hash keywords, 294  
partition by list keywords, 292  
partition by range keywords, 289  
partition function, 289  
partition key, 289  
partition pruning, 297  
partition-wise joins, 297  
partitioning databases, 287-288  
    benefits of, 297  
    composite partitioning, 295-297  
    hash partitioning, 294-295  
    index partitioning, 289  
    list partitioning, 292-293  
    metadata regarding, 290  
    range partitioning, 289-292  
    reasons for, 287  
    reorganizing partitions, 290  
    table partitioning, 288  
PCAP (packet capture) files, 304-306  
percent sign (%), modulo operator, 131  
permissions, 46, 242, 304  
pivot clause, 206  
PL/SQL language, 10  
plan\_table table, 232  
plus sign (+), concatenation operator, SQL Server, 121  
    (see also arithmetic operators)  
position() function, 122  
PostgreSQL, 14  
pow() function, 131  
precision of floating-point types, 25  
prepare statement, 262  
Presto, 303  
primary key constraints, 30, 233  
primary keys, 6, 8, 30  
    generating values for, 34  
    nonunique, error from, 39  
private tables, 242  
procedural languages, 10  
programming languages, integrating SQL with, 10

Python DB, 11  
Python, SQL integration toolkit for, 11

## Q

queries  
    aggregate functions in (see aggregate functions)  
    analytic functions in (see analytic functions)  
    with Apache Drill (see Apache Drill)  
    case expressions in (see case expressions)  
    clauses in, 12, 47  
        (see also from clause; group by clause;  
            having clause; order by clause; select  
            statement; where clause)  
    compound, 105, 113  
        (see also sets)  
    execution of, by MySQL, 45-47  
    on multiple databases, 315-316  
    on multiple tables (see joins)  
    permission to execute, 46  
    subqueries (see subqueries)  
    tuning, 232  
        XML output from, 37  
query optimizer, 46, 224, 231-232  
quit command, 20  
quote() function, 118  
quotes, single ('')  
    enclosing strings, 116  
    escape sequence for, 118-119

## R

range between subclause, 280  
range conditions, 73-77, 172  
range partitioning, 289-292  
rank() function, 271-276  
ranking functions, 270-276  
read lock, 214  
references keyword, 33, 234  
regexp operator, 81, 125  
regular expressions, 81-82  
relational databases, 5-7  
    future of, 317  
    history of, xi, 5  
    querying (see queries; SQL)  
    relationship to SQL, 8  
servers using, 13-14  
    (see also specific servers)  
“A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks” (Codd), 5

reorganize partition keywords, 290  
replace() function, 128  
reporting functions, 277-284  
resources (see books and publications; online resources)  
result sets, 8, 8, 46  
  analytic functions for (see analytic functions)  
  duplicates in, including, 52, 109, 110  
  duplicates in, removing, 51, 108, 152  
  sorting, 61-65  
    (see also order by clause)  
  sorting, for compound queries, 111-112  
  transforming, 205-206  
right outer joins, 190-191  
Rogers, Paul (author), Learning Apache Drill, 304  
rollback command, 218  
rollback to savepoint command, 221  
rollback transaction command, 221  
rollups, generating, 157-158  
round() function, 132  
row locks, 214  
rows, 6, 8  
rows between subclause, 280  
rows unbounded preceding subclause, 280  
row\_number() function, 271-274  
Ruby DBI, 11  
Ruby, SQL integration toolkit for, 11

## S

Sakila database, 41-43  
  downloading, xv, 17, 18  
  ER diagram for, 319  
save transaction command, 221  
savepoint command, 221  
savepoints, 219-221  
scalar subqueries, 163-164  
  in order by clause, 183  
  in select clause, 182  
  in values clause of insert statement, 184  
scale of floating-point types, 25  
schema statements, 9  
  (see also alter table statement; create table statement; drop table statement)  
metadata from (see metadata)  
scripts generating, 257-260  
transactions not used for, 218

Schwartz, Baron (author), High Performance MySQL (O'Reilly), 46  
search expressions, 80  
  (see also matching conditions)  
searched case expressions, 202-204  
security  
  permissions, 46, 242, 304  
  views for, 242  
VPD (Virtual Private Database), 243  
select statement, 48-52  
  (see also from clause; group by clause; having clause; order by clause; where clause)  
all keyword in, 52  
column aliases in, 50  
column names in, 48  
distinct keyword in, 51, 152  
expressions in, 49  
  (see also expressions)  
function calls in, 49  
  (see also functions)  
literals in, 49  
subqueries in, 182  
  (see also subqueries)  
self-joins, 98-99  
self-referencing foreign key, 98  
SEQUEL language, 8  
sequence object, 34  
servers, 13-14  
  (see also DB2 Universal Database; MySQL; Oracle Database; SQL Server)  
session.time\_zone value, 135  
set autocommit command, 217  
set command, 117  
set implicit\_transactions command, 217  
set operators, 105-111  
  except and except all, 102, 109-111  
  intersect and intersect all, 102, 108-109  
  precedence of, 112-114  
  union and union all, 101, 106-108  
set showplan\_text on statement, 232  
sets, 101-105  
  combining operations on, 103  
  operation precedence for, 112-114  
  sorting results of, 111-112  
  table requirements for operations, 105  
sharding, 298-299  
shared-disk/shared-cache clustering configurations, 298  
show character set command, 21

show databases command, 18  
show index command, 225  
show table command, 220  
show tables command, 42  
sign() function, 134  
simple case expressions, 204-205  
sin() function, 130  
single quotes (' ')  
    enclosing strings, 116  
    escape sequence for, 118-119  
single-column grouping, 155  
single-parent hierarchy, 3  
smallint type, 24  
sorting  
    localized, with analytic functions, 269-270  
    query results (see order by clause)  
Spark, 14, 303  
Spark SQL, 303  
special characters in strings, 119-121  
sp\_executesql procedure, 262  
SQL, 8-13  
    as nonprocedural, 10  
    conditions in (see conditions; expressions; operators)  
    data statements, 9, 10  
        (see also delete statement; insert statement; select statement; update statement)  
    dynamic execution of, 261  
    dynamic generation of, 261-265  
    functions in (see functions)  
    future of, 317  
    history of, xi, 8  
    integrating with programming languages, 10  
    interactive execution of, 11  
    new technologies using, 14  
    prevalence of, xi  
    pronunciation of, 8  
    relational model used by, 8  
    schema statements, 9  
        (see also alter table statement; create table statement; drop table statement)  
    sets (see sets)  
    statement classes, 9-10  
    transaction statements, 9, 215  
        (see also commit statement; rollback statement; start statement)  
SQL in a Nutshell (O'Reilly), 129  
SQL integration toolkits, 11

SQL Server, 13  
    begin transaction command, 217  
    char and varchar sizes, 23  
    charindex() function, 123  
    coalesce() function, 202  
    concatenation operator (+), 121, 127  
    convert() function, 139  
    create index statement, 225  
    current date and time functions, 140  
    date ranges allowed, 26  
    dateadd() function, 141  
    datediff() function, 144  
    datepart() function, 143  
    default index type, 229  
    drop index statement, 227  
    for xml clause, 38  
    full-text indexes, 230  
    getutcdate() function, 135  
    information\_schema schema, 252  
    len() function, 121  
    locking approach, 214  
    locking granularities, 215  
    metadata access, 252  
    modulo operator (%), 131  
    pivot clause, 206  
    replace() function, 128  
    round() function, 133  
    save transaction, 221  
    set implicit\_transactions command, 217  
    set showplan\_text on statement, 232  
    silent truncation of strings, 116-118  
    sp\_executesql procedure, 262  
    transaction approach, 217  
    unique keyword, 228  
        updatable view restrictions, 249  
sql\_mode variable, 117  
sqrt() function, 130  
SQUARE language, 8  
Squirrel, 11  
start transaction command, 217  
statement scope, 161  
storage engines  
    choosing, 219-221  
    InnoDB, 40, 234  
straight\_join keyword, 95  
strcmp() function, 123-124  
string functions, 121-129  
string literals, 116-118  
strings

appending characters to, 126  
building from other data, 126  
character sets for, 21-22  
comparing, 123-126  
concatenating, 120-121  
converting to temporal values, 137-139  
data types for, 20, 115-116  
enum type, 30  
escape sequence for, 118-119  
extracting substrings from, 128-129  
fixed-length, 20  
generating, 116-121  
length of, 121  
silent truncation of, 116-118  
special characters in, 119-121  
substrings, adding or replacing in, 127-128  
substrings, finding in, 122  
temporal data represented in, 136-137  
variable-length, 20  
`str_to_date()` function, 138-139  
subpartition by keywords, 295  
subqueries, 53, 161-175  
    all operator with, 167-168  
    any operator with, 168-169  
    between operator with, 172  
    in case expressions, 203-204, 210  
    containing statement or query for, 54, 161  
    correlated, 171-175  
    data manipulation with, 174-175  
    equality conditions with, 163-164  
    exists operator with, 173-174  
    in from clause, 176-181  
    in having clause, 168  
    in and not in operators with, 165-166  
    as join tables, 95-96  
    multicolumn, 169-171  
    multiple-row, single-column, 164-169  
    named, in with clause, 181-182  
    noncorrelated, 163-171  
    null values handled with, 168  
    in order by clause, 183  
    scalar, 163-164, 182-184  
    scope of, 161  
    in select clause, 182  
    in values clause of insert statement, 184  
`substr()` function, 128  
`substring()` function, 128-129  
`sum()` function, 150, 277-281  
surrogate keys, 6

system catalog (see data dictionary; metadata)

## T

table aliases, 57  
table links, 56-57  
    (see also joins)  
table locks, 214  
table partitioning, 288  
tables, 5, 8  
    aliases for, 97, 99  
    altering, 34  
    constraints on (see constraints)  
    creating, 27-33  
    deleting, 43  
    deleting rows from, 39, 175  
    designing, 27-29  
    indexes for (see indexes)  
    inserting data, 33-37  
    listing, 42  
    normalizing, 28-29  
    private, 242  
    schema statements for, 30-33  
    temporary, 54  
    types of, 53-56  
    updating, 38  
        (see also update statement)  
    viewing information about, 31, 43, 252  
`tan()` function, 130  
temporal data, 134  
    adding date or time intervals to, 140-141  
    conversions to and from, 144-145  
    converting strings to, 40, 137-139  
    current date or time, generating, 139  
    data types for, 25-27, 137  
    date formats, default, 26, 136-137  
    date formats, specifying in queries, 41  
    date formats, specifying in `str_to_date()`,  
        139  
    date ranges allowed, 25, 26  
    generating, 136-140  
    interval types for, 140  
    last day of month, finding, 141  
    returning number of intervals from,  
        143-144  
    returning strings from, 142  
    string representations of, 136-137  
    time zones, 134-136  
temporary keyword, 54  
text indexes, 230

text type, 22, 116  
text types, 22-23  
three-way outer joins, 191-192  
time type, 25, 136, 137  
time zones, 134-136  
times (see temporal data)  
timestamp type, 25, 137  
tinyint type, 24  
tinytext type, 22  
Toad Data Point, 303  
Toad development tool, 260  
to\_date() function, 139  
Transact-SQL language, 10  
transaction statements, 9, 215  
(see also commit statement; rollback state-  
ment; start statement)  
transactions, 215-216  
autocommit mode for, 217  
deadlock detection for, 219  
ending, 218-219  
savepoints for, 219-221  
schema statements not using, 218  
starting, 217-218  
transforming result sets, 205-206  
tree structures (see B-tree indexes; hierarchical  
database systems)  
truncate() function, 133  
tuning queries, 232

## U

Unicode Explained (Korpela), 22  
union and union all operators, 101, 106-108  
unique constraints, 233  
unique indexes, 227-228  
unique keyword, 228  
Universal Time, 135  
unsigned floating-point types, 25  
unsigned integers, 24  
updatable views, 245-249  
update statement, 38  
case expressions in, 209-210  
date formats, specifying in, 41  
subqueries in, 174  
use command, 19  
using subclause, 90  
UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), 135  
utc\_timestamp() function, 135

## V

values clause, 35-37, 184  
varchar type, 20, 116  
varchar2 data type, 21  
variable-length strings, 20  
versioning, 214  
vertical bar, double (||), concatenation operator,  
Oracle, 121  
vertical partitioning, 288  
views, 55, 239  
complexity hidden by, 244  
data aggregation from, 243  
data security from, 242  
displaying columns in, 240  
in information\_schema, list of, 256  
(see also metadata)  
joins with, 241, 244-245  
reasons to use, 242-245  
updatable, 245-249  
viewing information about, 252  
virtual tables, 55  
(see also views)  
VPD (Virtual Private Database), 243

## W

website resources (see online resources)  
where clause, 58-60  
(see also conditions)  
filter conditions in, 67  
older join syntax in, 91  
wildcards, for search expressions, 80  
windows, 268-269, 275, 278, 279  
with clause, 181-182  
with cube keywords, 158  
with rollup keywords, 157-158  
write lock, 214

## X

XML  
document databases using, 300  
output from queries, 37  
--xml option, mysql command, 37

## Y

YARN, 300  
year type, 25

## About the Author

---

**Alan Beaulieu** has been designing and building custom databases for over 30 years. He runs his own consulting business specializing in the design, development, and performance tuning of very large databases, mostly in the Financial Services sector. In his free time, Alan enjoys spending time with his family, playing drums with his band, strumming his tenor ukulele, or finding the perfect scenic lunch spot while hiking with his wife. He holds a BS in Engineering from Cornell University.

## Colophon

---

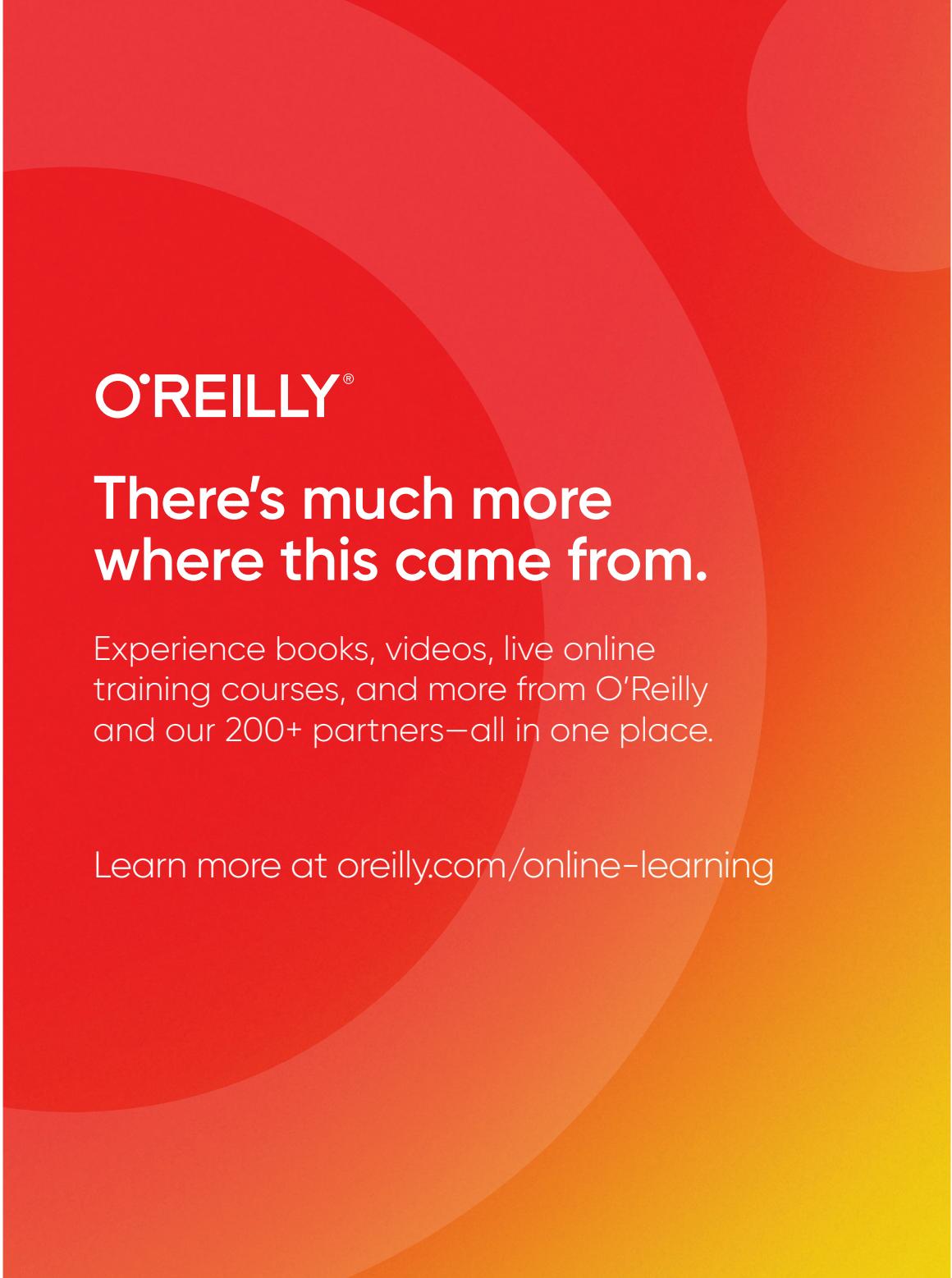
The animal on the cover of *Learning SQL*, Third Edition, is an Andean marsupial tree frog (*Gastrotheca riobambae*). As its name suggests, this crepuscular and nocturnal frog is native to the western slopes of the Andes mountains and is widely distributed from the Riobamba basin to Ibarra in the north.

During courtship, the male calls (“wraaack-ack-ack”) to attract a female. If a gravid female is attracted to him, he climbs onto her back and performs a common frog mating hold called the nuptial amplexus. As the eggs emerge from the female’s cloaca, the male catches the eggs with his feet and fertilizes them while maneuvering them into a pouch on the female’s back. A female may incubate an average of 130 eggs, and development in the pouch lasts between 60 and 120 days. During incubation, swelling becomes visible, and lumps appear beneath the skin on the female’s back. When the tadpoles emerge from the pouch, the female tree frog deposits them into the water. Within two or three months the tadpoles metamorphose into froglets, and at seven months they are ready to mate (“wraaaack-ack-ack”).

Both the male and female tree frog have expanded digital discs on their fingers and toes that help them climb vertical surfaces such as trees. Adult males are two inches in length, while females reach two and a half inches, with coloration that naturally varies between shades of green and brown. The color of the juveniles may change from brown to green as they grow.

Populations of this frog have declined, and it is now classified on the IUCN Red List as *endangered*. It is under threat from agriculture, invasive species and pathogens, climate change, and pollution.

The color illustration on the cover is by Karen Montgomery, based on a black-and-white engraving from *The Dover Pictorial Archive*. The cover fonts are Gilroy Semi-bold and Guardian Sans. The text font is Adobe Minion Pro; the heading font is Adobe Myriad Condensed; and the code font is Dalton Maag’s Ubuntu Mono.



O'REILLY®

## There's much more where this came from.

Experience books, videos, live online training courses, and more from O'Reilly and our 200+ partners—all in one place.

Learn more at [oreilly.com/online-learning](http://oreilly.com/online-learning)